

# BARRON'S

The Leader in Test Preparation



# 600 ESSENTIAL WORDS FOR THE

# TOEIC®

**3RD EDITION**

Dr. Lin Lougheed

- All activities match the new TOEIC format
- Words presented with definitions and examples used in sentences
- Vocabulary-building practice exercises with answer keys
- Advice on expanding your English vocabulary

®TOEIC is a registered trademark of Educational Testing Service. This publication has been neither reviewed nor endorsed by the Educational Testing Service.

2 AUDIO CDs  
ENCLOSED  
More Than 2 1/2  
Hours of Instruction

**BARRON'S**

---

**600  
ESSENTIAL  
WORDS FOR THE  
TOEIC®**

**3RD EDITION**

**Dr. Lin Lougheed**



©TOEIC is a registered trademark of Educational Testing Service. This publication has been neither reviewed nor endorsed by the Educational Testing Service.

---

Copyright © 2008, 2003, 1999 by Lin Lougheed

All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means without the written permission of the copyright owner.

*All inquiries should be addressed to:*

Barron's Educational Series, Inc.

250 Wireless Boulevard

Hauppauge, New York 11788

[www.barronseduc.com](http://www.barronseduc.com)

Library of Congress Catalog Card No.: 2008013444

ISBN-13: 978-0-7641-9401-6

ISBN-10: 0-7641-9401-1

**Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data**

Lougheed, Lin, 1946—

600 essential words for the TOEIC test : with listening comprehension compact discs / Lin Lougheed.—3rd ed.

p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN-13: 978-0-7641-9401-6 (alk. paper)

ISBN-10: 0-7641-9401-1 (alk. paper)

1. Test of English for International Communication—Study guides. 2. English language—Textbooks for foreign speakers. 3. English language—Examinations—Study guides. 4. Vocabulary—Examinations—Study guides. I. Title. II. Title: Six hundred essential words for the TOEIC test.

PE1128.L643 2008

428.1—dc22

2008013444

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

# Table of Contents

What the Book Is About	v
How to Use This Book	v
Strategies to Improve Your Vocabulary	vi
Strategies to Practice Your Vocabulary	xi
<b>Lessons 1–5</b>	<b>General Business</b>
1. Contracts	1
2. Marketing	7
3. Warranties	13
4. Business Planning	19
5. Conferences	25
<i>Word Review #1</i>	31
<b>Lessons 6–10</b>	<b>Office Issues</b>
6. Computers	33
7. Office Technology	39
8. Office Procedures	45
9. Electronics	51
10. Correspondence	57
<i>Word Review #2</i>	63
<b>Lessons 11–15</b>	<b>Personnel</b>
11. Job Advertising and Recruiting	65
12. Applying and Interviewing	71
13. Hiring and Training	77
14. Salaries and Benefits	83
15. Promotions, Pensions, and Awards	89
<i>Word Review #3</i>	95
<b>Lessons 16–20</b>	<b>Purchasing</b>
16. Shopping	97
17. Ordering Supplies	103
18. Shipping	109
19. Invoices	115
20. Inventory	121
<i>Word Review #4</i>	127
<b>Lessons 21–25</b>	<b>Financing and Budgeting</b>
21. Banking	129
22. Accounting	135
23. Investments	141
24. Taxes	147
25. Financial Statements	153

<b>Word Review #5</b>	159
<b>Lessons 26–30</b>	<b>Management Issues</b>
26. Property and Departments	161
27. Board Meetings and Committees	167
28. Quality Control	173
29. Product Development	179
30. Renting and Leasing	185
<b>Word Review #6</b>	191
<b>Lessons 31–35</b>	<b>Restaurants and Events</b>
31. Selecting a Restaurant	193
32. Eating Out	199
33. Ordering Lunch	205
34. Cooking as a Career	211
35. Events	217
<b>Word Review #7</b>	223
<b>Lessons 36–40</b>	<b>Travel</b>
36. General Travel	225
37. Airlines	231
38. Trains	237
39. Hotels	243
40. Car Rentals	249
<b>Word Review #8</b>	255
<b>Lessons 41–45</b>	<b>Entertainment</b>
41. Movies	257
42. Theater	263
43. Music	269
44. Museums	275
45. Media	281
<b>Word Review #9</b>	287
<b>Lessons 46–50</b>	<b>Health</b>
46. Doctor's Office	289
47. Dentist's Office	295
48. Health Insurance	301
49. Hospitals	307
50. Pharmacy	313
<b>Word Review #10</b>	319
<b>Answer Key</b>	321
<b>Word Index</b>	325
<b>Appendix: Tapescript for the Listening Comprehension Exercises</b>	329

# What the Book Is About

This book teaches you vocabulary that will help you when you take the TOEIC (Test of English for International Communication). The TOEIC measures the English proficiency of people working in international business or planning to use English to communicate with others. Although the exam does not specifically test specialized vocabulary, the items on the exam are in specialized contexts.

This book will help you understand specialized contexts that are often used on the TOEIC. Each chapter focuses on a particular context that has appeared on the TOEIC. The contexts are specialized, but the words are not. The words are general vocabulary. They can be used in many contexts. You will learn these words in contexts that are used on the TOEIC.

## How to Use This Book

This book contains 50 lessons, and each lesson introduces you to 12 new words in a specific context. If you study one lesson every day, in 50 days you can learn 600 new words. You will practice these words by doing exercises that look just like the questions on the TOEIC.

### Word List

On the first page of each lesson, you will see a list of 12 words. For each word you will see the definition of the word and two sentences using the word in context.

This page

- Introduces you to the words for the lesson
- Shows you the words in context
- Serves as a reference anytime you need to check the meaning of a word

### Vocabulary in Context

Next you will see a paragraph called Vocabulary in Context. You will have the opportunity to see and use the words for the lesson in context.

- Complete the paragraph using words from the word list.
- Read the paragraph over to see all the words for that lesson used in context.
- Return to the paragraph as often as you like to reinforce the meanings of the words.

### Word Families

On this page, you will see the verb, noun, adjective, and adverb forms of six words selected from the word list.

*Example*

verb	popularize
noun	popularity
adjective	popular

You will also see sentences using these words in context.

On this page, you will

- Learn more words
- Learn to recognize words in their different forms
- Learn about word endings that change words into nouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs

## Listening Comprehension

In this section, you will practice the words for the lesson by doing exercises that are just like the listening questions on the TOEIC.

Part 1—You will see a photo. You will choose the statement that best describes the photo.

Part 2—You will listen to a question or statement and choose the best response.

Part 3—You will listen to a conversation and answer three questions about it.

Part 4—You will listen to a talk and answer three questions about it.

You will practice the words for the lesson in context because the questions, conversation, and talk all use words from the word list for each lesson. You will also practice listening skills and test-taking skills that you will need when you take the TOEIC.

## Reading Comprehension

In this section, you will practice the words for the lesson by doing exercises that are just like the reading questions on the TOEIC.

Part 5—You will choose the best word to complete each sentence.

Part 6—You will read a paragraph and choose words to complete it.

Part 7—You will read a passage, or two related passages, and answer comprehension questions.

You will practice the words for the lesson in context because the reading passages all use words from the word list for each lesson. You will also practice reading skills and test-taking skills that you will need when you take the TOEIC.

# Strategies to Improve Your Vocabulary

One of the best ways to improve your vocabulary is to read, and read often. When you read, you

- See words in context
- Expose yourself to new words

The more you read, the more words you will see. The more words you see, the more you will learn. Reading can be a very enjoyable experience, so make sure you read things that are interesting to you. Then you will have fun, improve your vocabulary, and build skills you will need for the TOEIC, all at once. When you read, there are several strategies you can use to improve your vocabulary.

## 1. Analyze Word Parts

Words can be made of roots, prefixes (before the root), and suffixes (after the root).

*Example*

*re* (prefix) + *circula* (root) + *tion* (suffix) = *recirculation*

In English, many of these roots, prefixes, and suffixes come from Greek and Latin words. Learning the meanings of different roots, prefixes, and suffixes will help you increase your vocabulary.

*Example*

*re* means *again*

reunite	bring together again
reconsider	think about again
retrain	train again

This book will expose you to many words that use common roots, prefixes, and suffixes.

## 2. Recognize Grammatical Forms

Some suffixes tell you whether a word is a noun, a verb, an adjective, or an adverb. You can learn to recognize these different suffixes. They will help you understand the meanings of new words.

### Examples

<b>Nouns</b>		<b>Adjectives</b>		<b>Verbs</b>	
-tion	competition	-y	easy	-ize	memorize
-ance	deliverance	-ous	mountainous	-ate	refrigerate
-ence	independence	-able	capable	-en	lengthen
-ment	government	-al	musical		
-ism	Buddhism	-ic	athletic		
-ship	friendship	-ful	beautiful		
-ity	community	-less	careless		
-er	teacher				
-or	inspector				
-ee	attendee				
		<b>Adverbs</b>			
		-ly	quickly		

In this book, you will see many examples of words with these suffixes.

## 3. Recognize Word Families

Just like brothers and sisters in the same family, words can be related, too. One word can become a noun, a verb, an adjective, or an adverb by changing its suffix.

### Example

depend (verb)  
*dependenc*e (noun)  
*dependab*le (adjective)  
*dependab*ly (adverb)

These four words together make up a word family. The meaning of each word is similar to the others, but each one has a different grammatical form. How can knowing about word families help you?

- You will learn more words. When you find a new word, look in the dictionary to find other members of the same word family.
- You will understand new words. Look carefully at a new word. It might be related to a word you already know.

You will see many examples of word families in this book.

## 4. Make Your Own Word Journal

When you read, you will come across many new words, and you will need an organized way to record them.

- Use a special notebook just for recording your new words.
- Make a new page each day or each time you read a new article or story.
- For each new word, write the word, a synonym, a definition, the original sentence where you found the word, and then make up your own sentence using the word.
- Every day, review the pages from the previous days.
- Photocopy the chart below to make the pages for your word journal.

### Example

New Word	Synonym	Definition	Original Sentence	My Sentence
consider	think about	To think carefully about something	After considering all the difficulties, they decided to go ahead with the project.	I considered different schools before I chose this one.



## 5. Keep a Daily Reading Log

It is important to read something in English every day, aside from class assignments. It is important to read things that are interesting to you. You will get more out of the experience this way. It is also important to read many different kinds of things. This keeps you from getting bored, and, more important, it helps you learn a wider variety of vocabulary.

- Read for 20–30 minutes each day.
- Read things that are interesting to you.
- Read on a variety of topics.
- Read books, magazines, newspapers, and web pages.

The following steps will help you read in a way that will improve your vocabulary:

1. Read without stopping. Do not stop to look up unknown words. You can understand the general idea of a passage without understanding every word.
2. Underline or highlight unknown words, or write them on a separate piece of paper.
3. Guess the meaning of unknown words. Use the context and your knowledge of prefixes and suffixes and word families to do this.
4. Choose five key words and write them in your reading log. These should be unknown words that are important for understanding the meaning of the passage.
5. Look up the five key words in your dictionary.
6. Write a one-paragraph summary of the passage. Try to use the five key words in your summary.

**x 600 ESSENTIAL WORDS FOR THE TOEIC TEST**

Photocopy the chart below to make pages for your reading log.

**Title:** \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

No. of pages read: \_\_\_\_\_

Source: (book, web, magazine, etc.) \_\_\_\_\_

### **Key words:**

---

---

---

---

---

#### **Summary:**

# Strategies to Practice Your Vocabulary

The more you use your new vocabulary words, the better you will remember them. There are a number of things you can do to practice and review new vocabulary words.

## 1. Review Every Day

Every time you sit down to work with this book, you should look over the words from the previous lesson. Do the same every time you work with your Word Journal or Daily Reading Log.

- Review words from previous lessons
- Note words that you are unsure of
- Include these words in the following suggested practice activities

## 2. Read Out Loud

Saying your vocabulary words out loud is another way to reinforce them. You can read word lists out loud, and you can also read the passages that contain your vocabulary words. You can read out loud

- The word lists from each lesson in this book
- The Vocabulary in Context paragraphs in this book
- The passages you read for your Daily Reading Log
- The word lists in your Word Journal

## 3. Categorize Words

Make a list of words that you want to review. Be sure to include the words that have given you difficulty. Divide the words into categories. For example, you could make a list of things you have or do at home, things you have or do at an office, things you see or do at a store. Any one word might appear in more than one category.

- Choose a list of words to review
- Divide the list into categories
- Use the words from each category to write a paragraph
- Using the same words, think of new categories and make new lists

## 4. Associate Words

Choose a word from your list of words to review and list words you associate with it.

### *Examples*

Word Associations	search Things you search for: keys money jobs parking spaces
Word Associations	warning Places where you see warnings: elevators electric wires subways cigarette packages

# Lesson 1

## WORDS TO LEARN

abide by  
agreement  
assurance  
cancellation  
determine  
engage  
establish  
oblige  
party  
provision  
resolve  
specific

# Contracts

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **abide by** v., to comply with; to conform
  - a. The two parties agreed to abide by the judge's decision.
  - b. For years he has abided by a commitment to annual employee raises.
2. **agreement** n., a mutual arrangement, a contract
  - a. The landlord and tenant were in agreement that the rent should be prorated to the middle of the month.
  - b. According to the agreement, the caterer will also supply the flowers for the event.
3. **assurance** n., a guarantee; confidence
  - a. The sales associate gave his assurance that the missing keyboard would be replaced the next day.
  - b. Her self-assurance made it easy to see why she was in charge of the negotiations.
4. **cancellation** n., annulment; stopping
  - a. The cancellation of her flight caused her problems for the rest of the week.
  - b. The cancellation clause appears at the back of the contract.
5. **determine** v., to find out; to influence
  - a. After reading the contract, I was still unable to determine if our company was liable for back wages.
  - b. The skill of the union bargainers will determine whether the automotive plant will open next week.
6. **engage** v., participate; involve
  - a. Before engaging in a new business, it is important to do thorough research.
  - b. He engaged us in a fascinating discussion about current business law.
7. **establish** v., to institute permanently; to bring about
  - a. Through her many books and interviews, Dr. Wan established herself as an authority on conflict resolution.
  - b. The merger of the two companies established a powerful new corporation.
8. **oblige** v., to bind legally or morally
  - a. The contractor was obligated by the contract to work 40 hours a week.
  - b. I felt obligated to finish the project even though I could have exercised my option to quit.
9. **party** n., a person or group participating in an action or plan; the persons or sides concerned in a legal matter
  - a. The parties agreed to a settlement in their contract dispute.
  - b. The party that prepares the contract has a distinct advantage.
10. **provision** n., a measure taken beforehand; a stipulation
  - a. The father made provisions for his children through his will.
  - b. The contract contains a provision to deal with how payments are made if John loses his job..
11. **resolve** v., to deal with successfully; to declare; n., conviction
  - a. The mediator was able to resolve the problem to everyone's satisfaction.
  - b. The businessman resolved to clean out all the files by the end of the week.
12. **specific** adj., particular
  - a. The customer's specific complaint was not addressed in his e-mail.
  - b. In a contract, one specific word can change the meaning dramatically.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

abide by  
agreement  
assurance

cancel  
determine  
engaging

establishment  
obligates  
parties

provide  
resolve  
specifies

Contracts are an integral part of the workplace. In simple terms, contracts are an (1) agreement between two or more (2) parties that (3) specifies terms and (4) obligates the parties to follow them. Contracts often include the amount that a client will pay contractors and what services will be provided. For example, in your office, you may have a contract that provides (5) assurance that your copier machine or phones will be repaired within a certain amount of time. This service can either be done off-site or at your (6) establishment. A contract often states ways to (7) determine if quality of work delivered is acceptable. Well-written contracts usually (8) provide ways to (9) resolve problems like these when they happen. Before (10) engaging in a contract, both parties should think carefully, as they will have to (11) abide by the conditions specified in it. A contract usually specifies how the two parties can (12) cancel it if either party fails to meet the terms.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	agree	If both parties agree to the terms, we can finalize the contract.
noun	agreement	As soon as the labor agreement was signed, the factory resumed production of new cars and vans.
adjective	agreeable	The parties are agreeable to the terms.

verb	assure	I assure you that our drug-testing policy is applied fairly.
noun	assurance	What assurance is there that the company will still be in business?
adverb	assuredly	He spoke assuredly, but his follow-up memo showed less conviction.

verb	cancel	The man canceled his magazine subscription and got his money back.
noun	cancellation	Writers usually receive a cancellation fee even if their articles are not published.
adjective	canceled	The canceled concert ended up costing our agency millions.

verb	<u>oblige</u>	The terms of the contracts obligate us to work for at least one more month.
noun	obligation	The factory managers have a legal and moral obligation to provide a safe work site.
adjective	obligatory	He finished his obligatory military service, and then joined his father on the orange farm.

verb	<u>provide</u>	Since the machine is very reliable, why don't we cancel the service contract they provided?
noun	<u>provider</u>	We must negotiate a new contract with our Internet service provider.
noun	<u>provision</u>	The provision for canceling the contract is in the last clause.

verb	<u>specify</u>	The contract specifies the percentage of raise the workers will see next year.
noun	<u>specification</u>	The work was done according to our specifications.
adjective	<u>specific</u>	We have not chosen a specific location for the reunion.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*

1. A. B. C. D.



#### Part 2 Question—Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. What problem do the speakers have with the computer company?  | 6. What does the woman suggest doing?  |
| (A) It won't renew the contract.<br>(B) It can't repair the computer.<br>(C) It sends incorrect bills.<br>(D) It charges them for extra spare parts. | (A) Asking the company to write a new contract.<br>(B) Canceling the contract.<br>(C) Renewing the contract.<br>(D) Waiting until the contract runs out. |
| 5. When will the contract run out?   |  |
| (A) In two months.<br>(B) In nine months.<br>(C) In one year.<br>(D) In four years.  |  |

---

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 7. Who is talking?   | 9. When can the parties sign the contract?   |
| (A) A lawyer.<br>(B) An upset signer of the contract.<br>(C) A secretary.<br>(D) Someone who has canceled his agreement.               | (A) In two days.<br>(B) At the end of the week.<br>(C) Next week.<br>(D) In thirty days. |
| 8. Which part of the contract are they looking at?   |  |
| (A) A cancellation clause.<br>(B) The assurance of quality.<br>(C) The agreement on payment.<br>(D) A provision in case of bankruptcy. |  |

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

10. The two sides were no closer to a final \_\_\_\_ at midnight than they were at noon.  
 (A) agreement      (C) agree  
 (B) agreeable      (D) agreed
11. Our union representative \_\_\_\_\_ members that our rights would be defended.  
 (A) assured      (C) assuredly  
 (B) assurance      (D) assure
12. If you \_\_\_\_\_ your reservation 48 hours in advance, you will not be billed.  
 (A) will cancel      (C) cancellation  
 (B) cancel      (D) canceled
13. I don't feel any \_\_\_\_\_ to give my boss more than two weeks notice when I leave.  
 (A) oblige      (C) obliged  
 (B) obligatory      (D) obligation
14. The \_\_\_\_\_ for terminating the contract were not discussed.  
 (A) provide      (C) provider  
 (B) provisions      (D) provisioning
15. The contract calls for the union to \_\_\_\_\_ who their bargaining representative will be.  
 (A) specific      (C) specifying  
 (B) specification      (D) specify

### Part 6 Text Completion

*Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.*

#### Rental Property for Everyone

More and more people are investing in rental property these days. Whether you have a small apartment in your house to rent, or decide to invest in an apartment or office building, rental property can provide extra income for you and your family. What does every landlord need to know?

#### Leases

A lease is an \_\_\_\_ 16 \_\_\_\_ between a landlord and a tenant. Standard leases are available at most office supply stores, and many property owners find them quite satisfactory. Read the standard lease carefully to determine if it meets the needs of your situation. You may want to make some additional \_\_\_\_ 17 \_\_\_\_\_. You may want to add a pet clause, for example, or make different specifications pertaining to the security deposit. If you decide to make changes to the standard lease, you should meet with a lawyer. The lease is the most important tool you have if you need to resolve a dispute with your tenant. When you have a lease written by a lawyer, you \_\_\_\_ 18 \_\_\_\_ that you have the protection you need.

16. (A) agree  
 (B) agreed  
 (C) agreeable  
 (D) agreement
17. (A) provision  
 (B) provisions  
 (C) provider  
 (D) providers
18. (A) assure  
 (B) will assure  
 (C) are assuring  
 (D) are assured

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following letter and form.

<p><b>Santos Office Cleaners</b> 112 Main St. Windsor, Ontario</p> <p>December 15, 20—</p> <p>Mr. James Harrison 17 Hartland Road Windsor, Ontario</p> <p>Dear Mr. Harrison,</p> <p>We are very sorry that you have decided to cancel your cleaning service contract with us. In order to assure that we provide our customers with the best possible service, we always try to determine the reasons for contract cancellations. Please take a few minutes to fill out the enclosed form. This is for our information only; completing the form does not obligate you to buy any product or enter into any new agreement with our company. We appreciate your cooperation. If at any time in the future you decide to renew your contract with us, please don't hesitate to contact me.</p> <p>Sincerely, <b>Rosa Santos</b> Rosa Santos Owner</p>	<p><b>Santos Office Cleaners</b> Customer Questionnaire</p> <p>Date contract signed: March 23, 20—</p> <p>Type of facility:  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> single office  <input type="checkbox"/> office building  <input type="checkbox"/> private home  <input type="checkbox"/> other     </p> <p>Frequency of service:  <input type="checkbox"/> daily  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> weekly  <input type="checkbox"/> monthly  <input type="checkbox"/> other     </p> <p>Reason for contract cancellation (choose one):  <input type="checkbox"/> no longer need service  <input type="checkbox"/> signed contract with a different company  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> payment dispute not satisfactorily resolved  <input type="checkbox"/> specific complaint not resolved  <input type="checkbox"/> other     </p> <p>Comments: <u>I was always satisfied with the service provided by your employees. However, I am frustrated by your inability to resolve the payment issues.</u></p> <hr/> <hr/>
---	--

19. What is the purpose of the letter?
  - (A) To find out why Mr. Harrison no longer wants this service.
  - (B) To ask Mr. Harrison to renew his contract.
  - (C) To advertise new services provided by the company.
  - (D) To offer the customer a better contract.
20. What is Ms. Santos's business?
  - (A) Customer relations.
  - (B) Cleaning service.
  - (C) Contract review.
  - (D) Conflict resolution.
21. Why did this customer cancel the contract?
  - (A) The company damaged something in his office.
  - (B) The employees provided unsatisfactory service.
  - (C) He had a disagreement about his bill.
  - (D) He doesn't want this type of service anymore.
22. The word *assure* in letter one, line 2, is closest in meaning to
  - (A) guarantee.
  - (B) discover.
  - (C) prove.
  - (D) advertise.
23. The word *specific* in form two, line 15, is closest in meaning to
  - (A) personal.
  - (B) important.
  - (C) repeated.
  - (D) particular.

## Lesson 2

### WORDS TO LEARN

attract  
compare  
competition  
consume  
convince  
currently  
fad  
inspiration  
market  
persuasion  
productive  
satisfaction

# Marketing

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **attract** v., to draw by appeal
  - a. The display attracted a number of people at the convention.
  - b. The new advertising attracts the wrong kind of customer into the store.
2. **compare** v., to examine similarities and differences
  - a. Once the customer compared the two products, her choice was easy.
  - b. The price for this brand is high compared to the other brands on the market.
3. **competition** n., a contest or struggle
  - a. In the competition for afternoon diners, Hector's has come out on top.
  - b. The company has decided not to join the growing competition for dominance in the semiconductor market.
4. **consume** v., to absorb; to use up
  - a. The business plans consumed all of Fritz's attention this fall.
  - b. This printer consumes more toner than the downstairs printer.
5. **convince** v., to bring to believe by argument; to persuade
  - a. The salesman convinced his customer to buy his entire inventory of pens.
  - b. Before a business can convince customers that it provides a quality product, it must convince its marketing staff.
6. **currently** adv., happening at the present time; now
  - a. We are currently exploring plans to update the MX3 model.
  - b. Currently, customers are demanding big discounts for bulk orders.
7. **fad** n., a practice followed enthusiastically for a short time; a craze
  - a. The mini dress was a fad once thought to be finished, but now it is making a comeback.
  - b. Classic tastes may seem boring but they have proven to resist fads.
8. **inspiration** n., a thing or person that arouses a feeling
  - a. His work is an inspiration to the marketing department.
  - b. Marta's high sales in Spain were an inspiration to other European reps.
9. **market** v., the course of buying and selling a product; n., the demand for a product
  - a. When Omar first began making his chutneys, he marketed them door-to-door to gourmet shops.
  - b. The market for brightly colored clothing was brisk last year, but it's moving sluggishly this year.
10. **persuasion** n., the power to influence; a deep conviction or belief
  - a. The seminar teaches techniques of persuasion to increase sales.
  - b. Under his persuasion, she returned to school for her MBA.
11. **productive** adj., constructive; high yield
  - a. The unproductive sales meeting brought many staff complaints.
  - b. Alonzo is excited about his productive staff.
12. **satisfaction** n., happiness
  - a. Your satisfaction is guaranteed or you'll get your money back.
  - b. We will print the advertisement to your satisfaction.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

<del>attract</del>	<del>consumers</del>	<del>fad</del>	<del>persuaded</del>
<del>compared</del>	<del>convince</del>	<del>inspire</del>	<del>product</del>
<del>competes</del>	<del>current</del>	<del>market</del>	<del>satisfied</del>

Yassir is getting ready to realize his dream: opening a business that sells plants on the Internet. After completing a business plan that helped him to determine that there was demand for his (1) product in the (2) market, Yassir is ready to start promoting his business. Having (3) persuaded the bank that there was a market—that there were consumers willing to buy plants on the Internet—he needed to find these (4) consumers.

Once he has an established base, Yassir, like other business owners, will have to continually (5) attract new customers. At the same time, he must make sure current customers are (6) satisfied. In order to be satisfied, (7) current customers must be happy with the product they receive. Yassir's job is to (8) inspire these customers to gain their repeat business. To do this, he will have to (9) convince consumers that he offers a good product at a good price, especially when (10) compared to the businesses with which he (11) competes. He hopes that Internet plant buyers are here to stay and not just part of a (12) fad.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	attract	The store's poor location did not help it attract customers.
noun	attraction	Having a clown in the toy store was a foolproof attraction for getting kids to enter.
adjective	attractive	Lou ran his store on an old-fashioned premise: quality merchandise at attractive prices.

verb	compare	She compared the prices before she made a decision.
noun	comparison	There was no comparison in the quality of the two brands.
adjective	comparable	To get an average for home costs, the agent sought prices on comparable homes.

noun	competition	Try to think of yourself as someone who leads the competition.
verb	compete	We competed against three or four other agencies to get this contract.
adjective	competitive	His competitive character made him quite successful in his department.

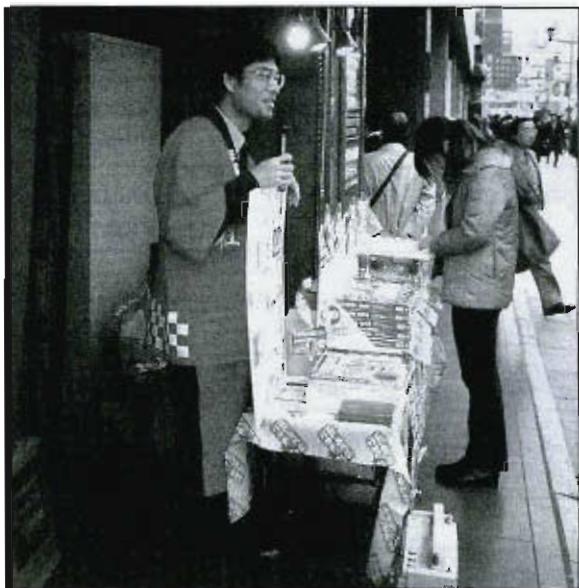
verb	consume	The analyst was able to consume new information quickly.
noun	consumer	The government tracks consumer spending closely.
adjective	consumable	He ran a study of the use of consumable goods.

verb	market	The sales department disagreed about how to market their newest product.
noun	marketing	A good director of marketing can find a way to sell even an unattractive product.
adjective	marketable	Once the sales manager decided to change the packaging, the product became much more marketable.

noun	satisfaction	Our highest priority is customer satisfaction.
verb	satisfy	Henri was perfectly satisfied with his new fishing rod.
adjective	satisfactory	The rods were not in satisfactory condition.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A B C D

**Part 2 Question-Response**

*Listen to the question and the three possible responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A B C      3. A B C

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 4. Why does the store need to be more competitive?<br>(A) There's currently a recession.<br>(B) Productivity has dropped lately.<br>(C) There's a new competitor nearby.<br>(D) New employees have little experience. | 6. Who will the woman call?<br>(A) A photographer.<br>(B) A photocopy salesperson.<br>(C) A customer.<br>(D) A marketing executive. |
| 5. How will the store attract more customers?<br>(A) By giving them trial products.<br>(B) By giving them discounts.<br>(C) By selling new products.<br>(D) By featuring happy customers in ads.                      |   |

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 7. Who would listen to this talk?<br>(A) Customers.<br>(B) Competitors.<br>(C) Students.<br>(D) Salespeople.  | 9. Where will the listeners be this afternoon?<br>(A) At home.<br>(B) In a workshop.<br>(C) At a store.<br>(D) With a client. |
| 8. What are they trying to identify?<br>(A) Their weaknesses.<br>(B) How to price their service.<br>(C) Their strong points.<br>(D) Who the competition is. |   |

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

10. Marketing specialists have conducted extensive studies of what \_\_\_\_\_ customers to a particular product.  
 (A) attractive      (C) attracts  
 (B) attraction      (D) attracting
11. Smart shoppers will \_\_\_\_\_ similar brands of an item before making a decision.  
 (A) compare      (C) comparative  
 (B) comparison      (D) comparable
12. If our work isn't to your \_\_\_\_\_, please notify us within 60 days.  
 (A) satisfy      (C) satisfaction  
 (B) satisfactory      (D) satisfied
13. Manufacturers like to know what features \_\_\_\_\_ find useful.  
 (A) consumers      (C) consumption  
 (B) consume      (D) consumable
14. Without good \_\_\_\_\_, good products can go unsold.  
 (A) market      (C) marketed  
 (B) marketable      (D) marketing
15. A careful analysis of the \_\_\_\_\_ products on the market indicated that our product lacked innovation and optional features.  
 (A) compete      (C) competed  
 (B) competing      (D) competition

### Part 6 Text Completion

*Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.*

Dear Valued Customer,

Smart consumers like yourself are concerned about your family's nutrition. Health is a top priority, and so is value. You want high-quality food products at competitive prices. That's why we are introducing Farm Fresh, our new line of 100% natural and organic frozen dinners. We know you'll love the great natural taste of Farm Fresh dinners such as Turkey and Wild Rice, Wild Salmon with Spring Greens, and Country Chicken with Vegetables. Farm Fresh dinners are \_\_\_\_\_ 16 \_\_\_\_\_ packaged with 100% recyclable materials. But we don't have to use a lot of fancy words to convince you to enjoy Farm Fresh frozen dinners. We will let their great taste \_\_\_\_\_ 17 \_\_\_\_\_ you to keep coming back for more. Please use the enclosed coupons to buy up to six Farm Fresh dinners of your choice at 25% off the usual retail price. We know you \_\_\_\_\_ 18 \_\_\_\_\_ by the great taste and the great price.

Sincerely,

Rosa Martello  
National Frozen Foods, Inc.

16. (A) attract  
 (B) attractive  
 (C) attractively  
 (D) attraction
17. (A) persuade  
 (B) persuades  
 (C) to persuade  
 (D) will persuade
18. (A) satisfy  
 (B) satisfied  
 (C) will satisfy  
 (D) will be satisfied

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following report.

**Catherine Cosmetics Company**  
**Sales Department Meeting Report**  
**March 29, 20—**

We reviewed the sales figures for the past quarter. We are currently experiencing a significant drop in sales in our hair care products. This has been going on since the beginning of the year when we introduced the improved version of our top-selling hair care line, *Catherine's Curls*. Our advertising has not been successful in convincing more consumers to buy these products. We know there is a market for products such as these manufactured with 100% natural ingredients and no testing on animals. In fact, our competitors are doing quite well in this area and have been for a number of years. We know from our research that the popularity of all-natural cosmetic products is more than just a passing fad, and this is why we decided to branch out into this area. We have carefully compared our products to those of our three largest competitors. We have looked at product ingredients, packaging, target consumers, pricing, and sales strategies. Our product is similar, or even better, in all ways but one. Our packaging is significantly less eye-catching than that of our competitors, and it does not convey the important aspects of the products to the consumer, that is, that these products are entirely made with natural ingredients. Therefore, in order to attract more customers, we recommend employing a new designer to create better packaging for the *Catherine's Curls* line of products.

19. When did the sales department have a meeting?
- At the beginning of the year.
  - In March.
  - A quarter of a year ago.
  - At the end of last year.
20. Which of the following might be part of the *Catherine's Curls* line of products?
- Shampoo.
  - Hand lotion.
  - Nail polish.
  - Lipstick.
21. According to the report, why are fewer people buying *Catherine's Curls* products?
- The prices are too high.
  - The ingredients aren't natural.
  - The packages aren't attractive.
  - The type of product is not popular.
22. The word *market* in line 5 is closest in meaning to
- product
  - factory
  - purchase
  - demand
23. The word *fad* in line 8 is closest in meaning to
- need
  - fashion
  - event
  - wish

## Lesson 3

### WORDS TO LEARN

characteristic  
consequence  
consider  
cover  
expiration  
frequently  
imply  
promise  
protect  
reputation  
require  
variety

# Warranties

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **characteristic** adj., revealing of individual traits; n., an individual trait
  - a. The cooking pot has features characteristic of the brand, such as "heat-resistant" handles.
  - b. One characteristic of the store is that it is slow in mailing refund checks.
2. **consequence** n., that which follows necessarily
  - a. The consequence of not following the service instructions for your car is that the warranty is invalidated.
  - b. As a consequence of not having seen a dentist for several years, Lydia had several cavities.
3. **consider** v., to think about carefully
  - a. The customer considered buying the DVD player until he learned that the warranty coverage was very limited.
  - b. After considering all the options, Della decided to buy a used car.
4. **cover** v., to provide protection against
  - a. Will my medical insurance cover this surgery?
  - b. Her car insurance provided for complete coverage against collision.
5. **expiration** n., the end
  - a. Have you checked the expiration date on this yogurt?
  - b. We can expect that the expiration of our Japan contract will impact sales next year.
6. **frequently** adv., occurring commonly; widespread
  - a. Appliances frequently come with a one-year warranty.
  - b. Warranties for this kind of appliance are frequently limited in their coverage.
7. **imply** v., to indicate by inference
  - a. The guarantee on the iPod implied that all damages were covered under warranty for one year.
  - b. The travel agent implied that our hotel was not in the safest part of the city, but, when pressed for details, he said the location was fine.
8. **promise** n., a pledge, a commitment; v., to pledge to do, bring about, or provide
  - a. A warranty is a promise the manufacturer makes to the consumer.
  - b. The sales associate promised that our new mattress would arrive by noon on Saturday.
9. **protect** v., to guard
  - a. Consumer laws are designed to protect the public against unscrupulous vendors.
  - b. You can protect yourself from scams by getting detailed information on the seller.
10. **reputation** n., the overall quality of character
  - a. Even though the salesperson showed me a product I had never heard of, I bought it because of the good reputation of the manufacturer.
  - b. The company knew that the reputation of its products was the most important asset it had.
11. **require** v., to deem necessary or essential
  - a. A car warranty may require the owner to have it serviced by a certified mechanic.
  - b. The law requires that each item clearly display the warranty information.
12. **variety** n., many different kinds
  - a. There's a variety of standard terms that you'll find in warranties.
  - b. A variety of unexpected problems appeared after the product had been on the market for about six months.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

characteristics	<del>coverage</del>	<del>implies</del>	<u>reputations</u>
consequences	<del>expire</del>	<del>promise</del>	<del>required</del>
<u>consider</u>	<u>frequently</u>	<u>protect</u>	vary

Warranties are a seller's (1) promise to stand behind its products. Most major purchases like computers or cars come with a warranty, as do smaller purchases, like stereos or other electronic housewares. Warranties are not (2) required by law, but are (3) frequently found on most products. If you are making a purchase, you should (4) consider the individual (5) characteristics of a warranty, as each can (6) vary in the amount of (7) coverage it provides. At the minimum, warranties are required to promise that the product will do what it (8) implies that it will do; for example, that a blender will blend or a hair dryer will dry hair. Most warranties are good for a fixed time, then they (9) expire. You can (10) protect yourself by buying products from companies with good (11) reputations and taking good care of your new purchase. There are (12) consequences to not taking care of a product, as most warranties require that you use the product in a certain manner.

## WORD FAMILIES

adjective	<u>characteristic</u>	One characteristic of the new Lexus is its computerized seat settings.
verb	<u>characterize</u>	This line is characterized by its bold flavor and spicy <u>aftertaste</u> .
adverb	<u>characteristically</u>	Characteristically, she accused middle-level management of the accounting error.

verb	<u>consider</u>	You should consider carefully whether a product will meet your needs.
noun	<u>consideration</u>	After long consideration, Heloise decided that the five-year warranty would be sufficient.
adjective	<u>considerable</u>	The fee for the extra year of protection was a considerable expense.

verb	<u>imply</u>	She implied that she had graduated from Harvard.
noun	<u>implication</u>	What are the implications of the accident?
adjective	<u>implicit</u>	It is implicit in her demands that if she doesn't get the promotion, she will leave the company.

verb	<u>protect</u>	Juan protected the warranty by taking excellent care of his lawn mower.
noun	<u>protection</u>	For your own protection, you should have a warranty that provides for a replacement product.
adjective	<u>protective</u>	Alfredo is very protective of the condition of his car and gets all the preventive maintenance his warranty requires.

noun	<u>reputation</u>	The good reputation of the manufacturer inspired Maria Jose to try the new product.
adjective	<u>reputable</u>	Because the company had a reputable name, I did not spend sufficient time reading the details of the warranty.
adjective	<u>reputed</u>	The new store is reputed to carry items that are not of the highest quality.

verb	<u>require</u>	The warranty requires that you send the watch to an approved repair shop to have it fixed.
noun	<u>requirement</u>	The terms of the warranty divulge the legal requirement the manufacturer has to the consumer.
adjective	<u>requisite</u>	The warranty spelled out the requisite steps to take to request a replacement product.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION

#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1.  A  B  C  D



#### Part 2 Question–Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2.  A  B  C      3.  A  B  C

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

4. How long is the basic warranty effective?  
 (A) Thirty days.  
 (B) Sixty days.  
(C) One year.  
 (D) Two years.
5. What will happen if the woman uses an unapproved mechanic?  
 (A) There are no consequences.  
(B) The warranty is no longer effective.  
 (C) Protection is decreased by 50%.  
 (D) She will have full coverage.
6. What does the woman decide to do?  
(A) Take her car to an approved mechanic.  
 (B) Buy the extended warranty.  
 (C) Refuse the basic warranty.  
 (D) Buy a different car.

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

7. What is the point of the talk?  
 (A) Items under warranty must be fixed.  
 (B) If an item is misused, the warranty may be invalidated.  
 (C) Machines with unusual wear are difficult to repair.  
(D) Customers often don't understand warranties.
8. Who is the audience for this talk?  
(A) A factory repairperson.  
 (B) A customer.  
 (C) Someone who rents machines.  
 (D) Buyers.
9. How can a customer receive money back for a defective product?  
 (A) Follow the directions on the package.  
 (B) Return it to the place of purchase.  
 (C) Repackage it carefully.  
(D) Return it within 30 days.

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. The timing belt \_\_\_\_\_ shows signs of wear after about 180,000 miles.  
 (A) character      (C) characterize  
(B) characteristic      (D) characteristically
11. Jacques and Louisa will only \_\_\_\_\_ purchasing appliances that come with a money-back guarantee.  
 (A) consideration      (C) considering  
(B) consider      (D) considerable
12. If there is any \_\_\_\_\_ of the director's involvement, we need to follow up swiftly and thoroughly.  
 (A) imply      (C) implicated  
(B) implicit      (D) implication
13. The level of \_\_\_\_\_ implied by the warranty was misleading.  
 (A) protect      (C) protection  
(B) protective      (D) protector
14. It can be very helpful to consider the \_\_\_\_\_ of the manufacturer and the merchant when making a major purchase.  
 (A) reputation      (C) reputing  
(B) reputable      (D) reputed
15. If the appliance breaks down within two years of purchase, the manufacturer is \_\_\_\_\_ to send you a replacement at no charge.  
 (A) requiring      (C) requirement  
(B) requisite      (D) required

### Part 6 Text Completion

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

#### One-Year Limited Warranty

This warranty 16 the purchaser from all malfunctions of the product due to defects in materials or workmanship. Only the original purchaser of the product is covered. Resale of the product automatically invalidates this warranty. This warranty 17 the manufacturer to repair any defective product or to refund the full purchase price to the purchaser, at the manufacturer's discretion. The manufacturer's liability does not exceed the purchase price of the product. This warranty does not imply that the purchaser has any rights in the case of a defective product beyond those stated herein. This warranty 18 one year from the date of purchase. A receipt or other proof of purchase is required in order to make claims under the terms of this warranty.

16. (A) protects  
 (B) protectors  
 (C) protection  
 (D) protective
17. (A) require  
 (B) requires  
(C) is requiring  
 (D) has required
18. (A) should expire  
 (B) might expire  
(C) will expire  
 (D) can expire

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following two letters.

**Kitchen Electronics, Inc.**

October 12, 20—

Mrs. Sophie Bordeaux  
118 Montrose Street  
Stoneybrook, MI

Dear Mrs. Bordeaux,

We received the defective toaster which you returned to us asking for a full refund under the terms of the one-year warranty. Unfortunately, the warranty on the toaster expired a month ago. The terms of the warranty do not cover your product once it has expired. Consequently, we will not be able to send you a refund. However, we will be able to send you a refurbished toaster of the same model in exchange for the defective one if you desire. Please let us know if such an arrangement would be satisfactory to you.

Please don't hesitate to contact me if you have any questions. We appreciate your business.

Sincerely,

**Matthew Bodine**

Matthew Bodine  
Customer Service Manager

November 1, 20—

Matthew Bodine  
Customer Service Manager  
Kitchen Electronics, Inc.  
194294 Honeywell Boulevard  
Victoria Springs, AL

Dear Mr. Bodine,

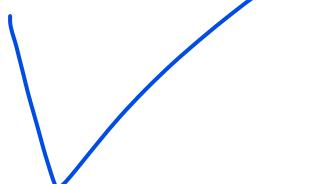
I have received your letter offering to send me a refurbished toaster in place of my defective one. I had not realized that my warranty had already expired. After considering the matter, I have decided to accept the refurbished toaster. Your company has a good reputation, and I frequently use your products. In fact, this is the first time I have ever had a problem with anything I have purchased from you. Therefore, I am sure that the refurbished toaster will work as well as a brand new one. However, I would like to be assured that the refurbished toaster will be protected by a warranty the same as a new toaster would be. If this is the case, then please send me the toaster as soon as possible. Thank you.

Sincerely,

**Sophie Bordeaux**

Sophie Bordeaux

19. Why did the customer return the toaster?  
 (A) It doesn't work.  
 (B) It was too expensive.  
 (C) She wants a brand new one.  
 (D) She prefers a different model.
20. When did she purchase the toaster?  
 (A) A month ago.  
 (B) Last October.  
 (C) Exactly one year ago.  
(D) A little over a year ago.
21. What will she get in place of the returned toaster?  
 (A) Nothing.  
 (B) A refund.  
(C) A brand new toaster.  
(D) A different, repaired toaster.
22. The word *considering* in line 4 of the second letter is closest in meaning to  
 (A) reading about  
(B) thinking about  
 (C) talking about  
 (D) worrying about
23. The word *frequently* in line 6 of the second letter is closest in meaning to  
(A) often  
 (B) rarely  
 (C) never  
 (D) occasionally



## Lesson 4

### WORDS TO LEARN

address  
avoid  
demonstrate  
develop  
evaluate  
gather  
offer  
primarily  
risk  
strategy  
strong  
substitution

# Business Planning

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **address** n., a formal speech; v., to direct to the attention of
  - a. The article praised her address to the steering committee.
  - b. Marco's business plan addresses the needs of small business owners.
2. **avoid** v., to stay clear of; to keep from happening
  - a. To avoid going out of business, owners should prepare a proper business plan.
  - b. Lloyd's errors in accounting could have been avoided by a business consultation with his banker.
3. **demonstrate** v., to show clearly and deliberately; to present by example
  - a. Alban's business plan demonstrated that he had put a lot of thought into making his dream a reality.
  - b. The professor demonstrated through a case study that a business plan can impress a lender.
4. **develop** v., to expand, progress, or improve
  - a. Lily developed her ideas into a business plan by taking a class at the community college.
  - b. The restaurant Wanda opened ten years ago has developed into a national chain.
5. **evaluate** v., to determine the value or impact of
  - a. It's important to evaluate your competition when making a business plan.
  - b. The lenders evaluated our creditability and decided to loan us money.
6. **gather** v., to accumulate; to conclude
  - a. We gathered information for our plan from many sources.
  - b. I gather that interest rates for small businesses will soon change.
7. **offer** n., a proposal; v., to propose; to present in order to meet a need or satisfy a requirement
  - a. Devon accepted our offer to write the business plan.
  - b. Jackie must offer her banker new statistics in order to encourage the bank to lend her money toward her start-up business.
8. **primarily** adv., first; most importantly
  - a. We are primarily concerned with convincing the board of directors to apply for the second loan.
  - b. The developers are thinking primarily of how to enter the South American market.
9. **risk** n., the chance of loss or damage
  - a. The primary risk for most start-up businesses is insufficient capital.
  - b. Expanding into a new market is a big risk.
10. **strategy** n., a plan of action
  - a. A business plan is a strategy for running a business and avoiding problems.
  - b. Let's develop a strategy for promoting our ice cream parlor.
11. **strong** adj., powerful; economically or financially sound
  - a. The professor made a strong argument for the value of a good business plan.
  - b. Even in a strong economic climate many businesses fail, so do your planning carefully.
12. **substitution** n., replacement
  - a. Your substitution of fake names for real ones makes the document seem insincere.
  - b. There is no substitution for hard work and perseverance.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

address	develop	offered	strategy
avoid	evaluation	primary	strength
demonstrate	gathering	risks	substitute

Every business must (1) \_\_\_\_\_ a business plan. The business plan's (2) \_\_\_\_\_ purpose is to improve the entrepreneur's control over the business and to help him (3) \_\_\_\_\_ common mistakes. It is not an overstatement to say that a business will fail or succeed on the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of its business plan, so there is no (5) \_\_\_\_\_ for a well-prepared plan. The business plan documents the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ for growing the business. Think of the business plan as a road map that describes in which direction the company is going, what its goals are, and how it is going to get there.

In developing the plan, the entrepreneur will conduct research to determine a systematic and realistic (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of the company's chances for success in the marketplace. In creating the plan, the entrepreneur must research the company's target market and define its potential. The entrepreneur must be able to prove through research that customers in the market need the good or service that is (8) \_\_\_\_\_ and that a sufficient number of potential customers exists to support the business.

A business plan also looks at the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ the business faces. Chief among these is competitors. The business plan must analyze the company's competition by (10) \_\_\_\_\_ information on competitors' market share, products, and strategies. The plan should (11) \_\_\_\_\_ what distinguishes the entrepreneur's products or services from others already in the market. It is also common for businesses to fail because the owner fails to invest or seek sufficient capital to run the business. A good business plan should (12) \_\_\_\_\_ this issue as well.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	avoid	It is best to avoid get-rich-quick schemes.
noun	avoidance	Your avoidance of these issues will not make them go away.
adjective	avoided	The avoided question became more important over time.

verb	demonstrate	Let me demonstrate how this computer program works.
noun	demonstration	After the lecture, there was a demonstration of new marketing techniques.
adjective	demonstrative	The densely encoded programming was demonstrative of the computer language of the era.

verb	develop	Our assignment is to develop a cogent business plan.
noun	development	The plan was under development and would not be ready for months.
noun	developer	The job developer was kept busy trying to place the recent college graduates.

verb	evaluate	Please review these articles and evaluate their usefulness for our plan.
noun	evaluation	Yoko feared the professor's evaluation of her business plan.
noun	evaluator	The independent evaluator reviewed our business plan and gave us good feedback.

verb	strategize	Instead of going into a panic, let's strategize the best way to meet the deadline.
noun	strategy	The business plan lays out a strategy for future growth.
adjective	strategic	The handout outlined the strategic points to cover in a business plan.

noun	substitution	The substitution of gasses is not so easy in this experiment.
verb	substitute	Don't try to substitute intuition for good planning.
adjective	substituted	Customers complain whenever the substituted product is of lesser value, even though we don't charge them for it.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1.  A  B  C  D

**Part 2 Question-Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2.  A  B  C      3.  A  B  C

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

4. How do the speakers feel about Alexa's business plan?  
 (A) She has gathered too much data.  
 (B) She has taken on too much risk.  
 (C) She has made many obvious mistakes.  
 (D) She is serious-minded and cautious.
5. How will the man help Alexa?  
 (A) By doing market research.   
 (B) By searching for an office.  
 (C) By pointing out her mistakes.  
 (D) By nominating her for an award.
6. According to the man, what is the most important strategy for success?  
 (A) Investing in a good sound system.  
 (B) Having a good business plan.   
 (C) Eliminating all risk.  
 (D) Studying the market.

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

7. What is the topic of the talk?  
 (A) Long-term growth plans.   
 (B) An offer for a leveraged buyout.   
 (C) How to minimize risk.  
 (D) Where to borrow funds.
8. How will the company fund its growth?  
 (A) Bank loans.   
 (B) Profits.  
 (C) Sale of stocks.  
 (D) Owner investment.
9. When will the evaluation begin?  
 (A) At the end of this year.  
 (B) At the beginning of next year.   
 (C) In two years.  
 (D) In a few years.

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. You cannot \_\_\_\_\_ learning how to use the new software as it will be needed in daily operations from now on.  
 (A) avoid      ✓ (C) avoiding  
 (B) avoided     (D) avoidance
11. I don't want to intrude, but would you like me to \_\_\_\_\_ how to use that machine?  
 ✓(A) demonstrate (C) demonstrative  
 (B) demonstration (D) demonstrator
12. While you are \_\_\_\_\_ your business plan, it is a good idea to keep a resource library of valuable materials.  
 (A) develop      (C) developing    ✓  
 (B) development   (D) developer
13. After you turn in your business plan, you will receive a written \_\_\_\_\_ of your work within two weeks.  
 (A) evaluator     (C) evaluate  
 (B) evaluative    (D) evaluation    ✓
14. If we think \_\_\_\_\_, we can come up with a plan that promises success.  
 (A) strategize    (C) strategically  
 (B) strategic     (D) strategist    ✓
15. It is now legal to \_\_\_\_\_ a generic brand drug for a prescription medicine if you have the patient's consent.  
 ✓(A) substitute   (C) substituting  
 (B) substituted   (D) substitution

### Part 6 Text Completion

#### Memo

To: Stephen Saunders, President  
 From: Willa Richardson, Marketing Department  
 Re: Changes in market

In order to address the changes that are currently taking place in the market, I believe we need to modify our business plan. I \_\_\_\_\_ data for the past several months. The information clearly shows that younger and younger people are becoming interested in purchasing products such as ours. We need to develop a \_\_\_\_\_ to reach this younger age group. We need to redirect some of our resources toward this goal. I think that if we make this a priority over the next year, we will have a much \_\_\_\_\_ position against our competitors. If we don't, we risk losing the market share that we already have. I would like to share the results of my research with you. It demonstrates the need to focus our energy toward this younger age group. Please let me know if we can meet this week to discuss it.

16. (A) gather  
 (B) am gathering  
 (C) had gathered  
 (D) have been gathering
17. (A) strategy  
 (B) strategize  
 (C) strategic  
 (D) strategically
18. (A) strong  
 (B) more strong  
 (C) stronger  
 (D) strongest

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following article.

When developing a plan for a new business, the entrepreneur quite naturally wants to eliminate all risk. While it is impossible to avoid some risk, the goal is to minimize it as much as possible. How can we do this? Thorough research and careful planning are the keys. There are two parts to good research. First, you must demonstrate that there is a need for the product or service you plan to offer. Are there enough people out there who would be willing to pay for it? Second, you must look at your competition. What do you have to offer that your competitors do not? Is your product or service of better quality in some way? Is it cheaper or more easily available? Is there a niche in the market that your competitors are not addressing? If what you have to offer is identical to what your competitors are offering, your business is not likely to be successful. These are some things to consider when evaluating how well you can measure up against the competition. Once you have evaluated a need for your product or service and determined how yours will be different from your competitors', you are ready to begin the next part of your plan—financing.

19. What is this article mostly about?

- (A) Financing new businesses.
- (B) How to price products.
- (C) The need for research.
- (D) The best marketing strategies.

20. What does the author say about risk?

- (A) We should try to reduce it.
- (B) We must avoid it.
- (C) We can eliminate it with careful planning.
- (D) It is the key to success.

21. According to the article, what can lead to the failure of a new business?

- (A) Offering a cheaper product.
- (B) Selling the exact same product as the competitors sell.
- (C) Selling only to a niche in the market.
- (D) Offering only services and not products.

22. The word *addressing* in line 15 is closest in meaning to

- (A) focusing on
- (B) calling on
- (C) giving up
- (D) staying away from

23. The word *demonstrate* in line 7 is closest in meaning to

- (A) felt
- (B) created
- (C) removed
- (D) shown

## Lesson 5

### WORDS TO LEARN

accommodate  
arrangement  
association  
attend  
get in touch  
hold  
location  
overcrowded  
register  
select  
session  
take part in

# Conferences

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **accommodate** v., to fit; to provide with something needed
  - a. The meeting room was large enough to accommodate the various needs of the groups using it.
  - b. Because the deadline for reserving rooms was past, the hotel manager could not accommodate our need for more rooms.
2. **arrangement** n., the plan or organization
  - a. The travel arrangements were taken care of by Sara, Mr. Billings's capable assistant.
  - b. The arrangement of speakers was alphabetical to avoid any hurt feelings.
3. **association** n., an organization of persons or groups having a common interest; a relationship or society
  - a. Membership in a trade or professional association provides business contacts and mutual support.
  - b. Local telephone companies formed an association to serve common goals, meet their common needs, and improve efficiency.
4. **attend** v., to go to; to pay attention to
  - a. We expect more than 100 members to attend the annual meeting.
  - b. The hotel manager attended to all our needs promptly.
5. **get in touch** v., to make contact with
  - a. As soon as we arrive at the hotel, we will get in touch with the manager about the unexpected guests.
  - b. The registration desk is a good central location for people to get in touch with each other.
6. **hold** v., to accommodate; to conduct
  - a. This meeting room holds at least 80 people comfortably.
  - b. She holds an annual seminar that is very popular.
7. **location** n., a position or site
  - a. The location of the meeting was changed from the Red Room to the Green Room.
  - b. Disney World was the perfect location for the annual meeting since many members could bring their families.
8. **overcrowded** adj., too crowded
  - a. As soon as the guests entered the dining room for dinner, Sue Lin could see that the room would become overcrowded.
  - b. To avoid being overcrowded, we limited the number of guests that members could bring.
9. **register** n., a record; v., to record
  - a. According to the register, more than 250 people attended the afternoon seminar.
  - b. Hotels ask all guests to register and give a home address.
10. **select** v., to choose from a group; adj., specially chosen
  - a. The conference participant selected the marketing seminar from the various offerings.
  - b. The winners were a select group.
11. **session** n., a meeting
  - a. The morning sessions tend to fill up first, so sign up early.
  - b. Due to the popularity of this course, we will offer two sessions.
12. **take part in** v., to join or participate
  - a. The format for the session is very informal, which makes it easier for people to take part in the discussion.
  - b. We could not get enough people to take part in the meeting, so we canceled it.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

accommodate	attending	location	select
arrangements	get in touch	overcrowded	sessions
associations	hold	register	take part in

Many (1) associations and organizations hold annual conferences so that their members can (2) get in touch with each other and (3) take part in educational programs. When planning a conference, event coordinators try to have a variety of (4) sessions so people (5) attending can (6) select a workshop or meeting that best suits their needs. When making (7) arrangements for a conference, they look for a site that will (8) accommodate all their needs. The site should be able to (9) hold the number of people expected to attend, without the meeting rooms being (10) overcrowded. Good event coordinators tour the site before making a final decision because brochures cannot show all the necessary details. Having meetings in a fun (11) locations can really encourage people to (12) register for the meeting.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	accommodate	The hotel staff was able to accommodate our many needs for the conference.
noun	accommodation	The accommodations at the hotel include swimming pool, gym, and restaurant.
adjective	accommodating	The conference center manager was extremely accommodating and tried to make our stay pleasant.

noun	arrangement	Nobody could understand the seating arrangement.
verb	arrange	We will arrange the chairs in a circle.
adjective	arranged	The arranged flowers didn't look like those we chose from the catalog.

noun	association	Any association with the former company will put us in a negative light.
verb	associate	Do you think customers will associate the failed upstart with ours?
adjective	associated	The associated costs will put this project out of our reach.

verb	attend	Gillian attended the reception for visiting ambassadors.
noun	attendee	More than 500 attendees packed the ballroom.
noun	attendance	Attendance was low for this year's annual meeting.

verb	select	Since there are overlapping workshops, participants will have to select which one most appeals to them.
noun	selection	His dinner selection of stuffed quail sounded better on the menu than it looked on the plate.
adjective	selective	The planning committee was very selective about who received invitations.

verb	register	He registered for his classes via the Internet.
noun	register	The hotel's register showed that only half the members had arrived.
noun	registration	Registration is a detail-oriented and crucial part of running any meeting.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION

#### Part 1 Photo



*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*

1. A B C D



#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A B C      3. A B C

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

4. Why are they having difficulty arranging a site for the conference?

- (A) It's a busy time of year.
- (B) They procrastinated.
- (C) Their group is large.
- (D) The coordinator has been sick.

6. How many people do they expect at the conference?

- (A) Two hundred.
- (B) Four hundred.
- (C) Five hundred.
- (D) Ten hundred.

5. When will the conference take place?

- (A) At the end of this month.
- (B) Next month.
- (C) At the end of this year.
- (D) Next year.

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

7. What is the topic of the talk?

- (A) Accommodating disabled people.
- (B) Legal responsibility for off-site events.
- (C) Arranging conferences.
- (D) Preparing convention catalogs.

9. How should attendees request a special interpreter?

- (A) By asking for one at the time of registration.
- (B) By getting in touch with the head of the facility.
- (C) By registering ahead of the other attendees.
- (D) By requesting one when they arrive at a session.

8. Where are the speakers?

- (A) In a hospital.
- (B) Off site.
- (C) At a party.
- (D) At a convention center.

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. The banquet room could \_\_\_\_\_ up to 750 for dinner.  
 (A) accommodated      (C) accommodation  
 (B) accommodate      (D) accommodating
11. Helen made the final \_\_\_\_\_ for use of the conference room with the hotel's general manager.  
 (A) arranging      (C) arrangement  
 (B) arrange      (D) arranged
12. For most people, Samco is \_\_\_\_\_ with computer chip production.  
 (A) associate      (C) associating  
 (B) associated      (D) association
13. We expect that fewer guests will \_\_\_\_\_ the evening gala.  
 (A) attend      (C) attention  
 (B) attending      (D) attendance
14. The association's members were asked to \_\_\_\_\_ for the special session well in advance because space in the lecture hall was limited.  
 (A) register      (C) registering  
 (B) registration      (D) registrar
15. By adding more class \_\_\_\_\_, the staff was able to please more members.  
 (A) select      (C) selecting  
 (B) selective      (D) selections

### Part 6 Text Completion

All members of the Countywide Small Business Owners Association are invited to take part in our annual conference, to be held on March 31 at the Grand Hotel in Marysville.

The conference begins at 8:30 A.M. with an address by this year's guest, Cynthia Quinn, owner of Designs by Cynthia, Inc., and winner of numerous business and community awards. Morning small group sessions begin at 9:30. Attendees can 16 from a variety of session topics including Financing Your New Business; Selecting the Best Location; and Formulas for Success. Lunch will be served at 12:30, followed by afternoon small group sessions at 2:00.

This is the Association's most popular event, so 17 early to assure your place. Fill out the form below and send it to the Association Secretary by March 1. To arrange overnight 18 at the Grand Hotel, get in touch with the hotel

- reservations clerk at 498-1231. Mention the conference in order to get a special discount price.
- (B) must register  
 (C) registering  
 (D) register
16. (A) select  
 (B) selection  
 (C) selective  
 (D) selectively
17. (A) will register
18. (A) accommodate  
 (B) accommodating  
 (C) accommodations  
 (D) accommodates

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following two e-mails.

To: Max Sullivan  
From: Martha Reynolds  
Subj: Conference

Max,

I have been working on the arrangements for our upcoming conference. I've looked into the City Convention Center, and I think it is the most convenient location. It is close to public transportation and hotels. The accommodations are also excellent. The rooms are large, and we can reserve up to ten meeting rooms. However, the price is almost 50% more than we agreed we could spend. The other choice is the Mayfield Hotel. Many associations hold their conventions there. It is a nice place, and the price is reasonable. However, it is not close to the subway. Also, it is much smaller than the Convention Center. I think we could only get three meeting rooms. Would that be enough? Please get in touch with me today to let me know what you think. I need to reserve a place soon.

Martha

To: Martha Reynolds  
From: Max Sullivan  
Subj: Re: Conference

Martha,

In regard to selecting a location for the conference, I think the Convention Center is better than the Mayfield Hotel. The hotel is much too small. Remember, we plan to hold at least five sessions at a time. We couldn't do that at the hotel. We expect more people to take part in the convention this year, so it is important to have a space that can accommodate everyone. About the price, I think we can rearrange the budget a bit in order to be able to pay for it. So go ahead and reserve the space at the Convention Center.

Max

19. What are these e-mails about?
  - (A) The date of the conference.
  - (B) The conference site.
  - (C) The topics of the conference sessions.
  - (D) The number of conference attendees.
20. How many meeting rooms will they need?
  - (A) Only three.
  - (B) At least five.
  - (C) Up to ten.
  - (D) Almost 50.
21. What does Max prefer about the Convention Center?
  - (A) The price.
  - (B) The location.
  - (C) The size.
  - (D) The people.
22. The words *get in touch* in line 14 of the first e-mail are closest in meaning to
  - (A) offer
  - (B) discuss
  - (C) provide
  - (D) contact
23. The word *selecting* in line 1 of the second e-mail is closest in meaning to
  - (A) choosing
  - (B) reserving
  - (C) comparing
  - (D) seeking

**Word Review #1****Lessons 1–5 General Business**

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

1. Although negotiating a new contract was complicated, both parties came to an \_\_\_\_\_ that satisfied them.  
(A) agree  
(B) agreeable  
(C) agreement  
(D) agreeably
2. \_\_\_\_\_ conferences are a good way for employees to get in touch with people in similar organizations.  
(A) Associating  
(B) Associated  
(C) Associations  
(D) Association
3. When the family decided to open a restaurant, they had to find a \_\_\_\_\_ that would attract business.  
(A) locate  
(B) locator  
(C) locating  
(D) location
4. A \_\_\_\_\_ company will honor the terms set forth in its warranty.  
(A) repute  
(B) reputedly  
(C) reputation  
(D) reputable
5. The goal of marketing is to \_\_\_\_\_ customers, to persuade them to buy a product or service.  
(A) attract  
(B) attractive  
(C) attraction  
(D) attractiveness
6. Once both parties have agreed to a contract, they have also agreed to abide by every \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) specify  
(B) specific  
(C) specification  
(D) specificity
7. Good business planning includes developing an overall \_\_\_\_\_, addressing likely objections, and demonstrating why potential buyers need the product or service.  
(A) strategy  
(B) strategic  
(C) strategically  
(D) strategize
8. When you register for out-of-town conferences, make room \_\_\_\_\_ as soon as you decide to attend.  
(A) accommodate  
(B) accommodations  
(C) accommodating  
(D) accommodated
9. Marketers must avoid making promises they can't keep while they \_\_\_\_\_ the quality of their product or service.  
(A) demonstrate  
(B) demonstration  
(C) demonstrative  
(D) demonstrable
10. A consultant must adhere carefully to his contract if he wants to \_\_\_\_\_ a good business reputation.  
(A) establish  
(B) establishment  
(C) established  
(D) establishing

*Choose the one word or phrase that best completes each sentence.*

Are you looking for a place 11 your next conference? The Littleton Convention Center offers a convenient location at an affordable price. Whether your event is big or small, our site can accommodate your needs. We offer meeting rooms, several auditoriums, and a large exhibition hall. Catering services are also available. Get 12 touch with us at 555-0964 to make arrangements for your event. We know you'll 13 with our services.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 11. (A) hold<br>(B) holding<br>(C) will hold<br>(D) to hold | 13. (A) satisfy<br>(B) satisfied<br>(C) be satisfied<br>(D) be satisfying |
| 12. (A) on<br>(B) in<br>(C) at<br>(D) to                    |   |

Smart 14 compare prices before they buy. That's why nine out of ten shoppers choose Star Brand household cleaning products. Star Brand products are the most efficient cleaning products around. They are 15 enough to clean up even the toughest stains and dirt. Every Star Brand product comes with the company promise: If you are not 100% satisfied, your money will be returned with no questions asked. Next time you are shopping for cleaning products, 16 Star Brand. We know you'll be happy you did.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 14. (A) presumers<br>(B) consumers<br>(C) assumers<br>(D) resumers | 16. (A) consideration<br>(B) considering<br>(C) consider<br>(D) considers |
| 15. (A) strong<br>(B) stronger<br>(C) strongly<br>(D) strongest    |   |

When purchasing a new appliance, check to make sure that a warranty is included. This 17 important protection to you, the consumer. If you decide to return a product that is under warranty, you will have 18 that any damage was not caused by misuse or mishandling. Also, make certain that you return a damaged product before the warranty 19. Companies do not have to accept products that are returned after the date stated in the warranty.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 17. (A) offer<br>(B) offers<br>(C) are offering<br>(D) have offered                  | 19. (A) respire<br>(B) inspires<br>(C) expires<br>(D) perspires |
| 18. (A) demonstration<br>(B) demonstrative<br>(C) demonstrator<br>(D) to demonstrate |   |

## Lesson 6

### WORDS TO LEARN

access  
allocate  
compatible  
delete  
display  
duplicate  
failure  
figure out  
ignore  
search  
shut down  
warning

# Computers

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **access** n., the ability or right to enter or use; v., to obtain; to gain entry
  - a. You can't gain access to the files unless you know the password.
  - b. We accessed the information on the company's web site.
2. **allocate** v., to designate for a specific purpose
  - a. The office manager did not allocate enough money to purchase software.
  - b. The software architect did not allocate enough memory for the sound card to work in your computer.
3. **compatible** adj., able to function together
  - a. This operating system is not compatible with this model computer.
  - b. Users of software applications want new versions to be compatible with current versions.
4. **delete** v., to remove; to erase
  - a. The technicians deleted all the data on the disk accidentally.
  - b. This button on the keyboard deletes the characters from the screen.
5. **display** n., what is visible on a monitor; v., to show
  - a. The light on the LCD display is too weak.
  - b. The accounting program displays a current balance when opened.
6. **duplicate** v., to produce something equal; to make identical
  - a. I think the new word processing program will duplicate the success of the one introduced last year.
  - b. Before you leave, please duplicate that file by making a copy on the CD-ROM.
7. **failure** n., an unsuccessful work or effort
  - a. Your failure to inform us about the changed password cost the company a day's work.
  - b. The repeated failure of her printer baffled the technician.
8. **figure out** v., to understand; to solve
  - a. By examining all of the errors, the technicians figured out how to fix the problem.
  - b. We figured out that it would take us at least ten minutes to download the file.
9. **ignore** v., not to notice; to disregard
  - a. When the director is working at the computer, she ignores everything around her.
  - b. Don't ignore the technician's advice when connecting cables.
10. **search** n., investigation; v., to look for
  - a. Our search of the database produced very little information.
  - b. The computer searched for all names that began with *W*.
11. **shut down** v., to turn off; to cease operations
  - a. Please shut down the computer before you leave.
  - b. We always shut down the air conditioning system on the weekend.
12. **warning** n., an alert to danger or problems
  - a. The red flashing light gives a warning to users that the battery is low.
  - b. Flashing images on a web page are warnings to attract users' attention.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

access	deleted	failed	search
allocate	display	figure out	shut down
compatible	duplicate	ignore	warning

When I try to (1) shut down my computer, a (2) warning pops up that says "Low Memory." From there, I can't (3) figure out what to do. The computer won't let me (4) access any of my files, so I can't (5) search for those that I could delete. I've already (6) deleted all of my (7) duplicate files, and I can't believe that my remaining files are using up so much memory. I'd be happy to (8) ignore the computer's warning, but I have no option, since the (9) display is frozen on this message. Do you think I've (10) failed to understand something about the operations of this computer? If you can, would you please (11) allocate a few minutes in your busy schedule to help me solve this dilemma? As I said before, I'm sure that my software is (12) compatible and is not the source of this problem.

## WORD FAMILIES

noun	access	To gain access to the computer lab, all users must have a valid ID.
verb	access	Internet cafés allow you to access your web-based e-mail account.
adjective	accessible	The staff assistant always keeps the door to her office open to show she is accessible.

verb	allocate	Marla didn't allocate enough time to train the new hires on our computer systems.
noun	allocation	A different allocation of resources could certainly strengthen the R&D department.
adjective	allocated	The allocated money was never spent on new monitors.

verb	duplicate	If we work hard, we can duplicate last year's sales records for computers.
noun	duplicate	Don't worry, I have a duplicate on my hard drive.
noun	duplication	His success at our company was based on the duplication of management techniques he had used elsewhere in his career.

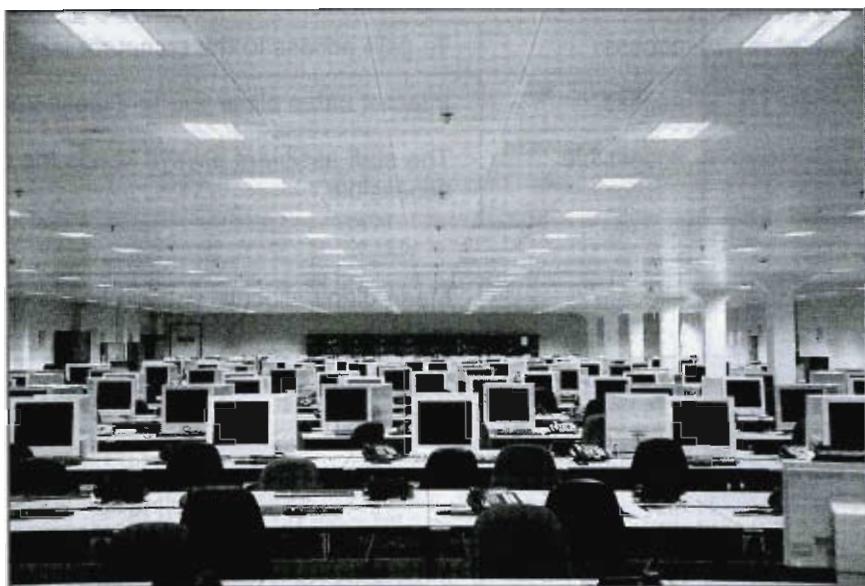
noun	failure	The power failure caused the system to shut down.
verb	fail	We failed to tell you that your records were deleted.
adjective	fallible	Everyone can make a mistake. Even a computer is fallible.

verb	ignore	Unfortunately, she ignored the warning about the virus.
noun	ignorance	His ignorance of this word processing program surprised everyone.
adjective	ignored	The ignored computer glitch caused the database to function improperly.

verb	warn	We were warned that our e-mail was not private.
noun	warning	The warning was written on the box.
adjective	warning	The warning signs were all there; we should have paid attention to them.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. (A) (B) (C) (D)

**Part 2 Question-Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. (A) (B) (C)      3. (A) (B) (C)

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

4. What happens when the man tries to access his e-mail?  
 (A) The computer shuts down.  
 (B) A warning appears on the screen.  
 (C) He hears a beeping noise.  
 (D) The screen turns black.
5. What will the man do now?  
 (A) Turn off the computer.  
 (B) Get a new monitor.  
 (C) Use a different program.  
 (D) Wait some more time.
6. What does the woman suggest doing?  
 (A) Working harder.  
 (B) Taking the computer back to the store.  
 (C) Calling someone to fix the computer.  
 (D) Ignoring the problem.

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

7. What does the speaker suggest that listeners do?  
 (A) Buy his software.  
 (B) Read the manual.  
 (C) Figure out the program by tinkering with it.  
 (D) Consult the competitor's manual to check for compatibility.
8. What problems could users face?  
 (A) Their warranties could be invalidated.  
 (B) Their warning systems could malfunction.  
 (C) Their computers could shut down without warning.  
 (D) Their manuals could be inaccurate.
9. What does the speaker recommend doing with files?  
 (A) Reading them.  
 (B) Accessing them.  
 (C) Deleting them.  
 (D) Copying them.

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. In order to \_\_\_\_\_ your e-mail messages, you must type in your password.  
 (A) access            (C) accessed  
 (B) accessible      (D) accessibility
11. After reviewing the schedule, I realized we had not \_\_\_\_\_ enough time for the software training.  
 (A) allocate        (C) allocating  
 (B) allocated       (D) allocation
12. The computer staff is responsible for making sure all system files are \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) duplication     (C) duplicator  
 (B) duplicated      (D) duplicate
13. \_\_\_\_\_ to examine the capabilities of the computer carefully has cost us a lot of time and money.  
 (A) Fail            (C) Failed  
 (B) Failure        (D) Fallible
14. She \_\_\_\_\_ the warning that the hard drive was full, and consequently they were unable to save the test data.  
 (A) ignore          (C) ignoring  
 (B) ignored        (D) ignorant
15. The computer will \_\_\_\_\_ you to save your work before quitting.  
 (A) warning        (C) warn  
 (B) warned        (D) warns

### Part 6 Text Completion

#### Memo

To: All Office Staff  
 From: IT Department  
 Re: Avoiding Computer Problems

We are here to help you with any problems you may have with your computer. Please make our job easier by observing the following guidelines.

- If you have problems seeing the 16, check to make sure that your monitor is turned on.
- If your computer crashes, write down any warning message that appears. We can 17 a problem more easily if we have this information.
- Please do not install any new software without our approval. Some software is not compatible with what is already on the computer and can cause problems.
- Some parts of the company web site are 18 without a password. If you need a password, please let us know and we will assign you one.

16. (A) keyboard  
 (B) display  
 (C) printer  
 (D) controls
17. (A) figure out  
 (B) to figure out  
 (C) will figure out  
 (D) figures out
18. (A) accesses  
 (B) accessing  
 (C) accessible  
 (D) inaccessible

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following note.

Jim,

I have decided to get a new computer for my home office, and I need your advice to help me select the right one. I have allocated a certain amount of money from my budget for this. I think it is enough for a completely new system including computer, monitor, printer, and scanner. I would like to continue using the software I already use, so I need a system that is compatible with my current system and software. However, I think I should get a different brand. I have had nothing but trouble with the computer I have now. It often shuts down without warning, and sometimes I can't access my files. I haven't been able to figure out the reason for these problems, and no one has been able to fix it for me.

I plan to go to some stores this Saturday and Sunday to search for my new computer. Would you be able to go with me? If not, I'll call you before the weekend to get your advice. I have a big project coming up next month, so I would like to get my new computer up and running soon. Let me know if you can help me this weekend.

Janet

19. What does Janet want Jim to help her with?
- Finding money to buy a computer.
  - Accessing her files.
  - Choosing a new computer.
  - Repairing her computer.
20. What does Janet plan to do this weekend?
- Call Jim.
  - Go on a date with Jim.
  - Look for a new computer.
  - Figure out the reason for her problems.
21. When will Janet's big project begin?
- Saturday.
  - Sunday.
  - Before the weekend.
  - Next month.
22. The word *allocated* in line 3 is closest in meaning to
- earned
  - designated
  - borrowed
  - removed
23. The word *access* in line 11 is closest in meaning to
- save
  - write
  - close
  - open

## Lesson 7

### WORDS TO LEARN

affordable  
as needed  
be in charge of  
capacity  
durable  
initiative  
physically  
provider  
recur  
reduction  
stay on top of  
stock

# Office Technology

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **affordable** adj., able to be paid for; not too expensive
  - a. The company's first priority was to find an affordable phone system.
  - b. Obviously, the computer systems that are affordable for a Fortune 500 company will not be affordable for a small company.
2. **as needed** adv., as necessary
  - a. The courier service did not come every day, only as needed.
  - b. The service contract states that repairs will be made on an as-needed basis.
3. **be in charge of** v., to be in control or command of
  - a. He appointed someone to be in charge of maintaining a supply of paper in the fax machine.
  - b. Your computer should not be in charge of you, rather you should be in charge of your computer.
4. **capacity** n., the ability to contain or hold; the maximum that something can hold or do
  - a. The new conference room is much larger and has a capacity of one hundred people.
  - b. The memory requirements of this software application exceed the capacity of our computers.
5. **durable** adj., sturdy, strong, lasting
  - a. This printer is so durable that, with a little care, it will last another five years.
  - b. These chairs are more durable than the first ones we looked at.
6. **initiative** n., the first step; an active role
  - a. Employees are encouraged to take the initiative and share their ideas with management.
  - b. Our technology initiative involves an exciting new database system and will help us revolutionize our customer service.
7. **physically** adv., with the senses; of the body
  - a. The computer screen is making her physically sick.
  - b. Physically moving your screen from one place on the desk to another can help reduce same-position-strain syndrome.
8. **provider** n., a supplier
  - a. The department was extremely pleased with the service they received from the phone provider.
  - b. As your health service provider, we want to make sure you are happy and satisfied with the service you are receiving.
9. **recur** v., to occur again or repeatedly
  - a. The subject of decreasing sales recurs in each meeting, sometimes several times.
  - b. The managers did not want that particular error to recur.
10. **reduction** n., a lessening; a decrease
  - a. The outlet store gave a 20 percent reduction in the price of the shelves and bookcases.
  - b. The reduction in office staff has made it necessary to automate more job functions.
11. **stay on top of** v., to know what is going on; to know the latest information
  - a. In order to stay on top of her employees' progress, she arranged weekly breakfast meetings.
  - b. In this industry, you must stay on top of current developments.
12. **stock** v., to keep on hand; n., a supply
  - a. The employees stocked the shelves on a weekly basis.
  - b. The office's stock of toner for the fax machine was quickly running out.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

affordable	durable	physical	reduce
as needed	is in charge of	provider	stays on top of
capacity	initiates	recurring	stock

Many companies have one person or a department that (1) \_\_\_\_\_ running the office. If you have ever worked for a company that doesn't have an office manager, you very quickly learn to appreciate the importance of the job. Who is in charge of placing orders? Who services the fax machine or printer? Who makes sure that the office is presentable for customers? Are the new conference tables and shelves (2) \_\_\_\_\_ as well as (3) \_\_\_\_\_?

It is the office manager's responsibility to maintain an efficient and smooth-running office. He or she looks for ways to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ costs and minimize interruptions in the day-to-day operations. Whereas functional managers know the (5) \_\_\_\_\_ of their employees, the office manager knows the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ capacity of the office and the supplies and machines that are in the office.

The office manager (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the ordering of furniture and supplies, and (8) \_\_\_\_\_ changing office technology. Over time, he or she may notice (9) \_\_\_\_\_ problems that require changing a service (10) \_\_\_\_\_. Furniture and large items are ordered on an (11) \_\_\_\_\_ basis. Other frequently used materials, such as paper, folders, and mailing materials, are on an automatic ordering schedule and a (12) \_\_\_\_\_ of those supplies is on hand at the office.

## WORD FAMILIES

adjective	affordable	Broad-band access to the Internet became more affordable at the beginning of the millennium.
verb	afford	Lucinda has taken so much leave this year that she can't afford to miss another day's work.
noun	affordability	We looked into the affordability of placing a scanner at each designer's desk.

verb	initiate	The company will initiate its new products at the beginning of the year.
noun	initiative	The manager, knowing how concerned his employees were, took the initiative to provide training for them on the new equipment.
noun	initiation	As an initiation into the sales field, Mr. Jenkins was given the most problematic customer's account.

adverb	physically	The vagrant had to be physically removed from the building.
adjective	physical	The physical presence of a computer engineer is vastly superior to telephone tech support.
noun	physique	We need a model with a proportional physique.

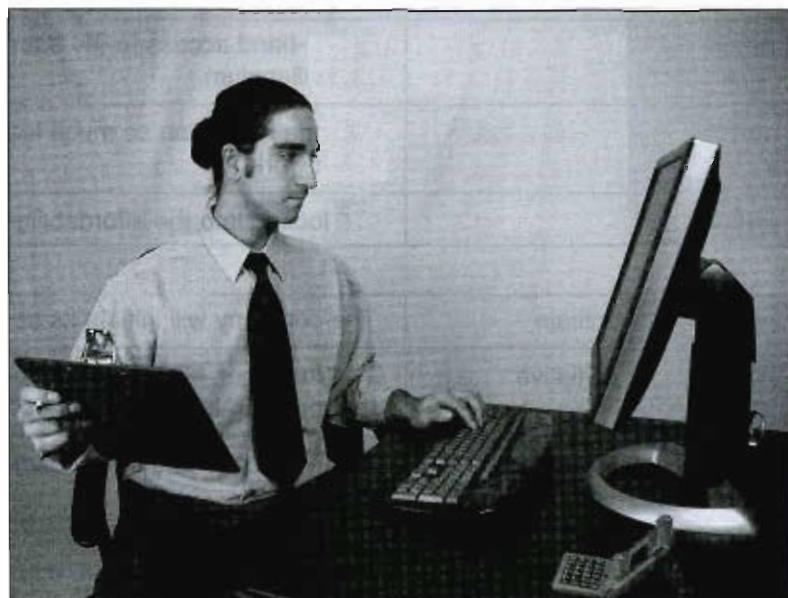
verb	provide	The company provides a five-year warranty on its products.
noun	provider	As your provider of network services, I promise to give you the best prices and service.
noun	provision	Our provisions of supplies should last to the end of the quarter.

verb	recur	We don't want that problem to recur every month.
noun	recurrence	Every recurrence of the same problem costs us money.
adjective	recurring	Recurring problems waste time and money.

verb	reduce	Buying in bulk can help to reduce costs.
noun	reduction	The introduction of the fax machine created a noticeable increase in phone bills.
adjective	reducible	Although our system is working at capacity, the amount of information being processed is not reducible.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. (A) (B) (C) (D)

**Part 2 Question–Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. (A) (B) (C)      3. (A) (B) (C)

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. What is required for all new purchases?  | 6. What is the woman's opinion of this requirement?                                    |
| (A) A receipt.<br>(B) A charge card.<br>(C) Up-front payment.<br>(D) Approval.  | (A) It's annoying.<br>(B) It's enjoyable.<br>(C) It's a good idea.<br>(D) It's boring. |
| 5. What is the purpose of this requirement?   |  |
| (A) To avoid delays.<br>(B) To help save money.<br>(C) To make purchasing a top priority.<br>(D) To reduce steps in the ordering process. |  |

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 7. Why don't they order units on an as-needed basis?   | 9. What does the speaker like about the suggested company's products?      |
| (A) They're more expensive.<br>(B) The provider won't take individual orders.<br>(C) Delivery time is too long.<br>(D) Nobody takes the initiative to place the order. | (A) The durability.<br>(B) The quality.<br>(C) The price.<br>(D) The size. |
| 8. What kind of provider could help them?  |  |
| (A) A less pushy provider.<br>(B) A more aggressive provider.<br>(C) One with better prices.<br>(D) One with a web site.   |  |

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. \_\_\_\_\_ is still a major concern for inner-city schools that want to install computers.  
 (A) Afford                    (C) Affordable  
 (B) Affording              (D) Affordability
11. Hoping to repeat the success of the previous year's sales \_\_\_\_\_, the vice president held a meeting of all the managers.  
 (A) initiated                (C) initiative  
 (B) initiating              (D) initiation
12. The athlete's extraordinary \_\_\_\_\_ distracted customers from the auto itself.  
 (A) physique                (C) physicality  
 (B) physical                (D) physically
13. As promised in our last meeting, this contract \_\_\_\_\_ you with the best prices.  
 (A) provide                (C) provision  
 (B) provides               (D) provider
14. When a problem \_\_\_\_\_ frequently, it is time to reexamine the process.  
 (A) recur                    (C) recurring  
 (B) recurrence             (D) recurs
15. The employee preferred to have a \_\_\_\_\_ in salary than to have to continue working with her outdated computer.  
 (A) reducing                (C) reduce  
 (B) reduction              (D) reduces

### Part 6 Text Completion

#### Memo

To: Miriam Ketonen, Office Manager  
 From: Jason Roberts, Assistant Office Manager  
 Re: Photocopier

There have been recurring problems with the office photocopier, particularly with paper jams. I believe the problem is with the type of machine we have. A machine of this size simply does not have the capacity to handle the amount of copying we normally do. Obviously we can't 16 the number of copies we make. I suggest that it's time to order a larger and 17 machine. I have looked through the catalogs and discovered several that I think would suit our needs. I have selected the most 18 ones, as I know we have a limited amount of money to spend. I have attached their descriptions. Since you are in charge of making large purchases like this, I will need your approval before I go ahead and place the order. Let me know which of the machines you think is best, and I will fill out the purchase order.

Thanks.

16. (A) reduce  
 (B) reducing  
 (C) reducible  
 (D) reduction
17. (A) durable  
 (B) durables  
 (C) more durable  
 (D) most durable
18. (A) costly  
 (B) physical  
 (C) attractive  
 (D) affordable

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following two letters.

**Business Kitchens, Inc.**

April 19, 20—

Dear Mr. Conner,

I am writing to follow up on our conversation of last Monday. You said you were looking for a new provider for kitchen supplies for your office, and that your particular need at this time was for a large-capacity coffeemaker. I have looked through the coffeemakers we have available, and believe I have found the best one to suit your needs. The primary advantage of the 300X Office Coffeemaker is that it reduces mess. The coffeemaker is filled with water daily. Then, to make a cup of coffee, the user simply inserts a premeasured package of coffee into the machine and presses the “on” button. The coffee is ready in one minute. There are no pots to clean or filters to change. The machine can make tea and other hot drinks as well. The 300X is also the most durable machine on the market.

I am enclosing a description of the machine and price information. We can also deliver refills of coffee and tea to you on a weekly or monthly basis. In addition, we stock other kitchen appliances such as microwave ovens and office-sized refrigerators. Please let me know if you are interested in purchasing such items.

Sincerely,

*Laura Baker*

Laura Baker

Sales Manager

**Johnson Research Affiliates**

April 26, 20—

Dear Ms. Baker,

Thank you for the information on the 300X Office Coffeemaker. I think it will meet our needs for large-capacity coffeemakers at an affordable price. Our office is large, so I would like to order two at this time. I don’t think we will need the regular deliveries of coffee and tea. Our need for these varies so much from week to week that it is better to order them on an as-needed basis. My assistant is good at staying on top of these things, so we don’t have to worry about running out. Currently we don’t have a need for ovens or refrigerators although we may in the near future. I will keep you informed. Meanwhile, we will send you a purchase order for the coffeemakers. Thank you for your help.

Sincerely,

*Matthew Conner*

Matthew Conner

Office Manager

19. What will Mr. Conner buy now?  
 (A) Coffeemakers.  
 (B) Ovens.  
 (C) Microcomputers.  
 (D) Refrigerators.
20. What does he say that he likes about the product he has selected?  
 (A) It reduces mess.  
 (B) It is durable.  
 (C) It has a good price.  
 (D) It will be delivered regularly.
21. How often will he order refills?  
 (A) Once a day.  
 (B) Once a week.  
 (C) Every month.  
 (D) When he needs them.
22. The word *provider* in line 2 of the first letter, is closest in meaning to  
 (A) consumer  
 (B) supplier  
 (C) maker  
 (D) designer
23. The word *stock* in line 19 of the first letter, is closest in meaning to  
 (A) have  
 (B) repair  
 (C) buy  
 (D) use

## Lesson 8

### WORDS TO LEARN

appreciation  
be made of  
bring in  
casually  
code  
expose  
glimpse  
out of  
outdated  
practice  
reinforce  
verbally

# Office Procedures

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **appreciation** n., recognition, understanding; thanks
  - a. In appreciation of your hard work on the Castcon project, the department will hold a casual lunch party on November third.
  - b. Your appreciation of my efforts inspired me through the final stages of the construction.
2. **be made of** v., to consist of
  - a. This job will really test what you are made of.
  - b. People say that the negotiator has nerves made of steel.
3. **bring in** v., to hire or recruit; to cause to appear
  - a. The company president wanted to bring on an efficiency consultant.
  - b. The company brought in a new team of project planners.
4. **casually** adv., informally
  - a. On Fridays, most employees dress casually.
  - b. Martin spoke casually, as if he were chatting with friends.
5. **code** n., rules of behavior
  - a. The new employees observed the unwritten code of conduct in their first week on the job.
  - b. Even the most traditional companies are changing their dress code to something less formal.
6. **expose** v., to make aware; to give experience
  - a. Mergers require that employees be exposed to different business practices.
  - b. The new hires' week in each department exposed them to the various functions in the company.
7. **glimpse** n., a quick look
  - a. The secretary caught a glimpse of her new boss as she was leaving the office.
  - b. After one year with the company, he still felt as though he had only a glimpse of the overall operations.
8. **out of** adj., no longer having, missing
  - a. Orders should be placed before you run out of the supplies.
  - b. The presenter ran out of time before he reached his conclusion.
9. **outdated** adj., obsolete; not currently in use
  - a. The purpose of the seminar is to have employees identify outdated methods and procedures.
  - b. Before you do a mailing, make sure that none of the addresses is outdated.
10. **practice** n., method of doing something; v., to repeat in order to learn
  - a. The manager had started her practice of weekly breakfast meetings more than twenty years ago.
  - b. Bill practiced answering the telephone until he was satisfied.
11. **reinforce** v., to strengthen, support
  - a. The financial officer's unconventional method of analyzing data was reinforced by the business journal article.
  - b. Employees reinforced their learning with practice in the workplace.
12. **verbally** adv., in spoken form
  - a. She verbally reprimanded the new hire in front of his entire team.
  - b. The guarantee was made only verbally.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

~~appreciation~~

been exposed to

brought in

~~casually~~

~~code~~

glimpse

~~made of~~

~~out of~~

outdated

~~practices~~

reinforced

verbalize

How many employees show any (1) **appreciation** for their corporate culture? How many executives appreciate what their corporate culture is and what it is (2) **made of**? It is often (3) **reinforced** by the office procedures and routines that have been established over the years. A manager made her mark twenty years ago by dressing (4) **casually**, thereby forever changing the dress (5) **code**. A director bought from the competition when he ran (6) **out of** stock and the practice soon became standard. These examples add to a company's culture.

Good employees know what the standard procedures are. This is an important element in recruiting new employees, as well as training workers. When training workers, it is often important to have them read the procedures, write their reactions, and (7) **verbalize** their opinions to these practices. This promotes a sense of cooperation between those who establish the (8) **practices** and those who must follow them.

Employees who have been with a company for many years may not be able to identify (9) **outdated** practices because they haven't (10) **been exposed to** anything else. What happens when a department needs an extra hand? Is a "temp" (11) **brought in**, or is someone borrowed from another department? The new recruits often ask the questions that allow more senior employees to get a (12) **glimpse** of the corporate culture.

## WORD FAMILIES

noun	appreciation	In appreciation for your hard work, we are giving you a top-priority project.
verb	appreciate	We appreciate the time that you have put into this project, but we need to see more positive results.
adjective	appreciated	The intern felt appreciated, like a member of the team.

noun	code	The programmer spent three days searching for the bug in his code.
adjective	coded	Their web page contained a coded message for insiders.
verb	code	If we code the password into each user's ID number, can users avoid one step for logging on?

verb	expose	As a matter of company policy, we try to expose all managers to the challenging work of telephone sales through hands-on experience.
noun	exposure	Exposure to the elements will corrode the container for the sensor.
adjective	exposed	Mr. Lee was exposed to Chinese business practices during his three-year assignment as a manager in Beijing.

noun	practice	He was surprised at the difference in office practices from one local office to another.
verb	practice	All managers are expected to practice caution in their spending until the end of the year.
adjective	practical	We need a practical solution to this common problem.

verb	reinforce	The practical training reinforced the theoretical studies.
noun	reinforcement	If reinforcement is needed, you have the support of the executive committee.
gerund	reinforcing	Reinforcing the preferred way of selling the product was one of their job requirements.

adverb	verbally	No employees should be verbally reprimanded in front of their peers.
verb	verbalize	Well-established procedures are often difficult to verbalize.
adjective	verbal	The company operated on a practice of verbal and not written contracts.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. (A)  (B)  (C)  (D)

#### Part 2 Question–Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. (A)  (B)  (C)  (D)

3. (A)  (B)  (C)  (D)

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 4. What will the woman tell the man about?   | 6. How does the woman suggest he reinforce their discussion?  |
| (A) Hiring policies.<br>(B) Company practices.<br>(C) How to make a schedule.<br>(D) The employee's communication problems.  | (A) By talking to other employees.<br>(B) By practicing what he hears.<br>(C) By reviewing the schedule.<br>(D) By looking at the handbook. |
| 5. What problem has the man had?   |   |
| (A) No one can explain things to him clearly.<br>(B) He never has time for anything.<br>(C) No one has time to talk to him.<br>(D) He isn't familiar with his coworkers. |   |

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 7. Who is the speaker?   | 9. What will they do after the speaker finishes?   |
| (A) A software trainer.<br>(B) A hardware salesman.<br>(C) A new computer owner.<br>(D) A scientist from R&D.      | (A) Spend a lot of time practicing.<br>(B) Watch a television program.<br>(C) Have lunch.<br>(D) Attend a board meeting. |
| 8. What will they do today?  |  |
| (A) Choose new software.<br>(B) Review their computer skills.<br>(C) Hire a specialist.<br>(D) Take apart the CPU. |  |

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. Ms. Handa was unable to express her \_\_\_\_\_ for all that her colleagues had done for her.  
 (A) appreciation (C) appreciating  
 (B) appreciated (D) appreciates
11. The programmer is \_\_\_\_\_ the message so that it's not accessible to everyone.  
 (A) code (C) coded  
 (B) coding (D) coder
12. It looks like this disk was \_\_\_\_\_ to intense heat, because it's warped and pocked.  
 (A) expose (C) exposing  
 (B) exposed (D) exposure
13. The \_\_\_\_\_ of answering each telephone call on the third ring requires a dedicated receptionist.  
 (A) practices (C) practiced  
 (B) practical (D) practice
14. Human Resources tries to \_\_\_\_\_ employees' understanding by offering workshops twice a year.  
 (A) reinforce (C) reinforced  
 (B) reinforcing (D) reinforcement
15. Senior employees are often asked to \_\_\_\_\_ office procedures.  
 (A) verbally (C) verbal  
 (B) verbalize (D) verbalizing

### Part 6 Text Completion

#### Notice—Casual Fridays

A number of staff members have expressed an interest in Casual Friday. I realize that this custom 16 in many offices nowadays. I appreciate the fact that many of you have discussed this matter with me 17, and pointed out that our strict dress code is outdated. Because so many people have expressed an interest in dressing casually once a week, we will have Casual Friday in this office starting next week. While we want to be relaxed, we do not want 18 our coworkers to styles of dress that may make them feel uncomfortable. So, while the dress code will be relaxed, it does not mean that you can wear anything you want. Shoes and shirts are required, and beach and gym attire are unacceptable.

Amanda Jones, Director

16. (A) practices  
 (B) practiced  
 (C) is practiced  
 (D) is practicing
17. (A) verb  
 (B) verbal  
 (C) verbally  
 (D) verbalize
18. (A) expose  
 (B) to expose  
 (C) exposing  
 (D) have exposed

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following article.

When you bring in a new employee, it is important to make sure that he or she understands the usual office procedures as well as the codes of behavior. These things should be outlined clearly in the employee handbook. New employees should understand that they are expected to do more than just glimpse at the handbook and then hide it in a drawer. A thorough reading of it will help them understand many things they need to know about the workplace culture. Employees also appreciate verbal reinforcement. Supervisors should let them know when they have completed a job well, or if they are bending the rules too far. More experienced coworkers can be asked to support new employees while they are getting used to their new positions and explain procedures to them, but ultimately it is the supervisor's responsibility to make sure that the normal office practices are carried out. When everyone understands what is expected, then the office procedures run more smoothly. In fact, it is not a bad idea to review the codes and procedures with the entire staff from time to time. This can be done on a regular basis at staff meetings, or it can be part of a training session.

19. What should new employees do with the handbook?
- Read it quickly.
  - Study it completely.
  - Hide it in a drawer.
  - Share it with coworkers.
20. What should the supervisor do when an employee breaks a rule?
- Punish her.
  - Fire her.
  - Tell her.
  - Retrain her.
21. How can experienced coworkers help new employees?
- By writing a new handbook.
  - By explaining office procedures.
  - By inviting them to staff meetings.
  - By telling the supervisor when a rule has been broken.
22. The words *bring in* in line 1, are closest in meaning to
- invite
  - train
  - hire
  - meet
23. The word *codes* in line 3, is closest in meaning to
- rules
  - lessons
  - mistakes
  - types

## Lesson 9

### WORDS TO LEARN

disk  
facilitate  
network  
popularity  
process  
replace  
revolution  
sharp  
skill  
software  
store  
technically

# Electronics

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **disk** n., an object used to store digital information
  - a. The head of the optical disk reader was dirty.
  - b. Rewritable compact discs are more expensive than read-only CDs.
2. **facilitate** v., to make easier
  - a. The computer program facilitated the scheduling of appointments.
  - b. The director tried to facilitate the transition to the new policy by meeting with all staff who would be affected.
3. **network** v., to connect; to broadcast; n., an interconnected group or system over a radio or TV; to engage in informal communication
  - a. The recent graduate networked with her mother's coworkers.
  - b. We set up a new network in my office to share files.
4. **popularity** n., the state of being widely admired, sought, or accepted
  - a. After the new commercials began running, the popularity of the batteries increased significantly.
  - b. This brand of computers is extremely popular among college students.
5. **process** v., to put through a series of actions or prescribed procedure; n., a series of operations or actions to bring about a result
  - a. I've processed the data I collected and have gotten some interesting results.
  - b. There is a process for determining why your computer is malfunctioning.
6. **replace** v., to put back in a former place or position; to take the place of
  - a. I've replaced the hard drive that was malfunctioning.
  - b. We have been looking for three months and we've found no one who can replace our former administrator.
7. **revolution** n., a sudden or momentous change in a situation; a single complete cycle
  - a. We see a revolution in the computer field almost every day.
  - b. My CD player is broken; the disk cannot make a complete revolution around the magnet.
8. **sharp** adj., abrupt or acute; smart
  - a. There was a sharp decline in calls to the help desk after we upgraded each employee's computer.
  - b. The new employee proved how sharp she was when she mastered the new program in a few days.
9. **skill** n., a developed ability
  - a. The software developer has excellent technical skills and would be an asset to our software programming team.
  - b. Salman's job as designer of electronic tools makes good use of his manual dexterity skills.
10. **software** n., the programs for a computer
  - a. This software allows me to integrate tables and spreadsheets into my reports.
  - b. Many computers come pre-loaded with software.
11. **store** v., to keep
  - a. You can store more data on a zip drive.
  - b. We store the master disks in the fireproof safe.
12. **technically** adv., with specialized skill or knowledge
  - a. Technically speaking, the virus infected only script files.
  - b. The office was finally up-to-speed technically.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

<u>disks</u>	<u>popular</u>	<u>revolutionize</u>	<u>software</u>
<u>facilitated</u>	<u>processing</u>	<u>sharply</u>	<u>storage</u>
<u>networks</u>	<u>replace</u>	<u>skills</u>	<u>technical</u>

By the mid-1980s, virtually all U.S. businesses owned at least one computer. Prices of computers declined (1) sharply over the next few years, resulting in a surge in popularity. At the same time, offices started to rely on (2) networks, which (3) facilitated the sharing and processing of data. Such data (4) processing was made possible by improvements in both the hardware and software industries.

More recently, data storage (5) disks have undergone their own revolution. Because of (6) technical advancements, the (7) storage capacity of a compact disc increased significantly.

In addition, manufacturers of (8) software offer competitive upgrades to (9) replace competitors' products.

Virtually all office workers today are trained in the most (10) popular word processing software.

Computers repeatedly (11) revolutionize the workplace, and everyone, no matter how accomplished he or she is with other (12) skills, needs to stay abreast of major trends in computer development.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	popularize	The Internet has popularized last-minute travel.
noun	popularity	The popularity of the product was extremely short-lived, and it soon disappeared from the store shelves.
adjective	popular	The new computer program was extremely popular, and people asked for it at all the stores.

verb	replace	I replaced your music CDs that I borrowed from your desk last week.
noun	replacement	A replacement for this damaged computer will not be cheap.
adjective	replaceable	That hard disk is not easily replaceable.

verb	revolutionized	Using diamond has revolutionized the pressure sensor industry during the last decade.
noun	revolution	The revolution in electronics technology has allowed products such as phones to get smaller and more portable.
adjective	revolutionary	The Internet is revolutionary in how it has changed the way we communicate.

noun	skill	Her marketing skills inspired Jason to return to school for his MBA.
adjective	skilled	Our carpenters are skilled in everything from cabinetry to furniture making.
adverb	skillfully	He negotiates so skillfully that both parties end up feeling that they've gotten what they wanted.

verb	store	He stored too much information on the hard drive, making the computer sluggish.
noun	store	The store's inventory has to be entered manually into the database.
noun	storage	The storage closet is where you will find all our office supplies.

adverb	technically	Technically, she was fired from her job.
adjective	technical	The computer can only be repaired by someone with technical knowledge.
noun	technicality	After we go over these minor technicalities, the agreement will be set.

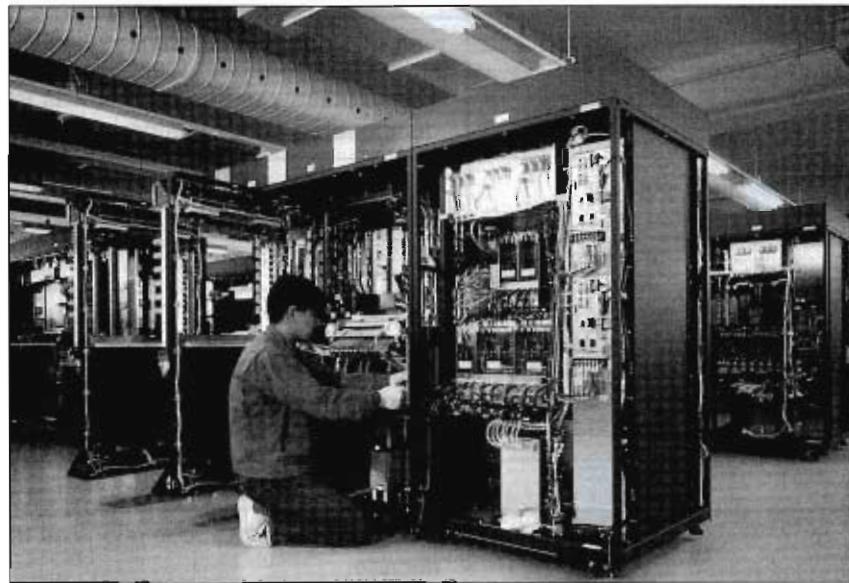
## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D.

#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. Why can't the woman retrieve her file?  | 6. What does the man suggest the woman should do?  |
| (A) She doesn't know how.<br>(B) She forgot its name.<br>(C) It was accidentally deleted.<br>(D) She can't remember where it's stored. | (A) Figure it out herself.<br>(B) Let him help her.<br>(C) Improve her skills.<br>(D) Get help from the IT department. |
| 5. Why does she need the file?   |  |
| (A) To do her accounts.<br>(B) To report the news.<br>(C) To finish her proposal.<br>(D) To get information about a store.             |  |

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 7. What is the speaker's opinion of the process of downloading software?   | 9. What will the listeners do next?   |
| (A) Anyone can do it.<br>(B) It requires technical skills.<br>(C) It's easiest if you download from a remote server.<br>(D) It's time-consuming. | (A) Look at a chart.<br>(B) Turn on their computers.<br>(C) Connect to the Internet.<br>(D) Type a web address. |
| 8. Who is the intended audience for this talk?   |   |
| (A) Computer technicians.<br>(B) Network managers.<br>(C) New computer users.<br>(D) Software writers.   |   |

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the new computer network was apparent among the employees after only a few months.  
 (A) popular (C) popularity  
 (B) popularize (D) population
11. We will \_\_\_\_\_ all of our outdated software with the newest versions.  
 (A) replacement (C) replaceable  
 (B) replaced (D) replace
12. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ approach to software design integration that all the big software developers are currently learning.  
 (A) revolutionized (C) revolution  
 (B) revolutionary (D) revolt
13. While Fabio's \_\_\_\_\_ with computers surpasses the technicians, he is unable to communicate his personal needs to the office manager.  
 (A) skill (C) skillful  
 (B) skilled (D) skillfully
14. The hard disk can \_\_\_\_\_ up to 25 gigabytes of data.  
 (A) stores (C) store  
 (B) storage (D) storing
15. The newspaper article on the development of new fiber-optic cables was so full of \_\_\_\_\_ language that nobody could understand it.  
 (A) technical (C) technicality  
 (B) technically (D) technique

### Part 6 Text Completion

Computer technology has brought about a \_\_\_16\_\_\_ in the workplace. Now employees all around the country do all or part of their jobs from home. This phenomenon is called telecommuting and has been made possible by the widespread use of the Internet. Telecommuting has become \_\_\_17\_\_\_ among employees, although the reactions of employers are mixed. Some like telecommuting and some don't. But most agree that it facilitates work for employees who live at a distance from the worksite. Telecommuting enables companies to keep skilled employees who move out of the area or who have family obligations that require them to stay close to home. \_\_\_18\_\_\_ the regular nine-to-five office job? Probably not entirely, but we are sure to see more and more of it in the future.

16. (A) revolted  
 (B) revolution  
 (C) revolutionary  
 (D) revolutionize
17. (A) sharp  
 (B) technical  
 (C) popular  
 (D) replaceable
18. (A) It replaces  
 (B) It will replace  
 (C) Will it replace  
 (D) Will it be replaced by

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following two e-mails.

To: mary@acme.com  
 From: fred@acme.com  
 Subject: software training

Mary,

As you know, we have decided to replace our old software with a new program that will facilitate our work better. Although the new software is not technically difficult to use, it is significantly different from our old software. The entire staff will need to be trained to use it. Of course, not everyone can attend a training session together, because we need some staff members to be in the office at all times. The trainer suggests that each person attend one training session and one follow-up session. The sessions will last three to four hours each. The trainer can be here once a week. Please develop a training schedule so that everyone can be trained over the next two months. Thank you.

Fred

To: fred@acme.com  
 From: mary@acme.com  
 Subject: re: software training

Fred,

I have written up a schedule that will facilitate the training process. There will be eight weekly training sessions all together. Since we have four departments, the easiest way is to send one person from each department to each training session during the first month. Of course it will be a different person each week. We can repeat the process during the second month for the follow up sessions. This way everyone will have a chance to develop their skills on the new software. I am attaching a copy of the schedule. Please let me know what you think.

Mary

19. What is true about the new software?  
 (A) It's difficult to use.  
 (B) It's very different from the old software.  
 (C) It requires many months of training.  
 (D) It's very expensive.
20. Which staff members will be trained to use the new software?  
 (A) Just one from each department.  
 (B) Fred and Mary only.  
 (C) Only four of them.  
 (D) All of them.
21. How many training sessions will each person attend?  
 (A) One.  
 (B) Two.  
 (C) Four.  
 (D) Eight.
22. The word *skills* in line 9 of the second e-mail is closest in meaning to  
 (A) abilities  
 (B) opportunities  
 (C) tasks  
 (D) ideas
23. The word *replace* in line 1 of the first e-mail is closest in meaning to  
 (A) sell  
 (B) change  
 (C) keep  
 (D) locate

## Lesson 10

### WORDS TO LEARN

assemble  
beforehand  
complication  
courier  
express  
fold  
layout  
mention  
petition  
proof  
register  
revise

# Correspondence

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **assemble** v., to put together; to bring together
  - a. Her assistant copied and assembled the documents.
  - b. The mail room clerk read the directions before assembling the parts to the new postage printer.
2. **beforehand** adv., in advance, in anticipation
  - a. To speed up the mailing, we should prepare the labels beforehand.
  - b. The goods could have been shipped today had they faxed the order beforehand.
3. **complication** n., difficulty, complex situation
  - a. She will have to spend two more days in the hospital due to complications during the surgery.
  - b. Complications always arise when we try to cover too many topics in one letter.
4. **courier** n., a messenger, an official delivery person
  - a. We hired a courier to deliver the package.
  - b. The courier service will clear the goods through customs.
5. **express** adj., fast and direct
  - a. It's important that this document be there tomorrow, so please send it express mail.
  - b. Express mail costs more than regular mail service, but it is more efficient.
6. **fold** v., to bend paper
  - a. Fold the letter into three parts before stuffing it into the envelope.
  - b. Don't fold the document if it doesn't fit the envelope.
7. **layout** n., a format; the organization of material on a page
  - a. We had to change the layout when we changed the size of the paper.
  - b. The layout for the new brochure was submitted by the designer.
8. **mention** n., something said or written; v., to refer to
  - a. There was no mention of the cost in the proposal.
  - b. You should mention in the letter that we can arrange for mailing the brochures as well as printing them.
9. **petition** n., a formal, written request; v., to make a formal request
  - a. The petition was photocopied and distributed to workers who will collect the necessary signatures.
  - b. We petitioned the postal officials to start delivering mail twice a day in business areas.
10. **proof** v., to look for errors; n., evidence
  - a. This letter was not proofed very carefully; it is full of typing mistakes.
  - b. In order to get the rebate, you must send in proof of purchase.
11. **register** v., to record, to track; n., a record
  - a. You can register this mail for an additional \$2.20.
  - b. Everybody needs to sign the register before entering the mail room.
12. **revise** v., to rewrite
  - a. The brochure was revised several times before it was sent to the printer.
  - b. We will need to revise the form letter since our address has changed.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

<del>assemble</del>	<del>courier</del>	<del>layout</del>	proofed
beforehand	<del>express</del>	<del>mention</del>	<del>registered</del>
complicated	<del>folding</del>	petition	revision

In small offices, it is often the executive assistant who must manage all of the printed material that the firm produces. The job responsibilities include typing and printing out the correspondence. These letters and memos must all be carefully (1) proofed to make sure they are error-free. If not, the errors should be corrected. If the meaning is not clear, the correspondence should be revised. This (2) revision should be done (3) beforehand, not when the letter is ready to be sent.

Before putting correspondence into an envelope, the executive assistant must (4) assemble all the various attachments and other documents to be enclosed with the letter. When (5) folding the correspondence, the assistant should make sure that when opening the envelope, the recipient sees the letterhead first.

Once prepared, the correspondence must be sent appropriately. Local, urgent mail could be hand-delivered by a (6) courier service. Long-distance, urgent mail could be sent overnight or by (7) express mail. If a record is required, mail can be (8) registered and receipts are given.

In addition to transmitting and receiving faxes, the executive assistant must work closely with company officials. When the company executives have to make a presentation, the executive assistant often becomes a graphic designer charged with the (9) layout, or the look of, the graphics and text for the printed materials used during the presentations. Did I (10) mention that these duties generally involve learning extremely (11) complicated design software? It's a wonder that more executive assistants don't (12) petition their bosses for a raise.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	complicate	Don't try to complicate things by making two-sided copies; single-sided will do.
noun	complication	There are a few complications with your layout, but they can be easily solved.
adjective	complicated	The revisions in the document made it more complicated, rather than simpler.

noun	mention	The mention of layoffs made us worry.
verb	mention	As I mentioned in my note to you, you should try to be less wordy and more concise in your writing.
adjective	mentionable	No one considered the mediocre design a mentionable achievement.

noun	petition	In order to be valid, the contents of the petition need to be printed at the top of each page that will contain signatures.
verb	petition	The welders petitioned the factory to install air conditioning.
noun	petitioners	The petitioners spent the night outside of the courthouse.

verb	proof	It is your responsibility to proof your own work before sending it out.
noun	proofreader	The proofreader did not find the errors.
gerund	proofing	Proofing a document is best done by starting at the end and reading backward.

verb	register	Register this letter and bring back the receipt.
noun	registration	Registration for the seminar can be done by fax.
adjective	registered	Always get a receipt for registered mail.

verb	revise	After you revise the document, give it a new name so that we will still have access to both drafts.
adjective	revised	His revised memo was easier to read.
noun	revision	You may have to do three or four full revisions to this document before it is acceptable.

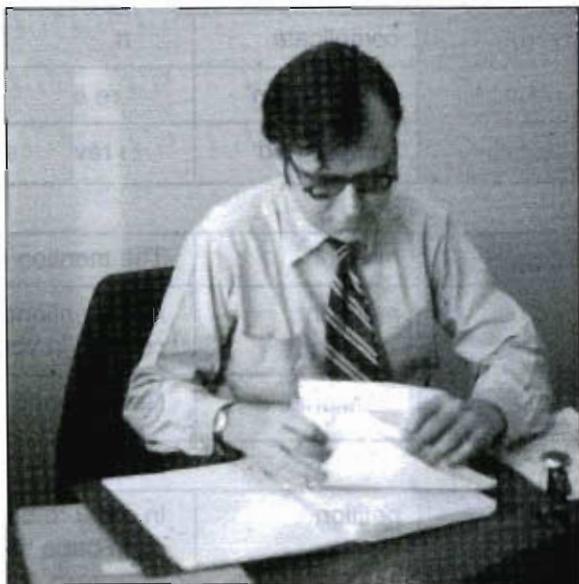
## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D.

#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the short dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 4. When will the meeting take place?<br>(A) This afternoon.<br>(B) Tomorrow.<br>(C) In two days.<br>(D) On Tuesday.  | 6. What does the woman suggest that the man do?<br>(A) Finish the work before the afternoon.<br>(B) Do the work himself.<br>(C) Ask another person for help.<br>(D) Remember to fold all the documents. |
| 5. Why won't the woman help assemble the documents?<br>(A) She's in a meeting.<br>(B) She hurt her hand.<br>(C) She's too busy.<br>(D) She needs to revise them first. |   |

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 7. Where would you hear this talk?<br>(A) A post office.<br>(B) A grocery store.<br>(C) A restaurant.<br>(D) An assembly line.  | 9. What time does the Courier Center close?<br>(A) 2:00 P.M.<br>(B) 4:00 P.M.<br>(C) 6:00 P.M.<br>(D) 8:00 P.M. |
| 8. What is the purpose of this talk?<br>(A) To sell merchandise.<br>(B) To inform customers of a new service.<br>(C) To warn workers.<br>(D) To recognize a new employee. |   |

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. I don't want to \_\_\_\_\_ matters, but have you considered using color to make your brochure stand out?  
 (A) complicate      (C) complicated  
 (B) complication    (D) complicating
11. It's worth \_\_\_\_\_ in the memo that we've finished the draft of the proposal.  
 (A) mentionable    (C) mentions  
 (B) mentioning     (D) mentioned
12. The signatures on the \_\_\_\_\_ weren't all legible because rain had caused the ink to run.  
 (A) petition        (C) petitioners  
 (B) petitioning    (D) petitioned
13. To send out business letters without \_\_\_\_\_ them is unprofessional.  
 (A) proofing       (C) proofreader  
 (B) proof          (D) proofread
14. The mail room is rarely asked to send letters by \_\_\_\_\_ mail.  
 (A) registers      (C) register  
 (B) registered    (D) registration
15. After each \_\_\_\_\_, you need to reread what you've written and note your suggestions for changes.  
 (A) revise          (C) revision  
 (B) revised        (D) will revise

### Part 6 Text Completion

#### Memo

To: Production Staff  
 From: George Jones  
 Re: Document Preparation

In order to avoid extra work and waste of supplies, please observe the following guidelines when preparing documents for reproduction and distribution. The goal is to keep things simple and avoid 16.

- When you work on the final revision of a document, pay special attention to the layout. The presentation of material is as important as the content itself.
- Don't rush to the copier as soon as the final revision is complete. 17 each document carefully beforehand.
- We have technology to help with the assembly of documents. The large copier on the second floor can 18 paper in addition to stapling. This will help you complete tasks efficiently.
- If a document needs to be delivered the same day it is finished, please use a courier service.

16. (A) complicate  
 (B) complicates  
 (C) complicated  
 (D) complications

18. (A) folder  
 (B) folded  
 (C) folds  
 (D) fold

17. (A) Proof  
 (B) Proofs  
 (C) To proof  
 (D) Proofing

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following advertisement.

Do you run a small business? If so, you likely don't have a large enough staff to deal with developing, reproducing, and mailing all your documents and correspondence. Why not let Office Systems, Inc., take care of this work for you? We provide the following services:

**Editing**

Don't send out your documents until you are sure they are absolutely perfect. We provide revision and proofreading services on all documents, large or small.

**Design and Production**

Our professional graphic designers work with you to develop the best format and layout for your documents. We also provide copying and assembling services, including folding, stapling, and packaging.

**Delivery**

We can connect you with several different delivery services, including the postal system and private courier companies. Is your correspondence urgent? Our express delivery service gets it to the recipient within 24 hours or less, guaranteed.

Visit any one of our branches to open up an account with us today. You can download an application from our web site and fill it out beforehand to make the process go more smoothly. Don't let the details of correspondence and document development complicate your life. Let Office Systems, Inc., handle it all for you.

Visit [www.officesys.com](http://www.officesys.com) to find the branch nearest you.

19. Who is the audience for this advertisement?
- Editors.
  - Couriers.
  - Corporate directors.
  - Small business owners.
20. Which of the following is a service offered by Office Systems, Inc.?
- Accounting.
  - Web site development.
  - Assembling documents.
  - Reading letters.
21. How can a customer open an account with Office Systems, Inc.?
- By visiting a company branch.
  - By sending an e-mail.
  - By completing an online questionnaire.
  - By writing a letter.
22. The word *revision* in line 5 is closest in meaning to
- copying
  - rewriting
  - delivery
  - development
23. The word *beforehand* in line 14 is closest in meaning to
- by hand
  - thoroughly
  - in advance
  - in person

**Word Review #2****Lessons 6–10 Office Issues**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

1. Who is \_\_\_\_\_ hiring?  
 (A) in charge by  
 (B) in charge on  
 (C) in charge of  
 (D) in charge for
2. Most office furniture is bought more on the basis of \_\_\_\_\_ than comfort.  
 (A) afford  
 (B) affording  
 (C) afforded  
 (D) affordability
3. The office \_\_\_\_\_ samples of its products.  
 (A) display  
 (B) displayed  
 (C) displaying  
 (D) displayable
4. The staff expressed their \_\_\_\_\_ for the leadership of their boss.  
 (A) appreciate  
 (B) appreciated  
 (C) appreciating  
 (D) appreciation
5. Ms. Ming was pleased that the new employee showed such \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) initiate  
 (B) initiative  
 (C) initiated  
 (D) initiating
6. Before you send the letter, you should \_\_\_\_\_ it to make sure there are no errors.  
 (A) proof  
 (B) fold  
 (C) petition  
 (D) assemble
7. The secretary sent a copy of the revised contract by \_\_\_\_\_ mail.  
 (A) register  
 (B) registered  
 (C) registering  
 (D) registration
8. Many office supply businesses specialize in furniture that is as \_\_\_\_\_ as it is affordable.  
 (A) duration  
 (B) durable  
 (C) durability  
 (D) durableness
9. The office manager finally \_\_\_\_\_ why the new software wasn't working properly.  
 (A) figured in  
 (B) figured for  
 (C) figured out  
 (D) figured about
10. The letter from our accountant \_\_\_\_\_ that our petty cash spending was almost equal to budgeted items.  
 (A) mention  
 (B) mentioned  
 (C) mentioning  
 (D) mentionable

*Choose the one word or phrase that best completes each sentence.*

The use of computers \_\_\_\_\_ the workplace. Thirty years ago, many people had never touched a computer. Now almost everyone uses a computer for work. Computers facilitate work so that jobs can be completed more efficiently. Documents are easily duplicated and distributed with computers. The Internet has made it easy \_\_\_\_\_ for information. Computers have become very \_\_\_\_\_. Even the smallest businesses are able to buy them.

11. (A) revolutionize  
 (B) will revolutionize  
 (C) had revolutionized  
 (D) has revolutionized
12. (A) search  
 (B) to search  
 (C) searching  
 (D) can search
13. (A) afford  
 (B) affording  
 (C) affordably  
 (D) affordable

To: George Stanley  
 From: Marya Obermeyer  
 Subject: Photocopier issues

George,

We are almost out 14 paper for the photocopier. There is just one package left in the supply closet. I would appreciate your ordering a new box today. In the future, please stay on top of things like this. The order should have been made much sooner.

Also, we will have to 15 the photocopy machine sometime in the near future. We need a new one that doesn't break down so often. Please start researching this and see if you can find one that is affordable. I would also like one that is not 16 to use.

Marya

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 14. (A) of<br>(B) on<br>(C) at<br>(D) to                  | 16. (A) complicate<br>(B) complicated<br>(C) complicating<br>(D) complication |
| 15. (A) report<br>(B) repeal<br>(C) replace<br>(D) repeat |   |

#### **Memo**

To: All office staff  
 From: Office Manager  
 Re: New photocopier

We have finally purchased a new photocopier. 17, it is a great improvement over our old one. It can 18 documents so you don't have to put them together yourself. It also folds documents for mailing. However, it does not correct mistakes in your writing. When making multiple copies of a document, please 19 it beforehand and correct any errors. This will save us a great deal in both paper and time. Please let me know if you have any questions about using the new machine.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 17. (A) Technical<br>(B) Technician<br>(C) Technicality<br>(D) Technically | 19. (A) probe<br>(B) proof<br>(C) prove<br>(D) prompt |
| 18. (A) assemble<br>(B) assume<br>(C) assuage<br>(D) assert                |   |

## Lesson 11

### WORDS TO LEARN

abundant  
accomplishment  
bring together  
candidate  
come up with  
commensurate  
match  
profile  
qualifications  
recruit  
submit  
time-consuming

# Job Advertising and Recruiting

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **abundant** adj., plentiful, in large quantities
  - a. The computer analyst was glad to have chosen a field in which jobs were abundant.
  - b. The recruiter was surprised by the abundant number of qualified applicants.
2. **accomplishment** n., an achievement, a success
  - a. The success of the company was based on its early accomplishments.
  - b. In honor of her accomplishments, the manager was promoted.
3. **bring together** v., to join, to gather
  - a. Every year, the firm brings together its top lawyers and its newest recruits for a training session.
  - b. Our goal this year is to bring together the most creative group we can find.
4. **candidate** n., one being considered for a position, office, or award
  - a. The recruiter will interview all candidates for the position.
  - b. The president of our company is a candidate for the Outstanding Business Award.
5. **come up with** v., to plan, to invent, to think of
  - a. In order for that small business to succeed, it needs to come up with a new strategy.
  - b. How was the new employee able to come up with that cost-cutting idea after only one week on the job?
6. **commensurate** adj., in proportion to, corresponding, equal to
  - a. Generally the first year's salary is commensurate with experience and education level.
  - b. As mentioned in your packets, the number of new recruits will be commensurate with the number of vacancies at the company.
7. **match** n., a fit, a similarity; v., to put together, to fit
  - a. It is difficult to make a decision when both candidates seem to be a perfect match.
  - b. A headhunter matches qualified candidates to suitable positions.
8. **profile** n., a group of characteristics or traits
  - a. The recruiter told him that, unfortunately, he did not fit the job profile.
  - b. As jobs change, so does the company's profile for the job candidate.
9. **qualifications** n., requirements, qualities, or abilities needed for something
  - a. The job seeker had done extensive volunteer work and was able to add this experience to his list of qualifications.
  - b. The applicant had so many qualifications that the company created a new position for her.
10. **recruit** v., to attract people to join an organization or a cause; n., a person who is recruited
  - a. When the consulting firm recruited her, they offered to pay her relocation expenses.
  - b. The new recruits spent the entire day in training.
11. **submit** v., to present for consideration
  - a. Submit your résumé to the human resources department.
  - b. The applicant submitted all her paperwork in a professional and timely manner.
12. **time-consuming** adj., taking up a lot of time, lengthy
  - a. Even though it was time-consuming, all of the participants felt that the open house was very worthwhile.
  - b. Five interviews later, Ms. Lopez had the job, but it was the most time-consuming process she had ever gone through.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

abundant      candidates      match      recruit  
accomplishments      coming up with      profile      submit  
bring together      commensurate      qualifications      time-consuming

Recruiting employees is a (1) time-consuming and costly process. Therefore, employers want to (2) match the right person with the right job the first time around. There are many ✓ ways to (3) recruit good employees: advertising in newspapers and professional journals, recruiting on college campuses or at conferences, or getting referrals from headhunters.

Recruiting is a time for a company to brag about its ✓ (4) accomplishments and excite people about its future. Each company is trying to (5) bring together the best and the brightest, but they are not alone. Their competition is trying to do the same thing. When jobs are (6) abundant and there is low unemployment, employers may face higher demands from job seekers. Conversely, when the economy is slowing down and jobs are few, employers are in a better position for attracting the best (7) candidates.

✓ Employers look for certain characteristics and (8) qualifications in their employees. (9) come up with a very specific (10) profile that fits the company culture and the specific job requirements is a difficult job. Employers want to see a well-rounded candidate and someone who has related work experience. They are willing to offer a salary that is (11) commensurate with that experience. Employers will make hiring and salary determinations based on the information candidates (12) submit throughout the application and interview process.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	accomplish	You can accomplish anything if you put your mind to it.
noun	accomplishment	The company is proud of our team's accomplishments.
adjective	accomplished	The accomplished artist had his paintings in all the major galleries.

noun	match	The former marketing director is a good match for this position in public relations.
verb	match	We need to match both job experience and personality for this position.
adjective	matching	The matching cushions look better on the chair.

noun	profile	His customer profile shows that he always pays on time.
verb	profile	Through telephone surveys, we try to profile our clientele in order to understand who is using our services.
adjective	profiled	The profiled candidate only met half of the job requirements.

verb	qualify	In order to qualify, you must have two years of work experience.
noun	qualifications	The manager made a list of qualifications for the vacant job position.
adjective	qualified	He found himself overqualified for the entry-level position.

verb	recruit	Large accounting firms recruit on college campuses every spring.
noun	recruitment	The company's recruitment resulted in ten highly qualified new employees.
noun	recruiter	As a recruiter, he traveled around the country speaking to recent college graduates.

verb	submit	Anyone who is interested in the position should submit a résumé and writing samples.
noun	submission	I'm very sorry, the submission date was last week. We can't take any more applications.
noun	submittal	The submittal of his resignation prompted his colleagues to apply for his job.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D. *✓*

**Part 2 Question-Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C. *✓*

3. A. B. C. *✓*

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. What has the woman been doing lately?<br>(A) Fixing her drain.<br>(B) Earning money.<br>(C) Looking for matches.<br><u>(D) Searching for a job.</u> | 6. What did she do yesterday?<br><i>✓</i> (A) She had an interview.<br>(B) She read a review.<br>(C) She helped someone.<br>(D) She accepted a new position. |
| 5. How long has she been doing this?<br>(A) Two months.<br>(B) Four months.<br><u>(C) Five months.</u><br>(D) Nine months.                             | <i>✓</i>   |

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 7. What should the résumé include?<br>(A) Your major in college.<br>(B) Your grade point average.<br>(C) A current reference.<br><u>(D) A list of concrete achievements.</u>                                      | <i>✓</i> 9. Who should apply for a position now?<br>(A) Accountants.<br>(B) Recruiters.<br>(C) School teachers.<br>(D) Apartment managers. |
| 8. What is the employer looking for?<br><u>(A) Employees with long-term career plans.</u><br>(B) People to fill positions immediately.<br>(C) Aggressive marketers.<br>(D) People willing to accept minimum wage. | <i>✓</i>   |

**READING****Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. Your résumé shows you have \_\_\_\_\_ a great deal in your last position. V  
 (A) accomplish (C) accomplished  
 (B) accomplishment (D) accomplishing
11. This program is used to scan résumés and search for key words that \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) match (C) matching  
 (B) matched (D) will match
12. It is illegal to \_\_\_\_\_ candidates based on gender or ethnicity.  
 (A) profile (C) profiled  
 (B) profiling V (D) will profile
13. The applicants who \_\_\_\_\_ will be flown to the corporate office and interviewed there.  
 (A) qualification (C) qualifying  
 (B) quality V (D) qualifies
14. The company hired a professional \_\_\_\_\_ to fill the vacant positions.  
 (A) recruited (C) recruitment  
 (B) recruiting V (D) recruiter
15. After \_\_\_\_\_ all his materials, he had no option but to sit back and wait for some response.  
 (A) submitting V (C) submission  
 (B) submitted (D) submit

**Part 6 Text Completion****Attention Job Seekers!**

Attend the National Recruiting Fair to be held next Saturday, May 11, at the Hinton Hotel. This fair \_\_\_\_\_ representatives of over 150 major national corporations. They are all looking for qualified candidates to apply for thousands of currently available job openings. Attendees are advised to bring 15 copies of a current résumé that lists education, job experience, and professional \_\_\_\_\_. Many interviews will be conducted on site. Now you can stop that \_\_\_\_\_ job search, making call after call and sending out résumé after résumé. All the companies you want to work for will be together under one roof. You are sure to find the company that is the best match for you. Admission is free.

16. (A) bring together  
 (B) brings together V  
 (C) brought together  
 (D) to bring together
17. (A) accomplishes  
 (B) accomplished  
 (C) accomplishing  
 (D) accomplishments
18. (A) time-consuming V  
 (B) submitting  
 (C) recruiting  
 (D) profiling

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following two e-mail messages.

To: Marjorie Morgan  
 From: Bill Smithers —  
 Subject: Recruiting

Marjorie,

We need to start looking at recruiting some new staff members over the summer. Our company has gotten lots of new contracts recently. We have abundant work and need to take on two or three new employees to help with it. We should advertise the positions as entry-level with room for promotion. We should choose the job candidates carefully as I don't want to have to end up firing anyone who turns out to be a bad match. I would like the new staff members to start work by June 10. Therefore, we should ask interested candidates to submit their applications before the end of April so that we can start interviewing in early May. Please come up with a recruiting plan and let me know. Thanks.

Bill.

To: Bill Smithers  
 From: Marjorie Morgan  
 Subject: re: Recruiting  
 Attachment: ad draft

Bill,

Here is my plan for recruiting new staff members for this summer. I will place ads in our local newspapers, in two major national papers, and on the major web sites by April 1. The deadline for submission of applications will be April 30. We will start interviews on May 8. In the ads I will carefully outline the qualifications we are looking for. I am attaching a draft of the ad. Please look it over and send me your comments. I want to make sure it contains all the details you want.

Marjorie

19. Why does Mr. Smithers need to hire new staff members?  
 (A) He has recently fired several employees.  
(B) His company has a lot of work.  
 (C) Marjorie Morgan is leaving her job.  
 (D) Several employees have been promoted.
20. What does Mr. Smithers ask Ms. Morgan to do?  
 (A) Interview job candidates.  
 (B) Send him comments.  
(C) Make a plan to recruit new employees.  
 (D) Read the major national newspapers.
21. What will happen by April 30?  
(A) Job candidates will submit their applications.  
 (B) Interviews will begin.  
 (C) Two or three new staff members will be hired.  
 (D) The new staff members will begin working.
22. The word *candidates* in line 7 of the first e-mail is closest in meaning to  
 (A) advertisements  
 (B) descriptions  
 (C) recommendations  
(D) applicants
23. The word *qualifications* in lines 6–7 of the second e-mail is closest in meaning to  
 (A) quantities  
(B) positions  
(C) abilities  
 (D) salaries

## Lesson 12

### WORDS TO LEARN

ability  
apply  
background  
be ready for  
call in  
confidence  
constantly  
expert  
follow up  
hesitant  
present  
weakly

# Applying and Interviewing

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **ability** n., a skill, a competence
  - a. The designer's ability was obvious from her portfolio.
  - b. The ability to work with others is a key requirement.
2. **apply** v., to look for; to submit an application
  - a. The college graduate applied for three jobs and received three offers.
  - b. Everyone who is interested should apply in person at any branch office.
3. **background** n., a person's experience, education, and family history
  - a. Your background in the publishing industry is a definite asset for this job.
  - b. The employer did a complete background check before offering him the job.
4. **be ready for** v., to be prepared
  - a. Thanks to her careful research, the applicant felt that she was ready for the interview with the director of the program.
  - b. The employer wasn't ready for the applicant's questions.
5. **call in** v., to ask to come; to beckon
  - a. The young woman was so excited when she was called in for an interview that she told everyone she knew.
  - b. The human resources manager called in all the qualified applicants for a second interview.
6. **confidence** n., a belief in one's abilities, self-esteem
  - a. Good applicants show confidence during an interview.
  - b. He had too much confidence and thought that the job was his.
7. **constantly** adj., on a continual basis, happening all the time
  - a. The company is constantly looking for highly trained employees.
  - b. Martin constantly checked his messages to see if anyone had called for an interview.
8. **expert** n., a specialist
  - a. Our department head is an expert in financing.
  - b. The candidate demonstrated that he was an expert in marketing.
9. **follow up** v., to take additional steps, to continue; n., the continuation of a previous action
  - a. Always follow up an interview with a thank-you note.
  - b. As a follow up, the candidate sent the company a list of references.
10. **hesitant** adj., reluctant; with reservation
  - a. Marla was hesitant about negotiating a higher salary.
  - b. The recent college graduate was hesitant about accepting his first offer.
11. **present** v., to introduce; to show; to offer for consideration
  - a. The human resources director presents each candidate's résumé to the department supervisor for review.
  - b. The candidate presented her qualifications so well that the employer offered her a job on the spot.
12. **weakly** adv., without strength; poorly
  - a. Her hands trembled and she spoke weakly at the interview.
  - b. She wrote so weakly we couldn't read it.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

abilities	backgrounds	constantly	hesitant
apply	called in	experts	present
are ready for	confidence	follow up	weaknesses

How many times in your life will you search for a new job? The

(1) experts say probably more times than you think!

Some people find the job search time-consuming and hard on their

self- (2) confidence. The best job hunters are those who

never stop looking and don't dwell on their (3) weaknesses.

They network (4) constantly: at meetings, at social

gatherings, and with people they meet on the street. They

(5) follow up periodically with contacts and acquaintances

to keep up with new developments.

Good job hunters assess their (6) abilities all the time.

Before they even (7) apply for a position, they have researched the field and the specific companies they are interested in.

They know where they could fit into the company and they tailor their résumés for each position. They try to show how their

(8) backgrounds match the job opening. Therefore, when they

are (9) called in for an interview, they're prepared. They

(10) are ready for anything!

At the interview, these job hunters know that they must

(11) present themselves in the best way possible. This is

their opportunity to shine. It is also their opportunity to see if this is truly

the job that they want. If either party is (12) hesitant at the

interview, it may be a sign that it isn't a good fit.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	apply	Your chances are better if you apply for a job in the spring.
noun	applicant	The manager selected him from all the applicants.
noun	application	The department can't process your application until all documents have been received.

noun	confidence	It's refreshing to see a manager with so much confidence in her employees.
adjective	confident	Don't be too confident until you actually have an offer.
adverb	confidently	The applicant confidently walked into the interview, sat down, and began to talk about himself.

noun	expert	Don't portray yourself as an expert if you aren't.
noun	expertise	The worker gained expertise over the years and was promoted to a higher position.
adjective	expert	As an expert negotiator, she should have no problems getting what the company wants.

adjective	hesitant	The applicant was hesitant to explain his reason for leaving his last job.
noun	hesitation	Her hesitation about accepting the job made the department wonder if she was really interested.
verb	hesitate	Don't hesitate to call if you have any questions concerning the job.

verb	present	I'd like to present my résumé for your consideration.
noun	presentation	The applicant's presentation made a favorable impression.
adjective	presentable	The applicant was well dressed and presentable.

adverb	weakly	The applicant shook hands weakly, making me question her strength of character.
adjective	weak	She gave a weak description of her computer skills.
noun	weakness	Interviewers often ask candidates about their strengths and weaknesses.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A B C D

#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A B C

3. A B C

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

4. What do people think about the woman now?  
 (A) She has no confidence.  
(B) She is an expert.  
 (C) She is a beginner at networking.  
 (D) Her computer skills are weak.
5. What was the woman hesitant to do?  
 (A) Apply for a job.  
 (B) Use a computer.  
 (C) Give a presentation.  
(D) Go to a job interview.
6. What does the man want the woman to do?  
 (A) Help him with a workshop.  
 (B) Speak at a conference.  
 (C) Give him some change.  
 (D) Hire him.

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

7. Who would call in to this hotline?  
 (A) An expert in Salvo's product line.  
 (B) An employer.  
 (C) A human resources presenter.  
(D) A job seeker.
8. What is the purpose of this recording?  
 (A) To inform callers about Salvo.  
(B) To explain to callers what they can do.  
 (C) To present the company's philosophy.  
 (D) To give background information about a product problem.
9. What kind of people is Salvo currently looking for?  
(A) Fashion designers.  
(B) Foreign language speakers  
 (C) Human resource experts.  
(D) Software users.

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

10. So many well-qualified people \_\_\_\_\_ for the position that we won't be able to make a decision for several weeks.

(A) apply                    (C) applicant  
(B) application            (D) applied

11. As the interview continued, the applicant's \_\_\_\_\_ began to decline.

(A) confidently            (C) confidence  
(B) confident              (D) confidential

12. The applicant's unique \_\_\_\_\_ enabled her to have almost any job that she wanted.

(A) expertise              (C) expertly  
(B) experts                (D) expert

13. She spoke without \_\_\_\_\_, expressing self-confidence and projecting that she had a firm handle on the information.

(A) hesitant                (C) hesitatingly  
(B) hesitate                (D) hesitation

14. During an interview, it is important to \_\_\_\_\_ your weaknesses in a way that shows you are working to improve them.

(A) presentation           (C) presentable  
(B) present                (D) presenting

15. Her handshake had always felt like a dead fish and it was taken as a sign of a \_\_\_\_\_ character.

(A) weak                    (C) weakness  
(B) weakly                (D) weakening

## Part 6 Text Completion

When you go on a job interview, the most important thing to remember is to present yourself well. Before you go, prepare yourself by dressing neatly and professionally. When you arrive, enter the interview room 16. Look the interviewer in the eye when you shake hands. When you talk about yourself, do not be shy about your abilities. You are there to prove that you can do the job. Explain your work and educational background briefly and discuss the skills you have developed through experience. 17 to point out areas in which you have expertise. The worst thing you can do is discuss your experience weakly. Remember, if you believe in yourself, other people will, too. Don't forget to 18 the interview with a thank-you note before a week has passed.

16. (A) confident  
(B) confidently  
(C) confide  
(D) confidence

17. (A) No hesitation  
(B) Not hesitating  
(C) Don't hesitate  
(D) Doesn't hesitate

18. (A) call in  
(B) apply to  
(C) be ready for  
(D) follow up

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following letter.

Matilda Moreno,  
 Human Resources Director  
 Milestone Marketing, Inc.  
 1476 Honeycutt Avenue  
 Riverdale

Dear Ms. Moreno,

I am writing in response to your ad in last Sunday's newspaper. I am interested in applying for the marketing research assistant position. I have the background and abilities you are looking for. I have recently graduated from a four-year university program with a degree in Marketing. My work experience includes three months working as an intern for a local marketing firm, so I have on-the-job marketing experience in addition to my university training. I have also worked for the past two years as a part-time office manager while going to school. My experience at this job allowed me to develop important managerial and organizational skills.

I currently live in Deerfield but am interested in relocating to Riverdale. I will be visiting Riverdale during the first week of next month and am ready to come in for an interview any time during that week.

I am enclosing my résumé and three letters of reference. Please don't hesitate to contact me if you have any questions or need further information. I believe I am a good match for your company, and I am confident that I can do the job. I look forward to hearing from you.

Sincerely,

Samuel Rutherford

19. What kind of job is Mr. Rutherford looking for?  
 (A) Office manager.  
 (B) Human resources director.  
 (C) Marketing research assistant. ✓  
 (D) Newspaper reporter.

20. When does he want to have an interview?  
 (A) Sunday.  
 (B) Next week.  
 (C) Next month. ✓  
 (D) In three months.

21. What does he include with this letter?  
 (A) A copy of his university degree.  
 (B) Three reference books.  
 (C) A job description.  
 (D) His résumé. ✓

22. The word *background* in line 2 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) experience ✓  
 (B) location  
 (C) position  
 (D) age

23. The word *confident* in line 13 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) afraid  
 (B) lucky  
 (C) glad  
 (D) sure ✓

## Lesson 13

### WORDS TO LEARN

conduct  
generate  
hire  
keep up with  
look up to  
mentor  
on track  
reject  
set up  
success  
training  
update

# Hiring and Training

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **conduct** n., one's behavior; v., to hold, to take place, to behave
  - a. The trainees' conduct during training was unacceptable.
  - b. Interviews were conducted over a period of three weeks.
2. **generate** v., to create, to produce
  - a. The new training program generated a lot of interest among employees.
  - b. The job fair at the college campus should generate interest in our company.
3. **hire** n., an employee; v., to employ, to offer a job or position
  - a. The new hire has integrated well with his colleagues.
  - b. She was hired after her third interview.
4. **keep up with** v., to stay equal with
  - a. The workers were told that they must keep up with the changes or they would find themselves without jobs.
  - b. Employees are encouraged to take courses in order to keep up with new developments.
5. **look up to** v., to admire, to think highly of
  - a. Staff members looked up to the director because he had earned their respect over the years.
  - b. There are few people in this world that I look up to as much as I look up to you.
6. **mentor** n., a person who guides and instructs, a resource
  - a. The mentor helped her make some decisions about combining career and family.
  - b. One problem with many programs is that the mentors don't feel invested in the progress of the employees with whom they are working.
7. **on track** adj., on schedule; focused
  - a. If we stay on track, the meeting should be finished at 9:30.
  - b. You have a lot of work; if you can't stay on track, let me know immediately.
8. **reject** n., something that has been turned down; v., to turn down; to say no, to not accept
  - a. We put the rejects in this box.
  - b. Even though Mr. Lukin rejected their offer, they remained in contact.
9. **set up** adj., established, arranged; v., to establish, to arrange
  - a. Check with your supervisor to make sure that your office is all set up before you begin work.
  - b. Set up a time and place for the meeting and then inform everyone who is involved.
10. **success** n., an accomplishment; reaching a goal
  - a. The director's success came after years of hiring the right people at the right time.
  - b. When the manager won an award, he attributed his success to his colleagues.
11. **training** n., the preparation or education for a specific job
  - a. The new hire received such good training that, within a week, she was as productive as the other workers.
  - b. The training is designed to prepare all workers, new and old, for the changes that the company will face.
12. **update** v., to make current; n., the latest information
  - a. The personnel officer updated the employees on the latest personnel changes.
  - b. Our latest update shows that business is down 15 percent.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

<u>conducted</u>	<u>keep up with</u>	<u>on track</u>	<u>successfully</u>
generate	<u>look up to</u>	<u>rejected</u>	training
hires	<u>mentor</u>	<u>set up</u>	<u>update</u>

After the ads have been placed, and the interviews have been .  
 ✓ (1) conducted, decisions have to be made. Who should the company bring onboard? Job offers are extended and they are either accepted or (2) rejected. For those who accept the offer, the job search has been completed (3) successfully. But for both the employer and the new hire, the job has just begun.

Companies want new employees to (4) generate new business and new ideas as soon as possible. Before they can do that, the new (5) hires need some (6) training.

All companies have unique expectations and methods of operating. Company trainers conduct workshops and seminars for both experienced and new workers. All employees must prepare for the future and continuously (7) update themselves in their field. Nowadays, workers are expected to (8) keep up with the latest trends and information. Otherwise, they fall behind.

Many companies (9) set up a mentoring program for new employees. The (10) mentor is usually an experienced manager or employee and should be someone whom the new employee can (11) look up to. Mentors often review goals and objectives with their mentorees and help them to stay (12) on track.

## WORD FAMILIES

noun	<u>conduct</u>	Your conduct during the meeting reflected poorly on the company.
verb	<u>conduct</u>	If you conduct yourself with professionalism, you will always impress your coworkers.
noun	<u>conductor</u>	The conductor gathered tickets before the first stop.

verb	<u>generate</u>	The purpose of the demonstration is to generate interest in the new product.
noun	<u>generator</u>	The generator goes on automatically when the electricity goes off.
adjective	<u>generated</u>	The sales that were generated by the giveaway surprised even the sales department.

verb	<u>hire</u>	The personnel director needed to hire 15 people within a week.
noun	<u>hire</u>	The new hire quickly gained a reputation for excellent work.
gerund	<u>hiring</u>	The hiring took the company much longer than expected.

verb	<u>reject</u>	The candidate rejected the offer the first time, but the second time she accepted it.
noun	<u>rejection</u>	Rejections are difficult, but you can learn something from them.
gerund	<u>rejecting</u>	Rejecting a job offer before you have it is not a smart thing to do.

verb	<u>succeed</u>	In order to succeed in this business, you must be persistent.
noun	<u>success</u>	Don't let success go to your head!
adjective	<u>successful</u>	The trainers were very successful with this last group of new hires.

verb	<u>train</u>	Even though you were trained on a Macintosh, you'll have to learn how to use a PC.
noun	<u>trainer</u>	The trainer stayed after the meeting to answer any questions.
noun	<u>trainee</u>	Each new employee spends six weeks as a trainee.

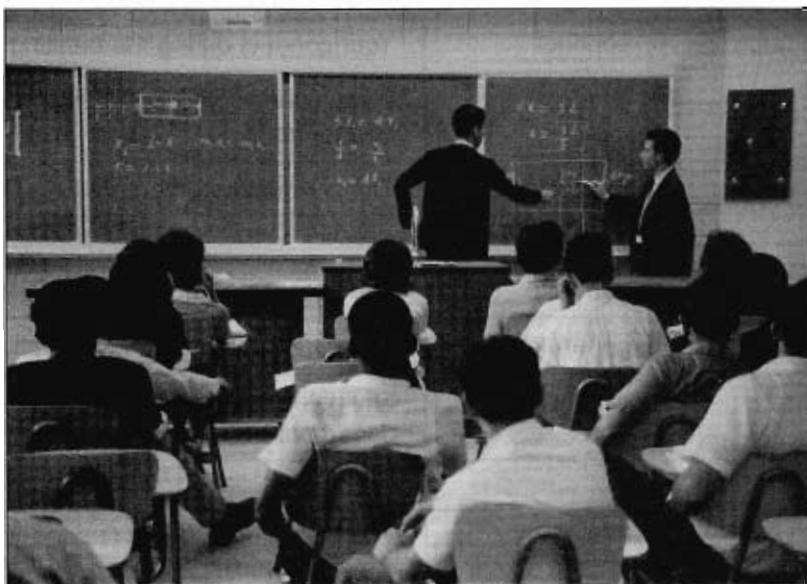
## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A  B  C  D

#### Part 2 Question–Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A  B  C      3. A  B  C

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 4. What is the response to the training program? | 6. What will the woman do now? |
| (A) Boredom.                                     | (A) Join a discussion.         |
| (B) Confusion.                                   | (B) <u>Set up the room.</u>    |
| (C) Chaos.                                       | (C) Look for seating.          |
| (D) Enthusiasm.                                  | (D) Write a letter.            |
5. How long will the training program last?
- (A) One week.  
 (B) Two weeks.  
 (C) Three weeks.  
 (D) Four weeks.

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 7. Who is listening to this talk? | 9. How long will they spend on the first activity? |
| (A) New workers.                  | (A) Two minutes.                                   |
| (B) Annual trainers.              | (B) Three minutes.                                 |
| (C) Patients.                     | (C) Four minutes.                                  |
| (D) <u>New mentors.</u>           | (D) <u>Five minutes.</u>                           |
8. What will they do first?
- (A) Select participants for the program.  
(B) Think of traits of good teachers.  
(C) Generate a list of rules.  
 (D) Hear an update on sales figures.

**READING****Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. The presentation was \_\_\_\_\_ seamlessly, giving an impressive image of the team.  
 (A) conduct                    (C) conducting  
 (B) conducted                (D) conductor

11. You need to consider how many new sales you \_\_\_\_\_ in comparison to how many standing clients put in orders.  
 (A) generator                (C) generating  
 (B) generated                (D) generation

12. After he was \_\_\_\_\_, he continued to take classes to upgrade his skills.  
 (A) hiring                    (C) hired  
 (B) hires                     (D) hire

13. Unfortunately, not all candidates can be offered a job; some have to be \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) rejected                (C) rejection  
 (B) rejecting                (D) reject

14. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the program depends on the active participation of everyone.  
 (A) successfully            (C) successful  
 (B) succeed                (D) success

15. In all my years of \_\_\_\_\_, I have never seen such a motivated group of new hires.  
 (A) trainee                (C) trains  
 (B) training                (D) trainer

**Part 6 Text Completion****Mentoring**

In order to ensure the 16 of new hires, many companies have implemented a mentor program. This is a formal way to provide new hires with the guidance they need to 17 the responsibilities of their new position. With a mentor in place, the new hire knows exactly who to go to when confused about policies and procedures. In addition, many mentors conduct regular meetings with the people they are responsible for. This way they can make sure that no serious problems arise. A mentor does not necessarily replace formal 18 programs. In fact, they often go hand in hand. New hires may need a lot of support initially. Mentors are a good way to provide this.

16. (A) success  
 (B) succeed  
 (C) successful  
 (D) successfully

17. (A) set up  
 (B) look up to  
 (C) keep up with  
 (D) stay on track with

18. (A) train  
 (B) trainer  
 (C) trained  
 (D) training

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following memo and e-mail message.

**Memo**

To: All new hires  
 From: Edwin Mallory, Human Resources Director  
 Re: Training session

All new hires are required to attend a training session which will take place on Friday, October 12 from 9:30 A.M. until 3:30 P.M. The session will be conducted in Meeting Room 3, and lunch will be provided. During the session you will get an overview of company policies and procedures. You will also be updated on changes in the benefits package and learn about professional development opportunities you will be required to participate in so that you can keep up with changes in your field. Attendance at this training is mandatory for everyone hired since June of this year. There will be no excuses.

To: Edwin Mallory  
 From: Amelia Foote  
 Subject: Training session

Dear Mr. Mallory,

I just learned from your memo that I will be required to attend the training session on October 12. Unfortunately, I had already planned to be out of the office that week attending my niece's wedding. My supervisor has given me permission to take that time off, and I have already purchased my plane tickets. I didn't know about the date of the training session when I set up these plans, and it will be very difficult to change them now. My mentor suggested that I ask you for permission to miss this training session. I am willing to attend the next session instead. I hope you don't reject this offer. It is very important to me to be able to attend this family event. Thank you.

Amelia Foote

19. How long will the training session last?  
 (A) Three hours.  
 (B) Six hours.  
(C) Nine hours.  
 (D) Twelve hours.
20. Who must attend the training session?  
 (A) All company employees.  
 (B) Only members of the Human Resources Department.  
 (C) Mentors and supervisors.  
(D) All new hires.
21. Why doesn't Amelia Foote want to attend the training session?  
 (A) She has an important family event.  
 (B) She thinks it won't be useful.  
 (C) She believes the next session will be better.  
 (D) She doesn't have permission from her supervisor.
22. The word *conducted* in line 3 of the memo is closest in meaning to  
 (A) announced  
 (B) informed  
 (C) learned  
(D) held
23. The word *reject* in line 12 of the e-mail is closest in meaning to  
 (A) consider  
 (B) accept  
(C) say no  
 (D) agree to

## Lesson 14

### WORDS TO LEARN

basis  
be aware of  
benefit  
compensate  
delicately  
eligible  
flexibly  
negotiate  
raise  
retire  
vested  
wage

# Salaries and Benefits

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **basis** n., the main reason for something; a base or foundation
  - a. The manager didn't have any basis for firing the employee.
  - b. On the basis of my ten years of loyalty to this company, I feel that I deserve three weeks vacation.
2. **be aware of** v., to be conscious of; to be knowledgeable about
  - a. The new staff member wasn't aware of the company's position on working a second job.
  - b. Are you aware of the new employee's past work history?
3. **benefit** n., an advantage provided to an employee in addition to salary; v., to take advantage of
  - a. Although the analyst earned a better salary at his new job, his benefits were better at his previous job.
  - b. We all benefit from the company's policy of semiannual reviews.
4. **compensate** v., to pay; to make up for
  - a. The company compensates employees for overtime by paying double for extra hours.
  - b. The company will compensate employees for any travel expenses.
5. **delicately** adv., with sensitivity
  - a. Senior management is handling these contract negotiations delicately.
  - b. The manager delicately asked about the health of his client.
6. **eligible** adj., able to participate in something; qualified
  - a. Some employees may be eligible for the tuition reimbursement plan.
  - b. I don't understand why I'm not eligible if I have been with the company for over a year.
7. **flexibly** adv., with the ability to change; loosely
  - a. My manager thinks flexibly, enabling herself to solve many sticky problems.
  - b. We need to respond flexibly if we want to keep customers in this competitive market.
8. **negotiate** v., to talk for the purpose of reaching an agreement, especially on prices or contracts
  - a. You must know what you want and what you can accept when you negotiate a salary.
  - b. The associate looked forward to the day that she would be able to negotiate her own contracts.
9. **raise** n., an increase in salary; v., to move up
  - a. With his raise, Mr. Drvoshanov was able to afford to buy a new car.
  - b. We need to raise the standard for timeliness.
10. **retire** v., to stop working; to withdraw from a business or profession
  - a. She retired at the age of 64 but continued to be very active with volunteer work.
  - b. Many people would like to win the lottery and retire.
11. **vested** adj., guaranteed as a right, involved
  - a. The day that Ms. Weng became fully vested in the retirement plan, she gave her two weeks' notice.
  - b. The company has a vested interest in the happiness of its employees.
12. **wage** n., the money paid for work done, usually hourly
  - a. Hourly wages have increased by 20 percent over the last two years.
  - b. The intern spends more than half of her wages on rent.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

basis	compensated	flexibility	retirement
be aware of	delicate	negotiated	vested
benefits	eligible	raise	wage

An important part of the job search often comes after an offer has been made. Papers should not be signed until you have successfully (1) \_\_\_\_\_ your salary and (2) \_\_\_\_\_. You want to make sure you will be adequately (3) \_\_\_\_\_ for your skills, work, and time. This is a (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and difficult area. You should (5) \_\_\_\_\_ what the salary ranges are at the company and in the field.

Some workers are not on a salary; rather they work for an hourly (6) \_\_\_\_\_. In some cases, workers who earn an hourly wage have more (7) \_\_\_\_\_ with the hours they work. The trade-off is that the worker may not receive any benefits. For those workers on a salary, the base salary that is negotiated is critical, because most subsequent pay raises come in small incremental amounts. Most companies have a review process either on an annual or semiannual (8) \_\_\_\_\_. As a result of the review, an employee may receive a (9) \_\_\_\_\_.

Each employee has a unique situation. Health insurance coverage and (10) \_\_\_\_\_ plans may be essential to some employees, whereas they are not important to others. Many companies will offer benefits in such a way that it is to the employee's advantage to stay with the company for a longer period of time. Employees may not be (11) \_\_\_\_\_ to sign up for a retirement plan until they have been with the company for one year and employees are not fully (12) \_\_\_\_\_ in these plans until they have five years of service under their belts. Some bonus plans are paid out over a period of years. Vacation time increases after more years of service.

## WORD FAMILIES

noun	basis	Your raise will be determined on the basis of performance alone.
verb	base	We base promotions on seniority.
adjective	based	Based on the assumption that you will earn more in your new position, you can afford the car you've been wanting.

verb	benefit	In order to benefit from the plan, you must fill out the paperwork and submit it to the personnel office.
noun	benefits	The new employee's benefits went into effect three months after his start date.
adjective	beneficial	The service that the insurance has provided has been very beneficial.

verb	compensate	The company compensates its full-time employees well.
noun	compensation	Compensation will be based on your work performance over the past six months.
adjective	compensatory	Compensatory time is given in lieu of overtime pay.

adverb	flexibly	She approaches problems flexibly, looking at the situation from every different angle.
adjective	flexible	Younger workers tend to be more flexible with their work schedules.
noun	flexibility	His flexibility on benefits was one of the main reasons we were able to hire him at this time.

verb	negotiate	The employee prepared a list of her accomplishments to share with her supervisor so that she could negotiate a higher salary.
noun	negotiation	The director was very pleased that the negotiations brought about the end of the strike.
noun	negotiator	I should take lessons from Mr. Tarsa; he is such a skilled negotiator.

verb	retire	Many people don't know what to do with all their time when they retire from work.
noun	retirement	The administrator added more money to the fund for her retirement.
adjective	retired	The retired worker came back to the office from time to time to see his friends.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*

1. A B C D



#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A B C      3. A B C

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

- |   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| 4. Why is the man disappointed?         | 6. What benefit does he get? |
| (A) His health coverage is poor.        | (A) Life insurance.          |
| (B) He asked for too much compensation. | (B) Health insurance.        |
| (C) He doesn't know how to negotiate.   | (C) Paid vacation.           |
| (D) He doesn't earn enough money.       | (D) Regular raises.          |
5. How long has he been working at the company?
- (A) Two months.  
 (B) Four months.  
 (C) Six months.  
 (D) Nine months.

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 7. How often are raises given?  | 9. How many days of paid vacation does each employee get? |
| (A) Once a year.<br>(B) Twice a year.<br>(C) At an employee's request.<br>(D) Whenever an employee is eligible for a raise. | (A) Five.<br>(B) Ten.<br>(C) Fourteen.<br>(D) Forty-two.  |
8. Where should employees go to learn more about wage increases?
- (A) The Employee Handbook.  
 (B) Their paycheck stubs.  
 (C) Their contract.  
 (D) Their supervisor.

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. All temporary workers are paid on an hourly \_\_\_\_\_ and receive no benefits.  
 (A) base                    (C) basis  
 (B) based                  (D) basic
11. What is the company's policy on \_\_\_\_\_ for part-time workers?  
 (A) benefited              (C) benefits  
 (B) beneficial             (D) benefit
12. The tired employee hoped that she would be \_\_\_\_\_ for all the long hours she kept and weekends she worked.  
 (A) compensation        (C) compensated  
 (B) compensates         (D) compensate
13. Sometimes the manager is too \_\_\_\_\_ and his workers take advantage of him.  
 (A) flex                    (C) flexibly  
 (B) flexible               (D) flexibility
14. If the \_\_\_\_\_ continue into the evening, we will break for dinner at six.  
 (A) negotiator            (C) negotiate  
 (B) negotiations         (D) negotiated
15. No one is sure what will happen to the company when the president finally \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) retires                (C) retired  
 (B) retirement           (D) retiree

### Part 6 Text Completion

To all union members:

Your union has been working for you. You may 16 aware that we have been negotiating with management for improvements in the benefits package. Yesterday an agreement was reached on the following points:

- 1) All employees of the company will be 17 for an increase in wages every six months, following a performance review. Reasons for refusal to give a raise must be carefully documented according to union guidelines.
- 2) Employees 18 at one and a half times their usual hourly wages for overtime hours. Any time worked beyond 40 hours a week counts as overtime.
- 3) Part-time employees can now receive full health benefits. It is each employee's responsibility to complete and submit the application forms. Part-time employees are also guaranteed five days of paid vacation per year. These two benefits apply to employees who work a minimum of 20 hours per week on a permanent basis.

16. (A) be  
 (B) is  
 (C) are  
 (D) were
17. (A) flexible  
 (B) beneficial  
 (C) eligible  
 (D) negotiable
18. (A) will compensate  
 (B) are going to compensate  
 (C) will be compensated  
 (D) have to compensate

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following e-mail message.

To: James Porter  
 From: Helene Bourassa  
 Subject: Re: Benefits questions

Dear James,

I will try to clarify for you your questions about retirement benefits.

**Time of retirement:** The time at which an employee can retire is calculated on the basis of age and number of years of service to the company. An employee of the company can retire with full benefits at age 55 if he or she has worked a minimum of 30 years for the company. Employees can retire at age 60 or above with 25 years of service to the company. Since you are younger than 60 years old and have worked for the company for 22 years, you won't be eligible to retire for another few years.

**Benefits for your spouse:** I know this is a delicate matter, but it is important to know about. If you die before your spouse, she will continue to receive full retirement benefits for the rest of her life.

**Health insurance:** Retirees are eligible to receive health insurance. There are several packages to choose from, and I will send you brochures about them. Your spouse will also be eligible for health coverage when you retire. If you happen to have any dependent children under the age of 21 and living at home, they, too, will be eligible for health coverage.

I hope this answers your questions. Please don't hesitate to contact me if you need any further information.

Helene

19. How old is James Porter?  
 (A) Between 22 and 25.  
 (B) 25.  
 (C) Younger than 60.  
 (D) Exactly 60.
20. Who can receive retirement benefits after James dies?  
 (A) His children.  
 (B) His wife.  
 (C) All of his dependents.  
 (D) Nobody.
21. Who can get health coverage when James retires?  
 (A) His 19-year-old son who lives at home.  
 (B) His 20-year-old daughter who lives with her spouse.  
 (C) Any of his children who want it.  
 (D) Only his wife.
22. The word *basis* in line 2 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) solution  
 (B) formula  
 (C) amount  
 (D) foundation
23. The word *delicate* in line 7 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) sensitive  
 (B) complicated  
 (C) necessary  
 (D) interesting

## Lesson 15

### WORDS TO LEARN

achievement  
contribute  
dedication  
look forward to  
look to  
loyal  
merit  
obviously  
productive  
promote  
recognition  
value

# Promotions, Pensions, and Awards

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **achievement** n., an accomplishment, a completed act
  - a. Your main achievements will be listed in your personnel file.
  - b. Joseph's achievements in R&D will go down in company history.
2. **contribute** v., to add to; to donate, to give
  - a. Make sure your boss is aware of the work you contributed to the project.
  - b. All employees are asked to contribute a few minutes of their spare time to clean up the office.
3. **dedication** n., a commitment to something
  - a. The director's dedication to a high-quality product has motivated many of his employees.
  - b. We would never be where we are today if it weren't for many long hours and so much dedication.
4. **look forward to** v., to anticipate, to be eager for something to happen
  - a. The regional director was looking forward to the new, larger offices.
  - b. We look forward to seeing you at the next meeting.
5. **look to** v., to depend on, to rely on
  - a. The workers always looked to him to settle their disagreements.
  - b. The staff is looking to their supervisor for guidance and direction.
6. **loyal** adj., faithful, believing in someone or something
  - a. You have been such a loyal advisor for so many years, I'm not sure what I'll do without you.
  - b. Even though your assistant is loyal, you have to question his job performance.
7. **merit** n., excellence, high quality
  - a. Employees are evaluated on their merit and not on seniority.
  - b. Your work has improved tremendously and is of great merit.
8. **obviously** adv., clearly, evidently
  - a. Her tardiness was obviously resented by her coworkers.
  - b. This is obviously not the first time that the customer has had problems with this particular model of sander.
9. **productive** adj., useful, getting a lot done
  - a. The researcher wasn't as productive when he first started working here.
  - b. The managers had a very productive meeting and were able to solve many of the problems.
10. **promote** v., to give someone a better job; to support, to make known
  - a. Even though the sales associate had a good year, it wasn't possible to promote him.
  - b. The assistant director promoted the idea that the director was incompetent.
11. **recognition** n., credit, praise for doing something well
  - a. The president's personal assistant was finally given the recognition that she has deserved for many years.
  - b. Recognition of excellent work should be routine for every manager.
12. **value** v., to state the worth
  - a. Employees value their colleagues' opinions.
  - b. The expert valued the text at \$7,000.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

<u>achievements</u>	<u>look forward</u>	<u>merits</u>	<u>promotions</u>
<u>contributions</u>	<u>look to</u>	<u>obvious</u>	<u>recognizes</u>
<u>dedicate</u>	<u>loyalty</u>	<u>productivity</u>	<u>value</u>

Congratulations. You have been chosen by your colleagues to receive the Keeler Award of Excellence. This prestigious award  
 ✓ (1) recognizes employees who have made extraordinary  
 ✓ (2) contributions to the corporation over the years.

✓ Your coworkers gave several reasons for selecting you. First, they mentioned your (3) achievements in the marketing department. In the past four years, you have had four (4) promotions in this department, all based on the many (5) merits of your work in developing our image in new markets. In addition, your (6) loyalty to the department is (7) obvious to all. Many of your coworkers mention that they (8) look to you for advice. Your supervisor praised your high (9) productivity.

The Keeler Award acknowledges an employee's (10) value with a \$1,000 bonus. We (11) look forward to the opportunity to (12) dedicate a rosebush in the company garden in each recipient's name.

The awards ceremony will be held on August 7 on the front lawn at 10:30 a.m. Again, congratulations.

## WORD FAMILIES

noun	<u>achievement</u>	His achievements were noticed by the vice president and he was sent to the London office.
verb	<u>achieve</u>	Making a list of your objectives will help you achieve them.
noun	<u>achiever</u>	Mr. Vadji always considered himself a high achiever.

verb	contribute	All employees were urged to contribute something useful at the staff meetings.
noun	contribution	Each of you has made a significant contribution to our team's success.
noun	<u>contributor</u>	As contributors to the company's outstanding year, all employees will receive an additional holiday bonus.

verb	dedicate	The manager dedicates too much time to reports and not enough time to the customer.
noun	dedication	Margo's dedication to the company was rewarded with a two-week trip to Hawaii.
adjective	dedicated	Before the change in management, he used to be a more dedicated worker.

adjective	loyal	He has been both a loyal coworker and a loyal friend.
noun	loyalty	Her loyalty to the company impressed even the owners.
adverb	<u>loyally</u>	The security officer loyally guarded the company's vault.

adjective	<u>productive</u>	The most productive team in the department will win a two-day vacation in the Bahamas.
noun	<u>product</u>	The new product will be released in the early spring.
verb	<u>produce</u>	The film was produced in Manila.

verb	<u>promote</u>	In order to move ahead in the company, you must promote yourself.
noun	<u>promotion</u>	Promotions are given to those who prove their worth.
noun	promoter	As the main promoter of the product, Ms. Ross was responsible for the marketing campaign.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes  
the picture.*



1. (A) (B) (C) (D)

**Part 2 Question-Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. (A) (B) (C)      3. (A) (B) (C)

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

4. Why will the ceremony be held?  
 (A) To honor Darrell.  
 (B) To boast about production figures.  
 (C) To celebrate the opening of a new office.  
 (D) To present awards.
5. When will the ceremony be held?  
 (A) Today.  
 (B) Tuesday.  
(C) Tonight.  
 (D) Tomorrow.
6. What is the speaker's opinion of Darrell?  
 (A) He is loyal.  
(B) He is not productive.  
 (C) He is unimpressive.  
 (D) He is not a hard worker.

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

7. Who is talking?  
 (A) Two employees.  
(B) An award presenter.  
 (C) Community volunteers.  
 (D) A professor.
8. Who is the audience?  
 (A) Students.  
 (B) Customers.  
(C) Employees.  
 (D) Citizens.
9. When did the company open?  
 (A) 1965.  
 (B) 1975.  
(C) 1985.  
 (D) 1995.

**READING****Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. When he thought about his long career, he realized that his biggest \_\_\_\_\_ was in developing the new leaders of the company.  
 (A) achiever      (C) achievement      ✓  
 (B) achieved      (D) achieves
11. She has \_\_\_\_\_ so much time and energy to the project that her name should appear on the award.  
 (A) contributes      (C) contributed      ✓  
 (B) contribution      (D) contributor
12. Hard work and \_\_\_\_\_ will help you move up the corporate ladder.  
 (A) dedicated      (C) dedication      ✓  
 (B) dedicates      (D) dedicated
13. There is no reason to question her \_\_\_\_\_ to our company.  
 (A) loyal      (C) loyalty      ✓  
 (B) loyally      (D) laurels
14. These microchips are \_\_\_\_\_ faster and more cheaply in Asia.  
 (A) produce      (C) product  
 (B) produced      (D) production
15. Because you are a valued and dedicated employee, we are \_\_\_\_\_ you to director of the department.  
 ✓ (A) promoting      (C) promotion  
 (B) promote      (D) promoter

**Part 6 Text Completion**

Dear Harry,

We are pleased to inform you of your promotion within our company. Starting the first of next month, you will begin in your new position as manager of the Fulfillment Department. During your years as a member of the Fulfillment Department staff, you have made many 16 to the productivity and smooth operation of the department. We have always valued your dedication to your job, and now we are pleased to be able 17 your hard work and fine skills with this promotion. We know you will do a wonderful job. The Personnel Department will contact you soon regarding the changes in your salary and benefits. We 18 welcoming you to your new position next month.

Sincerely,

Madeline Kovacs

President

16. (A) contribute  
 (B) contributes  
 (C) contributors  
 (D) contributions
17. (A) recognize  
 (B) to recognize  
 (C) recognizing  
 (D) will recognize
18. (A) look forward to  
 (B) look in on  
 (C) look for  
 (D) look to

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following memo and e-mail message.

To: All company staff  
 From: Claude Dubois, Personnel Manager  
 Re: Annual Awards Ceremony

It is time to start getting ready for the company's annual awards ceremony. It will take place at the Merrimack Hotel on Friday, November 10. Up to 15 staff members will receive awards from the company president that evening. We look to you, our company staff, to help us select deserving award recipients. Please send in your nominations for colleagues who you think merit the recognition of an award. Obviously, we would like to see names of people who have contributed more than average to the company. Send me your nominations by e-mail before October 15 so that we can have the list finalized before November 5. Thank you.

To: claude\_dubois@starco.com  
 From: marilyn\_freeland@starco.com  
 Subject: nomination

Hi Claude,

I would like to nominate my coworker, Janet McGhee, assistant manager of the research department, for an award. Her dedication to her job is far above average. She always works long hours to make sure she gets her job done. If she is working on an important project, she will come into the office on weekends if she thinks it's necessary to completing her job on time. The rest of us in the department always look to Janet as an example of how to get a job done right. If anyone deserves the recognition of an award for loyalty and dedication, it's Janet. I hope you will consider her as an award recipient.

Thank you.

Marilyn

19. When will the awards ceremony be held?  
 (A) October 15.  
 (B) November 5.  
(C) November 10.  
 (D) November 15.
20. Who will suggest award recipients?  
 (A) The personnel manager.  
 (B) The company president.  
 (C) The assistant manager.  
(D) The company staff members.
21. Why does Marilyn Freeland think Janet McGhee deserves an award?  
 (A) She works on important projects.  
(B) She always works long hours.  
 (C) She looks to others as an example.  
 (D) She manages the research department.

22. The word *Obviously* in line 9 of the first e-mail is closest in meaning to  
 (A) clearly  
(B) quickly  
 (C) usually  
 (D) importantly
23. The word *dedication* in line 3 of the second e-mail is closest in meaning to  
 (A) ability  
(B) commitment  
 (C) knowledge  
 (D) attendance

**Word Review #3****Lessons 11–15 Personnel**

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ with a good ad is time-consuming.  
(A) Coming up  
(B) Coming to  
(C) Coming by  
(D) Coming on
2. To \_\_\_\_\_ the best and the brightest, companies have to be willing to pay well.  
(A) recruit  
(B) recruits  
(C) recruiting  
(D) recruitment
3. A qualified candidate usually exudes \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) confident  
(B) confidence  
(C) confidential  
(D) confidentially
4. Any applicant is wise to \_\_\_\_\_ an interview with a note or a phone call.  
(A) follow after  
(B) follow behind  
(C) follow up  
(D) follow with
5. Workers are promoted on their \_\_\_\_\_ and merits.  
(A) achieve  
(B) achieved  
(C) achiever  
(D) achievements
6. The benefits package is an important aspect of contract \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) negotiate  
(B) negotiable  
(C) negotiations  
(D) negotiated
7. Some employees have to wait years before they are fully \_\_\_\_\_ in the company pension plan.  
(A) vest  
(B) vested  
(C) vesting  
(D) vests
8. Health \_\_\_\_\_ are very important for an employee who develops a serious medical problem.  
(A) benefit  
(B) benefits  
(C) beneficial  
(D) beneficiary
9. A \_\_\_\_\_ and hard-working employee can look forward to rapid promotions.  
(A) dedicate  
(B) dedication  
(C) dedicating  
(D) dedicated
10. A company that recognizes \_\_\_\_\_ merit will receive employee loyalty in return.  
(A) obvious  
(B) obviously  
(C) oblivious  
(D) obliviously

*Choose the one word or phrase that best completes each sentence.*

Thank you for your interest in working at Plytel Corporation. To apply for a position, please 11 a résumé and a letter explaining your background and interest. We will keep your information on file for a year. If your qualifications match available openings, we will call you 12 for an interview. Please do not call us; we will contact you if we have a position suited to your 13.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 11. (A) submit<br>(B) will submit<br>(C) to submit<br>(D) submitting | 13. (A) able<br>(B) ably<br>(C) enable<br>(D) abilities |
| 12. (A) on<br>(B) in<br>(C) to<br>(D) at                             |   |

When your company has a job opening, it is important to hire the right person for the job. The job interview offers you, the employer, an opportunity to get to know each 14 and assess his or her ability to do the job. You will have many questions for the applicants, but you should also 15 ready for questions from them. In addition to understanding the job duties, they may want to know about 16 offered by your company such as vacations and health care.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 14. (A) expert<br>(B) mentor<br>(C) supervisor<br>(D) candidate | 16. (A) beneficiaries<br>(B) beneficial<br>(C) beneficent<br>(D) benefits |
| 15. (A) be<br>(B) do<br>(C) have<br>(D) will be                 |   |

Getting a promotion is a great honor. It means your company 17 your merits. When you are promoted to the position of supervisor, your work life changes. You are now in a position of responsibility. It is important to set a good example because your staff 18 you. If you carry out your job responsibilities 19, you will gain their respect. This is the key to success in your new position.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 17. (A) recruits<br>(B) contributes<br>(C) recognizes<br>(D) dedicates            | 19. (A) confident<br>(B) confidence<br>(C) confidently<br>(D) confidentialia |
| 18. (A) looks for<br>(B) looks up to<br>(C) looks down on<br>(D) looks forward to |  |

# Lesson 16

## WORDS TO LEARN

bargain  
bear  
behavior  
checkout  
comfort  
expand  
explore  
item  
mandatory  
merchandise  
strictly  
trend

# Shopping

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **bargain** v., to negotiate; n., an advantageous purchase
  - a. She bargained for over an hour, finally reducing the price by half.
  - b. Lois compared the sweaters carefully to determine which was a better bargain.
2. **bear** v., to have tolerance for; to endure
  - a. Moya doesn't like crowds so she cannot bear to shop during the holiday rush.
  - b. If you can bear with me, I'd like to stop in one more store.
3. **behavior** n., the manner of one's actions
  - a. Annu is conducting a survey on whether consumer behavior differs between men and women.
  - b. Suspicious behavior in a department store will draw the attention of the security guards.
4. **checkout** n., the act, time, or place of checking out, as at a hotel, library, or supermarket
  - a. The line at this checkout is too long, so let's look for another.
  - b. Get in the checkout line now and I'll join you with the last items.
5. **comfort** v., to calm somebody; n., a condition or feeling of pleasurable ease, well-being, and contentment
  - a. Comfort yourself with a down quilt this winter.
  - b. I like to dress for comfort if I'm spending the day shopping.
6. **expand** v., to increase the size, volume, quantity, or scope of; to enlarge
  - a. The new manager has significantly expanded the store's inventory.
  - b. The shoe store is out of room and is thinking about expanding into the adjacent vacant building.
7. **explore** v., to investigate systematically
  - a. The collector likes to explore antique shops looking for bargains.
  - b. While his mother shopped for clothes, Michael wandered off to explore the toy section.
8. **item** n., a single article or unit
  - a. The grocery store has a special checkout line for people who are purchasing fewer than ten items.
  - b. Do you think I can get all these items into one bag?
9. **mandatory** adj., required or commanded; obligatory
  - a. The jewelry store has a mandatory policy of showing customers only one item at a time.
  - b. There is a mandatory limit of nine items for use of this checkout line.
10. **merchandise** n., items available in stores
  - a. I am very impressed with the selection of merchandise at this store.
  - b. Helen wanted to make sure that the store had a wide variety of merchandise before she committed to buying a gift certificate.
11. **strictly** adv., rigidly, without flexibility
  - a. Our store strictly enforces its return policy.
  - b. Their high turnover rate is no surprise, considering how strictly the manager deals with them.
12. **trend** n., the current style; vogue
  - a. The clothing store tries to stay on top of all the new trends.
  - b. Mioshi followed market trends closely before she bought a clothing franchise.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

bargains	checkout	exploring	merchandise
bear	comforting	items	strictly
behavior	expand	mandatory	trend

Some people love to shop. Others can't (1) **bear** shopping and only go when their clothes are completely worn-out. No one can get away from shopping—unless you can do without eating! Consumption and consumer (2) **behavior** affects everything we do.

Some purchases are absolutely (3) **mandatory**. Everyone needs to eat, wear clothing, and sit on furniture. Other purchases are (4) **strictly** for luxury (5) **items**. The vast majority of what most of us buy is somewhere in between essential items and frivolous items.

Most people shop by visiting stores on the weekend. It's fun to (6) **expand** the number of places you shop in by (7) **exploring** new stores—even if you don't make a purchase. It's also (8) **comforting** to return to stores you know well, where you know what the (9) **merchandise** selection is likely to be.

Most shoppers are looking for (10) **bargains**. Some people even check out all the aisles looking to see if the items they normally use have been marked down. Everyone loves finding that their favorite items are discounted to a lower price. A sale makes going to the (11) **checkout** counter a happier event.

A steadily growing (12) **trend** is shopping from the comfort of home. Many people like to shop by catalogs and over the Internet. You can get almost everything, from books to apparel, by mail, without having to leave your home.

## WORD FAMILIES

<b>noun</b>	comfort	This car is designed with plush seats for your comfort and air bags for your safety.
<b>adjective</b>	comfortable	I prefer this sweater because it's more comfortable.
<b>adverb</b>	comfortably	I'd suggest buying the larger table, which comfortably seats six.

<b>verb</b>	expand	The music store expanded its selection by offering more classical music on compact discs.
<b>noun</b>	expansion	The expansion of our sales territory into a new region will mean more stock will have to be ordered.
<b>adjective</b>	expanded	The expanded inventory is great, but it's hard to find room to store it.

<b>verb</b>	explore	Ms. Marce explored the bins of hardware, looking for the right size nails.
<b>noun</b>	exploration	The store designer's exploration of the art of different cultures gave the store an exotic look.
<b>adjective</b>	exploratory	The oil company's exploratory drill led to a new supply of petroleum.

<b>adjective</b>	<u>mandatory</u>	Ankle-high boots are mandatory with that skirt.
<b>noun</b>	<u>mandate</u>	One of the company mandates is to treat the customer with the greatest respect.
<b>verb</b>	<u>mandate</u>	The handbook mandates that all keys be turned in to the night shift supervisor by 9:00.

<b>noun</b>	merchandise	The store's buyer is aggressive about finding unique, high-quality merchandise.
<b>verb</b>	<u>merchandise</u>	The home superstore merchandises hardware and other goods for do-it-yourself home improvements.
<b>noun</b>	merchant	The Downtown Merchants Association is offering free gift wrapping this year.

<b>noun</b>	<u>strictness</u>	Ms. Judd was appalled by the strictness of the store's policy not to renew her gift certificate after it had expired.
<b>adjective</b>	strict	Our store has a strict policy of no returns.
<b>adverb</b>	strictly	The no-food-or-drinks rule is strictly enforced in the bookstore.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. (A) (B) (C) (D)

#### Part 2 Question–Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. (A) (B) (C)  3. (A) (B) (C)

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 4. <u>What class is the man taking?</u> | 6. <u>What did he learn about consumers' shopping habits?</u> |
| (A) Psychology.                         | (A) They hunt for bargains.                                   |
| (B) Sociology.                          | (B) They buy more during sales.                               |
| (C) Economics.                          | (C) Color is a key motivator in clothing selections.          |
| (D) Marketing.                          | (D) They feel comfortable with the brands they know.          |
5. How much time did he spend watching consumers?
- (A) Two weeks.
  - (B) Three weeks.
  - (C) Four weeks.
  - (D) Five weeks.

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 7. What items are reduced in price? | 9. How many store visits are required to get a gift? |
| (A) Scarves.                        | (A) Three.   |
| (B) Boots.                          | (B) Four.  |
| (C) Hats.                           | (C) Nine.  |
| (D) Coats.                          | (D) Ten.   |
8. What kind of merchandise does the store carry?
- (A) Winter sports equipment.
  - (B) Gift items.
  - (C) Clothing.
  - (D) Work uniforms.

**READING****Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. It's hard to tell if these shoes will be \_\_\_\_\_ because the leather is so stiff.  
 (A) comfort      (C) comfortable  
 (B) comfortably      (D) comforting
11. Due to the store's success, the owners began to plan an \_\_\_\_\_ into a larger location.  
 (A) expansion      (C) expanse  
 (B) expand      (D) expanded
12. I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ this issue with you, but I don't have time today.  
 (A) exploratory      (C) explorer  
 (B) exploration      (D) explore
13. Our company policy used to \_\_\_\_\_ that male employees keep their hair short, but that policy was considered sexist.  
 (A) mandate      (C) mandated  
 (B) mandates      (D) mandatory
14. When you select \_\_\_\_\_ for the display windows, be sure to include seasonal gifts and clothing.  
 (A) merchant      (C) merchandise  
 (B) merchants      (D) merchandising
15. We \_\_\_\_\_ adhere to the store's policy of only specially ordering products that have been paid for in advance.  
 (A) strictness      (C) strictly  
 (B) strict      (D) strictest

**Part 6 Text Completion****Attention Bargain Hunters!**

Greene's Department Store is having its biggest sale ever. Every single item in the store is on sale at unbelievable prices. That's right—all merchandise, including clothes, shoes, toys, sports equipment, home furnishing, music, and music equipment, is 25 to 75 percent off the usual price.

- \* Have you always wanted 16 the underwater world? We have diving equipment on sale at 50 percent off.
- \* Would you like to sleep in a more 17 bed? The prices of beds, mattresses, and bedroom furniture have been reduced by 35 percent.
- \* Do you dream of 18 your CD collection? Now you can, at a more than affordable price. All CDs, including classical, jazz, rock, and pop, are on sale at three for the price of one.

Visit Greene's for the bargains of a lifetime. Sale ends Sunday.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 16. (A) explore<br>(B) explores<br>(C) <u>to explore</u><br>(D) exploring | 18. (A) will expand<br>(B) can expand<br>(C) expansion<br>(D) <u>expanding</u> |
| 17. (A) comfort<br>(B) comforter<br>(C) comfortable<br>(D) comfortably    |  |

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following article.

Designing retail space takes careful planning. Attention should be paid to what research tells us about consumer behavior. Stores must be designed with the comfort of shoppers in mind. The aisles should be wide enough to allow shoppers to move through them comfortably. Items should be placed where they can be easily seen by shoppers. Nothing should be put on high shelves where it cannot be reached. Pleasant lighting and music also contribute to the comfort and good feeling of shoppers. Shoppers who feel happy and relaxed will make more purchases.

When organizing the merchandise in a store, the trends of each season should be kept in mind. Picnic and beach equipment should be prominently displayed in the summer, for example, while warm clothing should be featured in the winter. Then, shoppers will return to the store because they will see it as a place that provides what they need.

There should be plenty of checkout aisles so that long lines are avoided. Many people cannot bear long waits, and long checkout lines scare shoppers away from stores. Many stores are now using self-service checkout aisles, although they have not yet been completely accepted by shoppers. They are often confusing to use, and many shoppers find them impersonal. The old-fashioned human cashier is still popular in most retail outlets. Therefore, it is still considered mandatory for stores to have at least some full-service checkout lines manned by cashiers.

When a store is properly designed, shoppers have a pleasant experience and will want to return. This helps the bottom line of the store owner which is, of course, increased sales.

19. According to the article, which shoppers buy more?  
 (A) Those who have more money.  
 (B) Those who can reach high shelves.  
(C) Those who feel comfortable in the store.  
 (D) Those who shop in the summer.
20. What does the article say about self-service checkout aisles?  
 (A) They are popular everywhere.  
(B) They aren't always easy to use.  
 (C) They are personal.  
 (D) They are mandatory.
21. According to the article, what is the most important thing for a store owner?  
(A) More sales.  
 (B) Lighting and music.  
 (C) Pleasant cashiers.  
 (D) Wide aisles.
22. The word *behavior* in line 2 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) questions  
 (B) desires  
 (C) interests  
(D) actions
23. The word *bear* in line 9 is closest in meaning to  
(A) tolerate  
 (B) understand  
 (C) refuse  
 (D) decrease

## Lesson 17

### WORDS TO LEARN

diversify  
enterprise  
essentially  
everyday  
function  
maintain  
obtain  
prerequisite  
quality  
smooth  
source  
stationery

# Ordering Supplies

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **diversify** v., to broaden, to make more varied
  - a. The stationery department plans to diversify its offering of paper products.
  - b. The consultant that we hired recommends that we don't diversify at this time.
2. **enterprise** n., a business; a large project
  - a. The new enterprise quickly established an account with the office supply store.
  - b. This enterprise has become unmanageable and is beginning to lose money.
3. **essentially** adv., necessarily, basically, finally
  - a. Essentially, she wants to win the contract and put the competition out of business.
  - b. After distributing all of the cartridges that were ordered, we were essentially left with none.
4. **everyday** adj., routine, common, ordinary
  - a. Though they are more expensive, these folders will withstand everyday wear and tear.
  - b. This everyday routine of having to check inventory is boring.
5. **function** v., to perform tasks; n., a purpose
  - a. She functioned as the director while Mr. Gibbs was away.
  - b. What is the function of this device?
6. **Maintain** v., to continue; to support, to sustain
  - a. I've been maintaining a list of office supplies that are in greatest demand.
  - b. Trying to maintain two different stockrooms is too much work.
7. **obtain** v., to acquire
  - a. I've been trying to obtain a list of supplies from the administrator for three weeks now.
  - b. The employee obtained the report from her supervisor.
8. **prerequisite** n., something that is required or necessary as a prior condition
  - a. One of the prerequisites for this job is competence in bookkeeping.
  - b. Here are the prerequisites that you need to purchase before coming to class.
9. **quality** n., a distinguishing characteristic; a degree of excellence
  - a. The most important qualities we look for in a supplier are reliability and quick response.
  - b. The quality of their clothes has fallen ever since they started using cheaper fabrics to make them.
10. **smooth** adj., without difficulties; deliberately polite and agreeable in order to win favor
  - a. Thanks to our smooth transition to the new supplier, there was no interruption in shipments.
  - b. Her smooth manner won her the appreciation of the manager but not her colleagues.
11. **source** n., the origin
  - a. I can't tell you the source of this information.
  - b. The source of this rare pottery that we are selling in our shop is a small village in India.
12. **stationery** n., writing paper and envelopes
  - a. We do not have enough stationery, so please order some more.
  - b. The new stationery featured the company's logo in blue ink at the top of the page.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

diverse	everyday	obtained	smooth
enterprise	functioning	prerequisite	source
essential	maintaining	quality	stationery

All businesses, large and small, must maintain an inventory of supplies. In most business offices, there are several essential (1) \_\_\_\_\_ items, including (2) \_\_\_\_\_, pens, staples, and folders. These are easily (3) \_\_\_\_\_ from office supply stores that provide the most commonly used items under one roof. Some of these stores will even take orders by telephone with free delivery.

However, some businesses require a more (4) \_\_\_\_\_ range of supplies. For example, businesses that ship their products usually need cartons, Styrofoam peanuts, mailing tape, and shipping labels on hand at all times. Though these items may be available from general office supply stores, there are other specialty stores that only sell packing and shipping supplies.

No matter what the type of business, the office administrator is in charge of ordering supplies and (5) \_\_\_\_\_ an inventory. Having the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ supplies on hand at all times is a (7) \_\_\_\_\_ for the (8) \_\_\_\_\_ and efficient (9) \_\_\_\_\_ of the (10) \_\_\_\_\_. The administrator should try to locate the cheapest (11) \_\_\_\_\_ of the supplies required, but also pay attention to the (12) \_\_\_\_\_ of the goods.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	diversify	We are going to diversify our product line and start selling software as well as computers.
noun	diversity	The diversity of services that your company offers amazes me.
adjective	diverse	The wholesaler offered a more diverse range of computer accessories than I expected.

noun	enterprise	When she began this enterprise, she had no idea of the time it would require.
adjective	enterprising	The program gives enterprising young people a chance to test their entrepreneurial skills.
noun	enterpriser	Many enterprisers find themselves in daring and exciting ventures that lack the structure for long-term success.

adverb	essentially	Essentially, you will be sitting in a bath of mud for two hours.
adjective	essential	Having Ann on this team is essential if we are to win the contract.
noun	essence	The essence of the problem lies in Jeff's relationship with his manager.

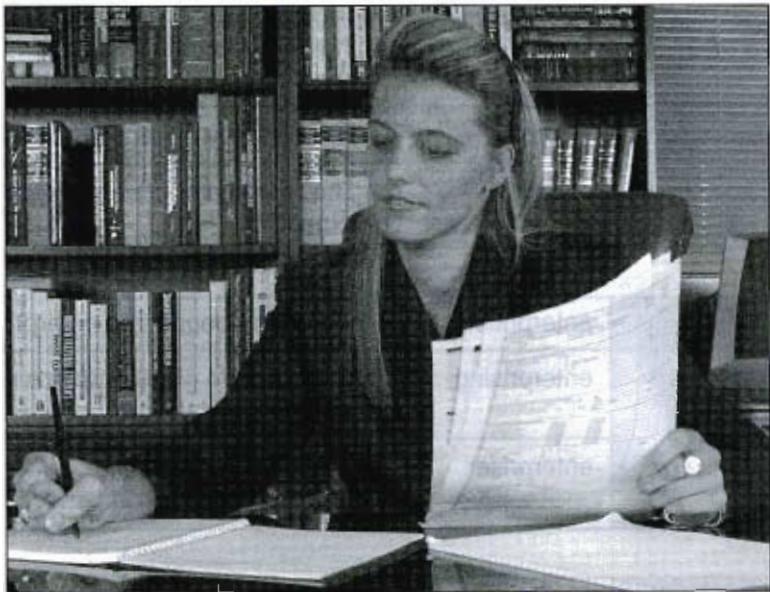
verb	function	He is still functioning as administrator until they find a replacement.
noun	function	The function was attended by all the leading scientists.
adjective	functional	This machine is not functional; we need to purchase a new one.

verb	maintain	Don't worry, I'll maintain the good relationships that you've established with our clients.
noun	Maintainability	The maintainability of our second office is called into question by next year's budget cutbacks.
adjective	Maintainable	This level of performance will not be maintainable without increasing salaries.

verb	smooth out	In order to smooth out the process of ordering supplies, we're going to use this new software to keep track of purchases and deliveries.
adverb	smoothly	The meeting went smoothly, and the contract was signed without any disagreements.
adjective	smooth	The vendor was so smooth on the phone that he had no difficulty in obtaining an appointment with the busy executive.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D.

**Part 2 Question-Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 4. What is the man looking for?<br>(A) A diverse range of applicants.<br>(B) A glassware merchant.<br>(C) A pair of eyeglasses.<br>(D) A warehouse.                                     | 6. When does the woman want to speak to the man again?<br>(A) Today.<br>(B) Tuesday.<br>(C) Next week.<br>(D) On the weekend. |
| 5. How will he obtain more information about what he needs?<br>(A) He'll write a letter.<br>(B) He'll make a phone call.<br>(C) The woman will tell him.<br>(D) He'll visit a web site. |   |

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 7. Who is listening to this talk?<br>(A) Upper management at a stationery supplier.<br>(B) Employees at a stationery supplier.<br>(C) Upper management at Margatel.<br>(D) Employees at Margatel. | 9. When did Carla take the order?<br>(A) January 14.<br>(B) January 19.<br>(C) January 21.<br>(D) January 30. |
| 8. What is the problem?<br>(A) There was an order with a mistake.<br>(B) The company lost a \$50,000 client.<br>(C) Employees got locked out of the office.<br>(D) A worker slipped and fell.     |   |

**READING****Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

10. Many customers find that product \_\_\_\_\_ is confusing and deceptive.  
 (A) diversify      (C) diversity  
 (B) diverse        (D) diversified
11. For the \_\_\_\_\_ designer, this job is full of rewards and opportunities.  
 (A) enterprise     (C) enterprising  
 (B) enterpriser    (D) enterpriseless
12. Your full participation is \_\_\_\_\_ to our timely completion of this project.  
 (A) essence        (C) essential  
 (B) essences      (D) essentially
13. We need to have a spare copier since the only one that is \_\_\_\_\_ is on its last leg.  
 (A) functioned     (C) functional  
 (B) functions      (D) function
14. In order to \_\_\_\_\_ our lead in the market, we'll have to find a cheaper source of industrial supplies.  
 (A) maintainable (C) maintaining  
 (B) maintain      (D) maintainability
15. She \_\_\_\_\_ changed the topic of conversation, thus preventing a disagreement between her colleagues from turning into an argument.  
 (A) smoothly      (C) smooth  
 (B) smooth out    (D) smoothed

**Part 6 Text Completion****Memo**

To: All office staff  
 From: Luis Mendez, Office Manager  
 Re: Ordering office supplies

There has been a lot of confusion recently regarding the ordering of office supplies. In order to maintain a consistent stock of 16 supplies, from now on all supply orders must go through me. There are forms in my office that you may use to order the supplies that you need. I can 17 supplies for you within three days of receiving your order form if it is filled out properly. By following this procedure, the office will function more 18, and we can be sure that we will always have quality supplies on hand when we need them. We will also avoid the problem of ordering supplies that we already have. Thank you for your cooperation.

16. (A) essence  
 (B) essential  
 (C) essentials  
 (D) essentially
17. (A) obtaining  
 (B) to obtain  
 (C) obtains  
 (D) obtain
18. (A) smooth  
 (B) smoothly  
 (C) smoother  
 (D) smoothness

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following letter and memo.

April 12

Dear Business Owner,

The Supply Closet, Inc., is a new office supply store in your neighborhood. We opened last month right across the street from the post office. We are your local source for quality office supplies, including all office stationery, packing materials, folders, pens, note pads, and more. We provide you with the everyday items you need to keep your business functioning smoothly. In order to introduce ourselves to you, we are enclosing a coupon for 20 percent off your entire purchase during your first visit to the Supply Closet. Please visit us soon.

Sincerely yours,

Martha and Bill Heywood  
Owners

Coupon expires June 30.

**Memo**

To: Gisela Freeman  
From: James Riley  
Re: New supply store

Please see the attached letter from the Supply Closet, Inc. I think we should try them out. I know we maintain an account with the Riverdale Supply Company, but I am not completely satisfied with them as a source for supplies. I would like to find a supplier with more diverse merchandise. I'd like you to visit the Supply Closet sometime this week and purchase some stationery. We need to do a big mailing at the beginning of May, so we'll need some manila envelopes and letter paper. You can use the coupon that came with the letter. Look at the items they have for sale and see how it compares with the Riverdale Supply Company. If it looks like they're a better source for supplies, we can start ordering from them regularly. Thank you.

19. When did the Supply Closet open?  
 (A) March.  
 (B) April.  
 (C) May.  
 (D) June.
20. What can a customer get during his first visit to the store?  
 (A) A free pen.  
 (B) An introduction.  
 (C) A discount.  
 (D) A stamp.
21. Why doesn't James Riley like the Riverdale Supply Company?  
 (A) It's too near the post office.  
 (B) It doesn't function smoothly.  
 (C) It's far from the neighborhood.  
 (D) It doesn't have a variety of merchandise.
22. The word *smoothly* in line 8 of the letter is closest in meaning to  
 (A) easily  
 (B) quickly  
 (C) profitably  
 (D) carefully
23. The word *maintain* in line 3 of the memo is closest in meaning to  
 (A) open  
 (B) pay  
 (C) apply  
 (D) keep

## Lesson 18

### WORDS TO LEARN

accurately  
carrier  
catalog  
fulfill  
integral  
inventory  
minimize  
on hand  
remember  
ship  
sufficiently  
supply

# Shipping

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **accurately** adv., correctly; without errors
  - a. To gauge these figures accurately, we first need to get some facts from the shipping department.
  - b. The container company must balance the load accurately or there could be a disaster at sea.
2. **carrier** n., a person or business that transports passengers or goods
  - a. Lou, our favorite carrier, takes extra care of our boxes marked "fragile."
  - b. Mr. Lau switched carriers in order to get a price savings on deliveries out of state.
3. **catalog** n., a list or itemized display; v., to make an itemized list of
  - a. The upcoming fall catalog shows a number of items from Laos that Mr. Lau has never before been able to offer.
  - b. Ellen catalogued the complaints according to severity.
4. **fulfill** v., to finish completely
  - a. The engineers fulfilled a client's request for larger display screens.
  - b. Her expectations were so high, we knew they would be hard to fulfill.
5. **integral** adj., necessary for completion
  - a. Good customer relations is an integral component of any business.
  - b. A dependable stream of inventory is integral to reliable shipping of orders.
6. **inventory** n., goods in stock; an itemized record of these goods
  - a. The store closes one day a year so that the staff can take inventory of the stockroom.
  - b. Their inventory has not changed much over the years.
7. **minimize** v., to reduce; to give less importance to
  - a. The shipping staff minimized customer complaints by working overtime to deliver the packages quickly.
  - b. To keep the customers happy and to minimize the effect of the carrier strike, we shipped orders directly to them.
8. **on hand** adj., available
  - a. We had too much stock on hand, so we had a summer sale.
  - b. The new employee will be on hand if we need more help with shipping orders.
9. **remember** v., to think of again; to retain in the memory
  - a. I remembered the delivery clerk's name as soon as I got off the phone.
  - b. I will remember the combination to the safe without writing it down.
10. **ship** v., to transport; to send
  - a. Eva shipped the package carefully, since she knew the contents were made of glass.
  - b. Very few customers think about how their packages will be shipped, and are seldom home when the packages arrive.
11. **sufficiently** adv., enough
  - a. The boxcar was sufficiently damaged that it could not be loaded on the truck.
  - b. We are sufficiently organized to begin transferring the palettes tomorrow.
12. **supply** n., stock; v., to make available for use; to provide
  - a. By making better use of our supplies, we can avoid ordering until next month.
  - b. Gerald supplied the shipping staff with enough labels to last a year.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

accurate	fulfill	minimize	shipping
carrier	integral	on hand	sufficient
catalog	inventory	remember	supplies

For Mr. Park's Asian housewares store, shipping is an (1) \_\_\_\_\_ part of the business. Many customers need to send their purchases to friends or relatives who live far away. Other customers, who do not live near one of his stores, shop by (2) \_\_\_\_\_ and need their orders sent by mail.

(3) \_\_\_\_\_ is, of course, the process of getting goods delivered to a customer, but it is more than just getting a box in the mail. Goods must be packaged carefully to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ breakage and ensure that they arrive safely. Staff members must keep (5) \_\_\_\_\_ records of the inventory shipped, so Mr. Park knows at all times the answers to these questions: When did a box leave the store? Who was the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ who delivered it? When did it arrive at its destination? Customers will have confidence in Mr. Park's business when he can give quick and accurate answers.

The shipping process must be tied to the store's (7) \_\_\_\_\_. When orders are taken, the shipping staff must know that there is (8) \_\_\_\_\_ inventory of the product on hand to (9) \_\_\_\_\_ the request. If a product is on order, the sales staff should advise the customer to expect a delay. When orders are shipped out, they must be deleted from the inventory records so Mr. Park knows exactly how many items are (10) \_\_\_\_\_ in his warehouse. It takes a good computer program to keep track of the additions and deletions to the inventory.

Sales staff must (11) \_\_\_\_\_ to charge for shipping and appropriate taxes. Mr. Park must keep good records on the cost of the shipping and packing materials and other (12) \_\_\_\_\_, the cost of the carriers, and staff time to assess whether he is billing enough to cover his shipping expenses.

## WORD FAMILIES

noun	accuracy	His firm was well known for its accuracy in predicting how long shipping would take.
adjective	accurate	Don't forget to keep accurate records; you will need them when you have your annual inventory.
adverb	accurately	The in-depth shipping records made it possible for Max to accurately estimate when the mixing bowls would arrive in the store.

verb	fulfill	We take pride in fulfilling customers' unusual requests.
gerund	fulfilling	Fulfilling the requirement of the contract will necessitate hiring extra staff.
noun	fulfillment	Fulfillment of duties can be tedious, but job satisfaction demands attention to detail.

adjective	integral	This paperwork is integral to our ability to track packages.
verb	integrate	The new foreman is unable to integrate information about shipping perishables.
noun	integration	His full integration into the team could take weeks.

verb	minimize	To minimize any potential risk of injury, all workers must wear closed-toed shoes in the stockroom.
adjective	minimal	Luckily, the leak from the roof did only minimal damage to the inventory in the stockroom.
noun	minimum	The minimum is \$50; orders of less will be assessed a shipping charge.

verb	ship	We ship all orders within 24 hours of your phone call.
noun	shipper	We can rely on our shipper to pack large, fragile items carefully.
noun	shipment	The shipment from the supplier was short a number of items, so we complained.

adverb	sufficiently	If you are sufficiently certain that the crate is in this room, I will check them one by one.
adjective	sufficient	The postage on that box is not sufficient to get it to its destination.
verb	suffice	Will this much Styrofoam suffice?

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D.

#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. What is the problem?<br>(A) There aren't enough boxes.<br>(B) The addresses were lost.<br>(C) The packages need repair.<br>(D) The wrong materials were shipped. | 6. When should the boxes be shipped?<br>(A) Today.<br>(B) Tomorrow.<br>(C) By Friday.<br>(D) On the weekend. |
| 5. Who is responsible for the problem?<br>(A) The woman.<br>(B) The man.<br>(C) The packers.<br>(D) The suppliers.  |  |

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 7. What is the topic of the talk?<br>(A) Company mottos.<br>(B) High prices.<br>(C) Customer loyalty.<br>(D) A weak point in the catalog.  | 9. When will the catalog show a comparison of prices?<br>(A) January.<br>(B) May.<br>(C) September.<br>(D) December. |
| 8. What is the company's basic philosophy?<br>(A) Unsurpassed customer service.<br>(B) A good catalog can sell anything.<br>(C) Outperform the competition.<br>(D) High quality at low cost. |  |

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. To assure that your order is \_\_\_\_\_ filled, it will be checked by a two-person team.  
 (A) accurately      (C) accurate  
 (B) accurateness    (D) accuracy
11. The suppliers have \_\_\_\_\_ the terms of our agreement and are now our supplier of choice.  
 (A) fulfilling       (C) fulfilled  
 (B) fulfillment     (D) fulfill
12. Scanning the shipment number is an \_\_\_\_\_ part of tracking these containers.  
 (A) integral        (C) integrating  
 (B) integrate      (D) integration
13. Keeping customer complaints to a \_\_\_\_\_ is the job of everyone who works in the store.  
 (A) minimum        (C) minimize  
 (B) minimal        (D) minimally
14. To keep distribution costs low, we have selected only two \_\_\_\_\_ firms for the region.  
 (A) ship            (C) shipping  
 (B) shipment       (D) shipper
15. Based on their credit check, it seems likely that they have \_\_\_\_\_ funds to cover this order.  
 (A) suffice          (C) sufficiently  
 (B) sufficient      (D) sufficed

### Part 6 Text Completion

#### Packing Guidelines

In order to 16 breakage of merchandise and loss of shipments and to ensure accurate fulfillment of orders, please observe the following guidelines when preparing packages for shipment:

- 1) Check the order form carefully to make sure the item number matches the item number and description in the catalog.
- 2) Make sure that the address label has been 17 filled out, and particularly that names have been spelled correctly.
- 3) Each box must be 18 filled with packing material to protect the contents from damage.
- 4) Packages must be ready to be picked up by the carrier before 3:30 p.m. daily.

Following these guidelines is of the utmost importance. Lost and damaged shipments cost the company valuable time and money.

16. (A) minimum  
 (B) minimize  
 (C) minimal  
 (D) minimally
17. (A) acutely  
 (B) accessibly  
 (C) actively  
 (D) accurately
18. (A) sufficiently  
 (B) sufficient  
 (C) suffice  
 (D) suffuse

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following letter.

April 15

Customer Service Department  
 Fleetwood Fashions  
 21986 North Featherstone Avenue  
 Hiawatha, MN

Dear Customer Service,

I am writing about an order I made from the Fleetwood Fashions catalog over a month ago, which I have not yet received. When I called to order two new purses and several spring shirts, the customer service representative assured me that there was sufficient inventory on hand to fulfill the order. He told me that it would be shipped before the end of the week and that I would receive it within ten days. When I still had not received the shipment after 14 days, I called the company. The customer service representative checked the ordering information on the computer, and we discovered that my address had not been accurately recorded. He promised to reship the order with my correct address and told me I would receive it within ten days. That was over two weeks ago, and I still have not received the shipment. I cannot understand this. Perhaps the carrier that you use is not reliable. In any case, I am tired of waiting for my order and would like to cancel it. I am not sure whether I will make an order from your company again. This is unfortunate since it is one of the few places that carry dresses and shoes in my size and at a reasonable price. However, this is the second time I have had a problem with an order, and I don't want this to happen again. Please cancel my order #20857631. Thank you.

Sincerely,

Lucinda Walker

19. When did Lucinda Walker make an order from Fleetwood Fashions?  
 (A) Last week.  
 (B) Ten days ago.  
 (C) Fourteen days ago.  
 (D) Last month.
20. What did she order?  
 (A) Purses.  
 (B) Skirts.  
 (C) Shoes.  
 (D) Dresses.
21. What is the problem with her order?  
 (A) The price is unreasonable.  
 (B) The dress size is wrong.  
 (C) She hasn't received it yet.  
 (D) It contained the wrong merchandise.
22. The word *fulfill* in line 3 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) pay for  
 (B) complete  
 (C) send  
 (D) receive
23. The word *carrier* in line 8 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) communication  
 (B) employee  
 (C) transporter  
 (D) operator

# Lesson 19

## WORDS TO LEARN

charge  
compile  
customer  
discount  
efficient  
estimate  
impose  
mistake  
order  
promptly  
rectify  
terms

# Invoices

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **charge** v., to demand payment; n., an expense or a cost
  - a. The customer service representative was responsible for telling all existing customers that higher prices would be charged next month.
  - b. The extra charge for gift wrapping your purchase will appear on your invoice.
2. **compile** v., to gather together from several sources
  - a. I have compiled a list of the most popular items in our sales catalog
  - b. The clerk is responsible for compiling the orders at the end of the day.
3. **customer** n., one who purchases a commodity or service
  - a. Let's make sure all invoices sent to customers are kept in alphabetical order.
  - b. As part of our customer satisfaction plan, let's offer a discount to customers who pay their invoices within a week.
4. **discount** n., a reduction in price; v., to reduce in price
  - a. We are offering a 10 percent discount to all new customers.
  - b. They discounted the price on the merchandise damaged in shipment.
5. **efficient** adj., acting or producing effectively with a minimum of waste or unnecessary effort
  - a. The accountant was so efficient in processing the customer receipts that she had the job done before lunch.
  - b. Electronic invoicing has helped us to be efficient.
6. **estimate** v., to approximate the amount or value of something; to form an opinion about something; n., an approximation
  - a. We estimated our losses this year at about five thousand dollars.
  - b. In the owner's estimation, the high level of customer satisfaction was an adequate measure of how well the company was doing.
7. **impose** v., to establish or apply as compulsory; to force upon others
  - a. The company will impose a surcharge for any items returned.
  - b. We should not impose upon our staff by requiring them to work on weekends.
8. **mistake** n., an error or a fault
  - a. I made a mistake in adding up your bill and we overcharged you twenty dollars.
  - b. It was a mistake thinking that my boss would be reasonable when I explained my situation to him.
9. **order** n., a request made to purchase something; v., to command or direct
  - a. The customer placed an order for ten new chairs.
  - b. We were ordered to take inventory immediately, so we could account for the missing items.
10. **promptly** adv., on time, punctually
  - a. We always reply promptly to customers' letters.
  - b. The new sales agent promptly offered a full refund for the damaged goods.
11. **rectify** v., to set right or correct
  - a. He rectified the problem by giving the customer credit for the unused items that she returned.
  - b. Embarrassed at his behavior, he rectified the situation by writing a letter of apology.
12. **terms** n., conditions
  - a. The terms of payment were clearly listed at the bottom of the invoice.
  - b. The terms of the agreement required that items be fully paid for before they would be shipped.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

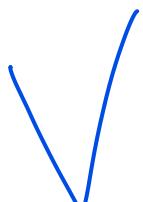
charges	discount	imposed	promptly
compiled	efficient	mistake	rectified
customer	estimated	order	terms

Mail-order companies need to have an (1) **efficient** 

process for invoicing and billing customers. When a customer places an (2) **order**, a list of items must be (3) **compiled** and an invoice generated. The invoice will list the items purchased, along with the cost of each item, and the quantity desired. (4) **Charges** that will be incurred in shipping the items to the (5) **customer** are also added to the invoice. Sometimes shipping charges are simply (6) **estimated** based on the weight or value of the items ordered.

The invoice also shows the (7) **terms** of payment. Payment is usually due within 30 days. Extra charges are often (8) **imposed** on overdue accounts. Many companies also offer a small (9) **discount** if invoices are paid promptly.

Sometimes items get damaged or lost in transit, or customers discover that the wrong items have been shipped by (10) **mistake**. They will usually call the company to have the problem (11) rectified. Such complaints should be dealt with (12) promptly. If an item is missing, a replacement will be sent, usually at no additional charge to the customer.



## WORD FAMILIES

verb	<u>compile</u>	Once the data is compiled, we will know more about sales of the R500 model.
noun	<u>compilation</u>	A compilation of factors led us to believe that employee theft had led to the missing inventory.
adjective	<u>compiled</u>	According to the numbers we've compiled, sales remained flat in the second quarter.

adjective	<u>efficient</u>	Counting by twos or threes is much more efficient than counting by one.
adverb	<u>efficiently</u>	If we work efficiently, we may be done by midnight.
noun	<u>efficiency</u>	His efficiency makes him one of the finest operators in the company.

verb	<u>estimate</u>	We need to estimate the number of work hours spent on this project.
noun	<u>estimation</u>	Clients prefer itemization to estimation on their invoices.
gerund	<u>estimating</u>	Estimating an order for office supplies is difficult because of the increased size of the staff.

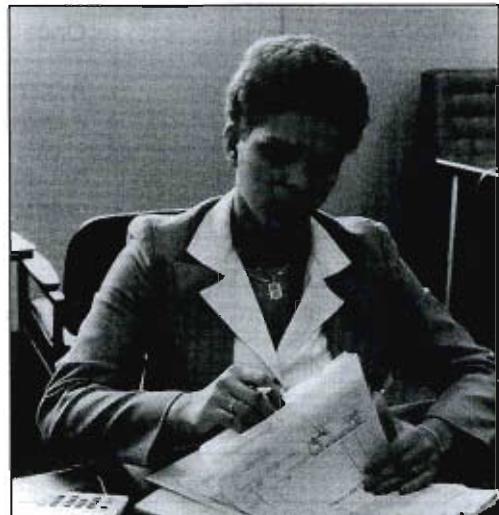
verb	<u>impose</u>	The state intends to impose an additional tax on certain office equipment.
noun	<u>imposition</u>	Clients complained when they discovered the contractor's imposition of charges that should have been included under the terms of the contract.
adjective	<u>imposing</u>	The new clients found the company's reputation imposing.

verb	<u>mistaken</u>	The receptionist dialed the wrong number because she had mistaken a "7" for a "4" in the phone number she wrote down.
noun	<u>mistake</u>	The manager called the supplier as soon as he saw the mistake on his invoice.
adjective	<u>mistaken</u>	The director admitted that he was mistaken about the amount of the discount for payment received in 30 days.

verb	<u>prompt</u>	The computer cursor prompted the temporary employee about where to insert information on the billing form.
noun	promptness	Employers appreciate promptness in their employees.
adjective	prompt	I am happy to receive statements that thank me for prompt payment.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. (A) (B) (C) (D)

**Part 2 Question–Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. (A) (B) (C)      3. (A) (B) (C)

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. <u>What do they need to order?</u><br>(A) Computers.<br>(B) Temporary workers.<br>(C) Order forms.<br>(D) Office supplies.<br><br><u>5. What does the man ask the woman to do?</u><br>(A) Compile a list.<br>(B) Clean the supply closet.<br><u>(C) Read the invoice carefully.</u><br>(D) Write a check. | 6. <u>When will the woman place the order?</u><br>(A) Before noon.<br>(B) Tonight.<br><u>(C) Tomorrow.</u><br>(D) Tuesday. |
|--|--|

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 7. What is the topic of the talk?<br>(A) Late payments.<br>(B) Billing customers.<br>(C) Immediate payment.<br><u>(D) Discounts.</u> | 9. How much do immediate payments save per project?<br>(A) 4 percent.<br>(B) 14 percent.<br><u>(C) 15 percent.</u><br>(D) 50 percent. |
|--|---|
8. How does immediate payment benefit the company?  
 (A) The company doesn't have to use collections agencies.  
 (B) The company doesn't have to charge late fees.  
 (C) The company gains customers.  
(D) The company doesn't have to send a bill to the customer.

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. After we have \_\_\_\_\_ all of the necessary documents, we will begin our analysis of the data.  
 ✓ (A) compile (C) compiling  
 (B) compiled (D) compilation
11. Though he worked very \_\_\_\_\_ with machines and figures, he was slow and awkward with customers and coworkers.  
 ✓ (A) efficient (C) efficiency  
 (B) efficiently (D) efficacy
12. Although \_\_\_\_\_ expenses works well when applying for a contract, clients appreciate itemization on their invoices.  
 (A) estimate (C) estimated  
 (B) estimator (D) estimation

13. The customers usually pay their invoices promptly in order to avoid the \_\_\_\_\_ of late charges.  
 (A) imposed (C) impose  
 (B) imposingly (D) imposition
14. The customer was angry at the \_\_\_\_\_ on her invoice.  
 (A) mistakes (C)mistakable  
 (B) mistaken (D) mistaking
15. The client would appreciate it if the invoice could be sent \_\_\_\_\_ so he can pay it before the end of the fiscal year.  
 (A) promptly (C) prompted  
 (B) promptness (D) prompt

### Part 6 Text Completion

Invoices are an essential part of any business and should be given their due attention. Without invoices, after all, a business would not receive payment for services rendered. The 16 of the invoice must be stated clearly, that is, the customer needs to know exactly what he is being charged for and when the payment is due. If a customer discovers a mistake on the invoice, it should be rectified as soon as possible. If a final charge is much greater than the original estimate, the reason for this should be explained as clearly and simply as possible on the invoice. Some businesses 17 a late fee on late payments. In such cases, this must also be made clear on the invoice. Finally, the invoice must be sent to the customer 18 in order to encourage timely payment.

16. (A) terms  
 (B) orders  
 (C) discounts  
 (D) compilations
17. (A) imposition  
 (B) imposing  
 (C) imposter  
 (D) impose
18. (A) prompt  
 (B) prompter  
 (C) promptly  
 (D) promptness

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following invoice and letter.

<b>Clary Closets</b> "Making your world more organized."	
<b>Invoice</b>	
To: Millicent Pensky	
752 Montrose Avenue	
Proctorville, VT	
Date: November 10, 20—	
Initial consultation fee	\$ 75
Organizing four closets	\$ 800
Supplies	\$ 225
Total due	\$1100
Thank you for doing business with us.	
<u>Please pay by November 30. A 10 percent late fee will be imposed on late payments.</u>	

November 15, 20—

Clary Closets  
18 North Main Street  
Chester, VT

Dear Ms. Clary,

I am writing to dispute the charges on the invoice I recently received from your company. The invoice contained several mistakes. First, I was told that I would not be charged an initial consultation fee if I decided to use your services. Since I did go ahead and hire you to organize my closets, I should not have to pay this fee. Second, the final charge for organizing my four closets was \$250 higher than the original estimate. I think this is too much and that I should be charged no more than the original estimate. Finally, I was charged for supplies that you ordered without my authorization. I could have obtained these same supplies myself at a lower price. Since I did not authorize this charge, I think I should pay a lower price for the supplies.

I chose Clary Closets to organize my closets because several of my friends and business associates have been satisfied customers of yours. However, I find it difficult to believe that an organizing business can be so inefficient when it comes to invoices. Please rectify these mistakes and send me a corrected invoice promptly.

Sincerely,

Millicent Pensky

19. What did Ms. Pensky hire Ms. Clary to do?
  - (A) Write invoices.
  - (B) Collect fees.
  - (C) Organize closets.
  - (D) Buy supplies.
20. According to the terms of the invoice, how much will Ms. Pensky owe if she pays on December 1?
  - (A) \$110.
  - (B) \$1100.
  - (C) \$1110.
  - (D) \$1210.
21. How much was the original estimate?
  - (A) \$250.
  - (B) \$550.
  - (C) \$800.
  - (D) \$850.
22. The word *ordered* in line 11 of the letter is closest in meaning to
  - (A) bought
  - (B) used
  - (C) borrowed
  - (D) enjoyed
23. The word *rectify* in line 20 of the letter is closest in meaning to
  - (A) explain
  - (B) calculate
  - (C) fix
  - (D) see

# Lesson 20

## WORDS TO LEARN

adjustment  
automatically  
crucial  
discrepancy  
disturb  
liability  
reflection  
run  
scan  
subtract  
tedious  
verify

# Inventory

Study the following definitions and examples.

1. **adjustment** n., a change in order to match
  - a. With these adjustments to the numbers of screws and nuts, we are close to having an accurate count.
  - b. An adjustment to the number of damaged items would help us align our figures.
2. **automatically** adv., independently, without outside prompting
  - a. The program automatically sends an e-mail response to all messages while she's out of town.
  - b. The door opens automatically.
3. **crucial** adj., extremely significant or important
  - a. Knowing how many products we have in stock is crucial to our shipping procedures.
  - b. Inventory is a crucial process and must be taken seriously by all staff.
4. **discrepancy** n., a divergence or disagreement
  - a. We easily explained the discrepancy between the two counts.
  - b. Unless you catch the error immediately, the discrepancy gets entered into the computer and becomes very difficult to correct.
5. **disturb** v., to interfere with; to interrupt
  - a. Let's see how many products we can count in advance of inventory so we disturb fewer customers.
  - b. I hope I'm not disturbing you, but I need to ask you to move so I can record the products behind you.
6. **liability** n., an obligation; a responsibility
  - a. The store's insured liability protects against theft and damaged inventory.
  - b. The slippery steps were a terrible liability for the store.
7. **reflection** n., a likeness, an image
  - a. She saw her reflection in the mirror.
  - b. The reflection in the glass made it hard for her to distinguish how many were on the shelf.
8. **run** v., to operate
  - a. As long as the computer is running, you can keep adding new data.
  - b. We'll be running inventory next weekend, so don't make any other plans.
9. **scan** v., to look over quickly
  - a. The computer's optical disk scanned in the price and ordering information.
  - b. Jasmine quickly scanned the list to see if any information was missing.
10. **subtract** v., to take away; to deduct
  - a. Once you ring up an item, the computer automatically subtracts it from the inventory log.
  - b. Whoever did the inventory forgot to subtract the items that arrived damaged and were never put into the stockroom.
11. **tedious** adj., tiresome by reason of length, slowness, or dullness; boring
  - a. This may be tedious work but you will be glad the inventory is accurate when you hit the busy holiday sales season.
  - b. Counting merchandise all weekend is the most tedious job I can imagine.
12. **verify** v., to prove the truth of
  - a. I can't verify the accuracy of these numbers, since I was not present for inventory weekend.
  - b. The inventory process verifies that you have accounted for all the items that are supposed to be in the store.

5 | 4 | 2025

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

adjusted	discrepancies	reflect	subtracts
automatically	disturbances	running	tedious
crucial	liability	scanning	verifies

In a retail business, inventory has multiple meanings. Inventory means all the goods that a company has on hand or available to it in a warehouse. Inventory also means the process by which the business (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the number of goods. An accurate account of the inventory available is (2) \_\_\_\_\_. The amount of stock is a (3) \_\_\_\_\_ because it is already owned by the business.

Taking an inventory is a physical count of the inventory holdings. Today, almost every business keeps a (4) \_\_\_\_\_ inventory count by having its sales records tied by computer to its inventory. When a customer makes a purchase, the computer system tied to the register (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the purchase from the inventory records. If a customer makes a return or an exchange, the inventory numbers will be (6) \_\_\_\_\_ by the computer (7) \_\_\_\_\_. That's often why (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the bar code is so important in stores. If merchandise is broken or damaged in the stockroom or on the sales floor, the manager will ask the sales and stock help to change the stock holdings to (9) \_\_\_\_\_ the loss.

As good as the computer records may be, they are just an estimate. At least once a year, most businesses do an actual physical count of the inventory. This process can be (10) \_\_\_\_\_ but it is necessary as there are always (11) \_\_\_\_\_ between what the computer says you own and what your physical count says. Often stores close for a day, or at least close early, so that staff can perform the inventory without (12) \_\_\_\_\_.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	adjust	After you've verified the quantities in the stockroom, I'll adjust the numbers in the computer.
noun	adjustment	While the adjustments are being made to the computer inventory, the computer will be off-line and unavailable for use.
adjective	adjustable	The height of the shelves is adjustable, which makes it easier to reach and count the merchandise.

noun	automation	Computers have brought a heightened level of automation into the retail industry.
adjective	automatic	The automatic updating of the inventory is convenient, but always a day behind.
adverb	automatically	After every cash register transaction, the computer automatically updates the inventory record.

verb	disturb	Count as many of the items on the salesroom floor as you can without disturbing the customers.
noun	disturbance	After considering all the options, Ellen decided that closing the store a day to do the annual inventory would cause the least amount of disturbance for customers.
adverb	disturbingly	The computer count and the physical count were disturbingly incongruous, which distressed the store manager.

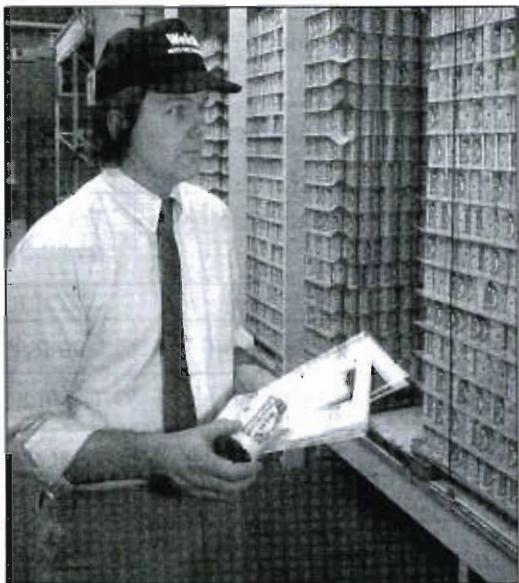
verb	reflect	The numbers in the computer log should accurately reflect the actual numbers available on the shelf or in the warehouse.
noun	reflection	Upon reflection, the supply clerk decided that there was an error in the inventory.
noun	reflector	Reflectors were attached to the corners of the shelves to alert the clerks that the shelf edges were sharp.

verb	scan	Scan the aisles and see if you find the missing carton.
noun	scanner	We will install a scanner at two of the computer terminals.
adjective	scanned	These scanned documents need to be returned to their original owners.

verb	subtract	Subtract 50 from the total—I just found an unusable box.
noun	subtraction	If you feel confident doing basic addition and subtraction in your head, you don't have to carry the calculator with you.
adjective	subtracted	These subtracted figures don't add up to the total that was supposed to be subtracted.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D.

**Part 2 Question–Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best response.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. What information does the man want to verify?<br>(A) The size of the bedspreads.<br>(B) The number of bedspreads on hand.<br>(C) The reason for the discrepancy.<br>(D) The number of bedspreads the customer needs. | 6. Where are the bedspreads?<br>(A) In a box.<br>(B) On a shelf.<br>(C) On the bed.<br>(D) In the stockroom. |
| 5. According to the computer, how many bedspreads are there?<br>(A) Three.<br>(B) Five.<br>(C) Seven.<br>(D) Eleven.  |  |

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 7. What happens every year in January?<br>(A) They adjust the file drawers.<br>(B) They record the audio portion.<br>(C) They delete unnecessary computer files.<br>(D) They do a physical count. | 9. How many days does it take to complete the work?<br>(A) Two.<br>(B) Three.<br>(C) Four.<br>(D) Eight. |
| 8. What is one problem with their work?<br>(A) It consumes too much time.<br>(B) Nobody appreciates it.<br>(C) The hourly rate is low.<br>(D) It's boring.  |  |

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

10. The computer's inventory figures will be considered inaccurate until the store manager enters the data from the physical count and \_\_\_\_\_ the figures.  
 (A) adjustment      (C) adjustable  
 (B) adjusts          (D) adjusted
11. Inventory control cannot be performed \_\_\_\_\_, but must be done by physically counting the merchandise.  
 (A) automatically    (C) automation  
 (B) automatic       (D) automated
12. Do not \_\_\_\_\_ the staff when they are counting the items; they need to concentrate.  
 (A) disturb           (C) disturbing  
 (B) disturbance     (D) disturbingly
13. Having an accurate inventory count is a good \_\_\_\_\_ on a competent store manager.  
 (A) reflectively     (C) reflect  
 (B) reflective       (D) reflection
14. In order to scan the bar code, you need to sweep the bar code directly in front of the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) scan              (C) scanning  
 (B) scanned          (D) scanner
15. If we \_\_\_\_\_ the damaged merchandise from the inventory, our figures will accurately reflect what we have on hand.  
 (A) subtract          (C) subtracted  
 (B) subtracting     (D) subtraction

### Part 6 Text Completion

#### Notice

Our new cash registers will be installed over the weekend so that we can start using them next week. The main reason we have bought these new machines is that they will make it easier to keep track of our inventory. When you \_\_\_\_\_ 16 \_\_\_\_\_ customer's purchase into the machine, it will automatically record the purchase in the inventory files of our computer. This will help us track sales and reorder items promptly. It will save us the \_\_\_\_\_ 17 \_\_\_\_\_ work of manually entering data into the computer and ensure that our numbers are accurate. All staff members are required to attend a training session on Friday afternoon during which you will learn how \_\_\_\_\_ 18 \_\_\_\_\_ the new cash registers. See you there.

16. (A) scan  
 (B) will scan  
 (C) scanned  
 (D) are going to scan
17. (A) tedious  
 (B) tedium  
 (C) tenacity  
 (D) tenacious
18. (A) running  
 (B) to run  
 (C) runs  
 (D) run

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension***Questions 19–23 refer to the following memo.*

To: All store staff  
From: Bill Jones, manager  
Re: Next week

This is a reminder that we will be closing the store for two days at the end of next week, Friday and Saturday, for inventory. This is a long and tedious job, and we will need the assistance of each and every one of you to get it done. Therefore, no vacation days will be granted during that time. During the inventory process, we will verify the numbers in our computer files, clear up any discrepancies we may find, and adjust our records as necessary. We need to make sure that our records accurately reflect the stock that we actually have on hand. When you report to work on Thursday, your supervisor will give you your assignment. Some of you will be required to work in the stockroom taking a physical count, and others will be asked to work in the office entering data on the computers. We won't reopen the store until the following Tuesday since Monday is a national holiday. I hope that will give you a chance to rest up a bit after the big job. Thank you in advance for your assistance with this crucial work.

19. Why will the store close next week?  
(A) Everyone will be on vacation.  
(B) They need to count their stock.  
(C) The staff members need a rest.  
(D) There will be a computer training session.
20. Who will give the assignments?  
(A) The manager.  
(B) The assistants.  
(C) The supervisors.  
(D) The record keeper.
21. When will the store open again?  
(A) Monday.  
(B) Tuesday.  
(C) Thursday.  
(D) Friday.
22. The word *adjust* in line 7 is closest in meaning to  
(A) enter  
(B) write  
(C) change  
(D) create
23. The word *crucial* in line 16 is closest in meaning to  
(A) important  
(B) boring  
(C) difficult  
(D) lengthy

**Word Review #4****Lessons 16–20 Purchasing**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

1. Most merchants are happy to find any way to \_\_\_\_\_ their customer base.  
 (A) expand  
 (B) expanding  
 (C) expansion  
 (D) expanded
2. All fashion \_\_\_\_\_ have a limited life span.  
 (A) trend  
 (B) trends  
 (C) trendy  
 (D) trending
3. It is a poorly run office that does not \_\_\_\_\_ adequate office supplies.  
 (A) maintain  
 (B) maintained  
 (C) maintaining  
 (D) maintenance
4. Sometimes office policy doesn't allow the company to \_\_\_\_\_ less expensive supplies when they are available from someone other than a preferred provider.  
 (A) obtain  
 (B) obtained  
 (C) obtaining  
 (D) obtainable
5. A supplier who has chronic trouble \_\_\_\_\_ his obligations to a customer will quickly lose customers.  
 (A) fulfill  
 (B) fulfills  
 (C) fulfilling  
 (D) fulfillment
6. To \_\_\_\_\_ disruption, buyers should order well ahead of need.  
 (A) minimum  
 (B) minimal  
 (C) minimize  
 (D) minimally
7. It is wise to begin by \_\_\_\_\_ an inventory of equipment on hand.  
 (A) compile  
 (B) compiling  
 (C) compiler  
 (D) compilation
8. If the provider does not meet his client's demand, he should \_\_\_\_\_ the problem as soon as possible.  
 (A) rectify  
 (B) rectifier  
 (C) rectifiable  
 (D) rectification
9. If some supplies show a steady rise in consumption, the office manager should make an appropriate \_\_\_\_\_ in his standard order.  
 (A) adjust  
 (B) adjuster  
 (C) adjusting  
 (D) adjustment
10. The office manager should also ascertain whether the inventory of supplies properly \_\_\_\_\_ the volume of use in the office.  
 (A) reflect  
 (B) reflects  
 (C) reflecting  
 (D) reflection

*Choose the one word or phrase that best completes each sentence.*

**Memo**

To: Floor Managers  
 From: Head Manager  
 Re: Spring Sale

Our large Spring Sale begins next week. Before the store opens on Monday, all sale items should be placed on racks near the 11 area. This ensures that customers will see them right before they pay for their purchases. We expect large crowds in the store during the sale, so it will be important to 12 order. This means picking up any items that fall on the floor or end up on the wrong shelf, and making sure that all items are clearly marked with the correct price. 13, an attractive store attracts more customers.

11. (A) catalog  
 (B) merchandise  
 (C) carrier  
 (D) checkout
12. (A) pertain  
 (B) maintain  
 (C) remain  
 (D) plantain
13. (A) Remember  
 (B) Remembering  
 (C) To remember  
 (D) Must remember

To: Betsy Barnes  
 From: Lighting Limited Customer Service  
 Subject: Your order

Dear Betsy Barnes,

We have received your message about your recent order of a desk lamp with a glass shade. You state that the 14 arrived in damaged condition. We will be happy to replace the damaged merchandise at no extra 15 to you. You will not have to pay anything. Simply place the damaged item back in the box and affix the "postage paid" sticker to the outside. As soon as we receive it, a replacement lamp will be 16 sent to you. We are sorry for any inconvenience this may have caused.

Manuel Gozanlez  
 Lighting Limited Customer Service Associate

14. (A) ship  
 (B) shipping  
 (C) shipment  
 (D) shippable
15. (A) chase  
 (B) chance  
 (C) change  
 (D) charge
16. (A) prompt  
 (B) promptly  
 (C) prompter  
 (D) promptness

To: Joanne Simmons  
 From: Bill Smithers  
 Subject: Supplies

Joanne,

It's time to order some supplies. We need several boxes of 17, including large and small envelopes as well as letter paper. Don't order this from XYZ Printers. I was not satisfied with the 18 of the paper in our last order. It tore very easily. Zippo Printers on Elm Street might be a better source. Let's try them this time. It might be a good idea to get some ink cartridges, too. Why don't you check to see how many we have 19 hand? If we have just one or two boxes left, you should order more. Thanks.

Bill

17. (A) stationery  
 (B) invoice  
 (C) bargain  
 (D) inventory
18. (A) quantity  
 (B) quarry  
 (C) quality  
 (D) quandary
19. (A) by  
 (B) to  
 (C) up  
 (D) on

## Lesson 21

### WORDS TO LEARN

accept  
balance  
borrow  
cautiously  
deduct  
dividend  
down payment  
mortgage  
restricted  
signature  
take out  
transaction

# Banking

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **accept** v., to receive; to respond favorably
  - a. The receptionist accepted the package from the courier.
  - b. Without hesitating, she accepted the job of teller.
2. **balance** n., the remainder; v. to compute the difference between credits and debits of an account
  - a. His healthy bank balance showed a long habit of savings.
  - b. It took him over an hour to balance his checkbook.
3. **borrow** v., to use temporarily
  - a. Do you want to borrow a pen?
  - b. The couple borrowed money from the bank to buy a home.
4. **cautiously** adv., carefully, warily
  - a. The bank manager spoke cautiously when giving out information to people she did not know.
  - b. Act cautiously when signing contracts and read them thoroughly first.
5. **deduct** v., to take away from a total; to subtract
  - a. Before computing his taxes, Christophe remembered to deduct allowable home improvement expenses.
  - b. By deducting the monthly fee from her checking account, Yi was able to make her account balance.
6. **dividend** n., a share in a distribution
  - a. The stockholders were outraged when their quarterly dividends were so small.
  - b. The dividend was calculated and distributed to the group.
7. **down payment** n., an initial partial payment
  - a. By making a large down payment, the couple saved a great deal in mortgage interest.
  - b. Karl was disappointed when the real estate agent told him he needed a larger down payment on the house.
8. **mortgage** n., the amount due on a property; v., to borrow money with your house as collateral
  - a. Due to low interest rates, Sheila moved quickly to find a good deal on a mortgage.
  - b. Hiram mortgaged his home to get extra money to invest in his business.
9. **restricted** adj., limited
  - a. The number of free withdrawals a customer can make from his or her account each month is restricted to five.
  - b. Access to the safe deposit box vault is restricted to key holders.
10. **signature** n., the name of a person written by the person
  - a. Once we have your signature, the contract will be complete.
  - b. The customer's signature was kept on file for identification purposes.
11. **take out** v., withdraw; remove
  - a. My checking account allows me to take out money at any bank branch without a fee.
  - b. They took out the chairs in the bank lobby so now there is no place to sit.
12. **transaction** n., a business deal
  - a. Banking transactions will appear on your monthly statement.
  - b. The most common transactions can be made from your personal computer.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

accept	cautious	down payment	signature
balance	deductions	mortgages	take out
borrow	dividends	restrict	transact

Banks are not only places in which to save money or to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ your financial business, but also institutions from which people can (2) \_\_\_\_\_ money. Every day, people look to banks for loans, such as (3) \_\_\_\_\_ for new homes. A loan is essentially a contract that binds the lender to a schedule of payments, so both parties should be (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and not enter into the arrangement without thinking. Banks will look at such factors as how much people have saved towards a (5) \_\_\_\_\_ in determining whether to make a loan.

Banks have different kinds of accounts. Some pay high quarterly (6) \_\_\_\_\_. Some accounts even severely (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the number of times, if any, that you can access your account, or the amount of cash you can (8) \_\_\_\_\_.

Today, electronic banking can be used to check the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ on an account, or to see if automatic (10) \_\_\_\_\_ have been made. This can all be done from your home or office computer. When you go to the bank, be sure to bring identification. Usually a bank will only (11) \_\_\_\_\_ a photo ID; a (12) \_\_\_\_\_ is not a valid ID.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	accept	The bank will not accept a student ID as a valid form of identification.
noun	acceptance	The bank's acceptance of checks allows extra time for out-of-state checks to clear before they are credited to your account.
adjective	acceptable	Shorter banking hours would not be acceptable to many customers, who might close their accounts as a result.

verb	caution	Our friends cautioned us against putting our money into an account that pays such a low interest rate.
adjective	cautious	The bank officer was cautious about approving Chen's loan because of his unfavorable credit history.
adverb	cautiously	We spent our money cautiously because we were not sure we would be able to borrow more.

verb	deduct	Remember to deduct the monthly bank fee from your statement.
noun	deductible	Taxes and health insurance payments are called deductibles because they are deducted from your paycheck.
noun	deduction	Deductions are made electronically every month and will appear on your statement.

verb	restrict	The bank's policies restrict the number of deductions you can make from your account without a penalty.
noun	restriction	The restrictions on who was eligible for a mortgage made it impossible for many low-income families to borrow money.
adjective	restricted	Information about your account is confidential and its use without your permission is restricted.

verb	sign	Once you have signed the mortgage contract, the bank will make a check payable to you.
noun	sign	The sign in the bank's lobby announces their rates for savings accounts and for loans.
noun	signature	Your signature can be electronically recorded to be verified later.

verb	transact	Our company transacts all its financial business at this bank.
noun	transaction	All parties concerned were pleased with the results of the business transactions.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A B C D

#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A B C      3. A B C

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. What does the man want to do?<br>(A) Open a bank account.<br>(B) Get a new driver's license.<br>(C) Put his signature on file.<br>(D) Cash a check. | 6. When will the man's check clear?<br>(A) In seven days.<br>(B) In eight days.<br>(C) In ten days.<br>(D) In eleven days. |
| 5. According to the woman, what is required?<br>(A) A photo ID.<br>(B) An order form.<br>(C) A large deposit.<br>(D) A signed check.                   |  |

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 7. Who is this talk for?<br>(A) People who are looking for a job.<br>(B) People who want to borrow money.<br>(C) People who work in a bank.<br>(D) People who want to open a bank account. | 9. What is a requirement?<br>(A) A new job.<br>(B) An important address.<br>(C) Money in the bank.<br>(D) An accountant. |
| 8. How big a down payment is required?<br>(A) 10 percent.<br>(B) 3 percent.<br>(C) 1 percent.<br>(D) 4 percent.  |  |

**READING****Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

10. I'm going to call the bank manager ahead of time to make certain that she will \_\_\_\_\_ a personal check to start a new account.  
 (A) accept (C) acceptance  
 (B) accepted (D) acceptable
11. We felt \_\_\_\_\_ about applying for such a large loan.  
 (A) cautiously (C) cautioning  
 (B) caution (D) cautious
12. Every month my automatic car loan payment shows up as a \_\_\_\_\_ on my monthly statement.  
 (A) deduct (C) deducting  
 (B) deduction (D) deducted
13. The number of withdrawals at no charge from your savings account is \_\_\_\_\_ to three.  
 (A) restricting (C) restrict  
 (B) restricted (D) restriction
14. There is a counter in the bank lobby where customers can \_\_\_\_\_ their documents.  
 (A) signing (C) sign  
 (B) signed (D) signature
15. These \_\_\_\_\_ must be completed before the close of business today.  
 (A) transacts (C) transacted  
 (B) transacting (D) transactions

**Part 6 Text Completion**

Dear Customer,

Our records show that you qualify for our new automatic mortgage payment plan. Under this plan, your monthly mortgage payments 16 from your savings account automatically. Now you no longer have to worry about making your payments on time! We do it all for you. You must maintain a sufficient 17 in your account to cover the monthly payments. If you are interested in participating in this plan, simply complete the enclosed form. Certain 18 apply to this plan, so read the explanation on the back of the form carefully. You may return the form in the enclosed envelope. Don't forget to sign it at the bottom. Your automatic deductions could begin as early as next month.

16. (A) deduct  
 (B) deducted  
 (C) are deducted  
 (D) are deducting
17. (A) dividend  
 (B) balance  
 (C) transaction  
 (D) down payment
18. (A) restrictions  
 (B) restrictive  
 (C) restricted  
 (D) restricts

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following two letters.

July 16, 20—

Customer Service Office  
National Bank of Augusta  
1398 State Street  
Augusta, MD

Dear Customer Service Office,

I am a new customer at your bank. I opened an account with you last month, and I have recently received my first monthly statement. I find that there is a service charge on three of the checks that I wrote. I understood that this account had free checking, so I was surprised to see this charge. Perhaps it is a mistake. I am enclosing a copy of the statement. Please clarify this matter for me. Thank you.

Sincerely,

Marvin Gardner

August 3, 20—

Marvin Gardner  
145 Merrywood Lane  
Augusta, MD

Dear Mr. Gardner,

We recently received your letter asking about charges to your account. While it is true that your account has free checking, some restrictions apply. You may write five checks a month free of charge. After that, you must maintain a minimum average balance of \$600 in your account in order to continue with free checking. Since your average account balance last month was only \$435, you were entitled to only five free checks. A service charge was applied to the checks you wrote beyond that minimum. I hope this explanation is satisfactory to you.

Let me take this opportunity to make sure that you are aware of other services you can get with your account. You can arrange to have your monthly utility bills deducted from your account. You are also eligible to borrow small amounts of money from the bank at a low interest rate. If you are interested in these or any other services, please visit us at the bank, and an officer will be happy to explain all the details to you. Thank you for being a National Bank of Augusta customer.

Sincerely,

Eloise Lockwood  
Customer Service Officer

19. Why did Mr. Gardner write this letter?  
 (A) To pay his monthly utility bills.  
 (B) To find out about borrowing money.  
 (C) To ask a question about his monthly statement.  
 (D) To order some free checks.
20. When did he open an account at the National Bank of Augusta?  
 (A) May.  
 (B) June.  
 (C) July.  
 (D) August.
21. How many checks did he write last month?  
 (A) Three.  
 (B) Five.  
 (C) Six.  
 (D) Eight.
22. The word *restrictions* in line 3 of the second letter is closest in meaning to  
 (A) limitations  
 (B) fees  
 (C) customers  
 (D) numbers
23. The word *deducted* in line 13 of the second letter is closest in meaning to  
 (A) borrowed  
 (B) attached  
 (C) subtracted  
 (D) added

## Lesson 22

### WORDS TO LEARN

accounting  
accumulate  
asset  
audit  
budget  
build up  
client  
debt  
outstanding  
profitably  
reconcile  
turnover

# Accounting

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **accounting** n., the recording and gathering of financial information for a company
  - a. Good accounting is needed in all businesses.
  - b. Accounting for expenses is time-consuming.
2. **accumulate** v., to gather; to collect
  - a. They have accumulated more than enough information.
  - b. The bills started to accumulate after the secretary quit.
3. **asset** n., something of value
  - a. The company's assets are worth millions of dollars.
  - b. A sophisticated accounting system is an asset to a company.
4. **audit** n., a formal examination of financial records; v., to examine the financial records of a company
  - a. No one looks forward to an audit by the government.
  - b. The independent accountants audited the company's books.
5. **budget** n., a list of probable expenses and income for a given period; v., to plan for expenses
  - a. The department head was pleased that she received a 10 percent increase in her budget.
  - b. The company will have to budget more money for this department next year.
6. **build up** v., to increase over time
  - a. The firm has built up a solid reputation for itself.
  - b. Be careful, your inventory of parts is building up.
7. **client** n., a customer
  - a. We must provide excellent services for our clients, otherwise we will lose them to our competition.
  - b. Maintaining close contact with clients keeps the account managers aware of changing needs.
8. **debt** n., something owed, as in money or goods
  - a. The company has been very careful and is slowly digging itself out of debt.
  - b. The banks are worried about your increasing debt.
9. **outstanding** adj., still due; not paid or settled
  - a. That client still has several outstanding bills.
  - b. Clients with outstanding bills will not receive further service until the bills are paid.
10. **profitably** adv., advantageously
  - a. The company used its accountant's advice profitably.
  - b. We invested in the stock market profitably.
11. **reconcile** v., to make consistent
  - a. The client uses his bank statements to reconcile his accounts.
  - b. The accountant found the error when she reconciled the account.
12. **turnover** n., the number of times a product is sold and replaced or an employee leaves and another employee is hired
  - a. We have to add another production shift to keep up with the high turnover rate.
  - b. The overseas branch has much lower employee turnover than does domestic operations.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

accounting	audited	clients	profitable
accumulated	budget	debt	reconcile
assets	building up	outstanding	turnover

Accounting information is pulled together or (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to help someone make decisions. A manager must come up with a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to help control expenses. A retail store owner realizes that her (3) \_\_\_\_\_ have (4) \_\_\_\_\_ bills. A restaurant owner wants to know if it is (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to serve lunch. A nonprofit organization is being (6) \_\_\_\_\_ by the government. All of these people and organizations could use the services of an accountant.

Accountants and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ systems help a company stay on track. They raise flags when expenses are (8) \_\_\_\_\_ and keep an eye on the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ of inventory. They (10) \_\_\_\_\_ their clients' accounts to ensure that their clients' records are correct. Good accounting systems allow managers to come up with ways to improve their business.

The accountant prepares information for both internal and external use. Financial statements provide a quick look into the life of a business. They show how much (11) \_\_\_\_\_ the company is carrying and how much its (12) \_\_\_\_\_ are worth. The outside world uses this information to judge the health of the company.

## WORD FAMILIES

<b>noun</b>	accountant	The accountant was precise and hardworking.
<b>noun</b>	accounting	Accounting is a popular field of study.
<b>noun</b>	account	The client closed his bank account and withdrew all of his money.

<b>verb</b>	accumulate	The owner's goal was to accumulate as much wealth as possible.
<b>noun</b>	accumulation	The accumulation of goods may lead to an inventory problem.
<b>adjective</b>	accumulated	The sum of all the accumulated resources equals your total assets.

<b>verb</b>	audit	Some bookkeeping inconsistencies showed up when our records were audited.
<b>noun</b>	audit	If you keep your financial records carefully, you will always be ready for audit.
<b>noun</b>	auditor	The tax auditor will ask to see records from the past several years.

<b>verb</b>	budget	There was no travel expense budgeted for the editorial department.
<b>noun</b>	budget	The boss asked for input on next year's budget.
<b>adjective</b>	budgetary	Due to budgetary constraints, we cannot hire additional staff at this time.

<b>verb</b>	build up	Over the years, our office has built up a solid list of clients.
<b>noun</b>	buildup	A buildup of debt will weaken the company's finances.

<b>verb</b>	profit	The engineer will profit from the successful introduction of the new product.
<b>noun</b>	profit	The profits exceeded all expectations.
<b>adjective</b>	profitable	Marketing is the most profitable department this year.

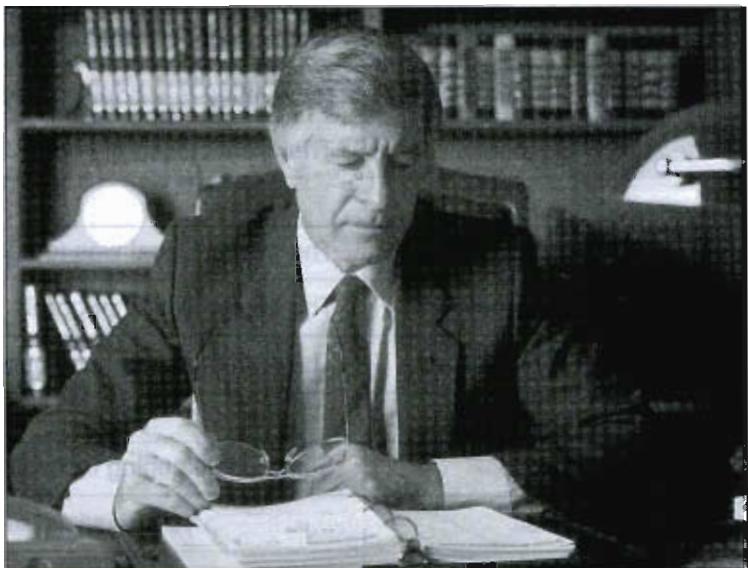
## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D.

#### Part 2 Question–Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

#### Part 3 Conversations

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>4. What time does the woman expect to return to the office?<br/>           (A) By 1:00.<br/>           (B) By 2:00.<br/>           (C) By 4:00.<br/>           (D) By 5:00.</p> <p>5. What is the client's problem?<br/>           (A) He doesn't understand his accountant.<br/>           (B) He won't be in his office today.<br/>           (C) He has a lot of debt.<br/>           (D) He doesn't have a savings account.</p> | <p>6. What does the woman plan to do with the client today?<br/>           (A) Show him a new budget.<br/>           (B) Give him a present.<br/>           (C) Ask him for more work.<br/>           (D) Make a business deal with him.</p> |
|--|--|

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>7. What is the topic of this talk?<br/>           (A) How to start an accounting firm.<br/>           (B) How to avoid client turnover.<br/>           (C) How to have a profitable accounting firm.<br/>           (D) How to get clients.</p> <p>8. How can an accounting firm make more money?<br/>           (A) By charging higher fees.<br/>           (B) By getting recommendations from their clients.<br/>           (C) By hiring new accountants.<br/>           (D) By making a new list of clients.</p> | <p>9. According to the speaker, what is a firm's most valuable asset?<br/>           (A) The staff.<br/>           (B) Money.<br/>           (C) Office space.<br/>           (D) Equipment.</p> |
|--|--|

**READING****Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

10. The firm's \_\_\_\_\_ studied finance and business administration.  
 (A) account      (C) accounted  
 (B) accounting    (D) accountant
11. The account manager has \_\_\_\_\_ a tremendous amount of wealth in a very short time.  
 (A) accumulated    (C) accumulating  
 (B) accumulation   (D) accumulates
12. We went over our records carefully in order to prepare for the meeting with the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) audit           (C) auditing  
 (B) auditor        (D) audited
13. At the end of next week, all the division heads will meet to present one consolidated \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) budgeting      (C) budgeted  
 (B) budget        (D) budgets
14. I \_\_\_\_\_ some savings in my bank account before I made any investments in business.  
 (A) building up    (C) built up  
 (B) buildup       (D) build
15. All the employees will benefit if the company's \_\_\_\_\_ continue to increase.  
 (A) profited       (C) profits  
 (B) profitable     (D) profitably

**Part 6 Text Completion****Wilson and Jones, Ltd.****Accountants**

**We specialize in small businesses.**

Are you having trouble reconciling your accounts?

Do you need to improve your tax situation?

Do you want to get out of debt and make your business 16?

Wilson & Jones, Ltd., is a full-service accounting firm that can help small business owners like you with all aspects of your accounts. Our budget planning service will help you pay off 17 debts so that you can start accumulating savings. Our tax service provides tax planning assistance, tax return preparation, and preparation for audits. Our bookkeeping service guarantees that your accounts are always up to date. Call us today for an appointment. You'll be out of the red and free of 18 tomorrow.

16. (A) profiting  
 (B) profitable  
 (C) profitably  
 (D) profiteer
17. (A) client  
 (B) budget  
 (C) turnover  
 (D) outstanding
18. (A) debate  
 (B) doubt  
 (C) debit  
 (D) debt

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following letter.

January 17, 20—

Buzzi Accountants  
128 Waterford Drive  
New Hanover, VA

Dear Ms. Buzzi,

I have just found out that my tax records will be audited by the government. I would like to hire someone from your firm to help me prepare for this. I run a small editing business which I started five years ago. I initially took out a loan from the bank to get my business started. My business has always been profitable, and I was able to repay the loan quickly. As of now, my business has no outstanding debts. My staff is quite small. I started out with one assistant, who is still with me. As I built up my client list, I hired a second assistant, who is also still working for me. Thus, I have not had a problem with staff turnover. In short, you can see that my business and financial situation are quite stable.

I have always prepared my taxes carefully, and I keep thorough records. I imagine that this audit will be fairly routine. However, I want to be sure that I am correctly prepared for it, and I feel that hiring an accountant is the best route to take. Please call me so that we can discuss the matter. I can be reached at my office Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays. One of my assistants is also usually in the office on Tuesdays and Thursdays and the occasional Saturday and will take messages for me.

I look forward to speaking with you.

Sincerely,

Jonathan Stein

19. Why does Mr. Stein want to hire an accountant?
- To prepare his taxes.
  - To help with an audit.
  - To get him out of debt.
  - To help him stabilize his finances.
20. How many people work for Mr. Stein?
- One.
  - Two.
  - Three.
  - Four.
21. When is Mr. Stein in his office?
- Monday through Friday.
  - Tuesday and Thursday.
  - Monday, Wednesday, and Friday.
  - On occasional Saturdays.
22. The word *profitable* in the first paragraph, line 3 is closest in meaning to
- large
  - in debt
  - interesting
  - earning money
23. The words *built up* in the first paragraph, line 5 are closest in meaning to
- constructed
  - increased
  - employed
  - served

## Lesson 23

### WORDS TO LEARN

aggressively  
attitude  
commit  
conservative  
fund  
invest  
long-term  
portfolio  
pull out  
resource  
return  
wisely

# Investments

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **aggressively** adv., competitively, assertively
  - a. Some people are risk takers and prefer to invest aggressively.
  - b. His ideas were not well received because he spoke so aggressively.
2. **attitude** n., a feeling about something or someone
  - a. The new fund manager's attitude changed quickly after the first big downturn in the market.
  - b. Each investor should assess his or her own attitude toward investment.
3. **commit** v., to consign for future use, to promise
  - a. It is a good idea to commit a certain percentage of your income to investments.
  - b. The stockbroker committed herself to finding the best investments for each client.
4. **conservative** adj., cautious, restrained
  - a. Her conservative strategy paid off over the years.
  - b. Generally, older people should be more conservative in their investing than younger people.
5. **fund** n., an amount of money for something specific; v., to provide money for
  - a. He will have access to his trust fund when he is 21 years old.
  - b. The company will fund the trip to the conference.
6. **invest** v., to put money into a business or activity with the hope of making more money; to put effort into something
  - a. The chief financial officer invested in the stock at a very good time.
  - b. Don't invest all of your time in just one project.
7. **long-term** adj., involving or extending over a long period
  - a. The CEO's long-term goal was to increase the return on investment.
  - b. Over the long-term forecast, unemployment is expected to remain steady.
8. **portfolio** n., a list of investments
  - a. Investors are advised to have diverse portfolios.
  - b. The investor's portfolio consisted of blue chip company stocks and government bonds.
9. **pull out** v., to withdraw, to stop participating; n., a withdrawal, removal
  - a. His advisor suggested that she pull out her investments in the troubled country.
  - b. The pull out of the bank has left the company without financing.
10. **resource** n., assets; valuable things
  - a. If you don't invest in petroleum resources now, you will find that the stock prices will get away from you.
  - b. The company's most valuable resource was its staff.
11. **return** n., the amount of money gained as profit
  - a. The 44 percent return on the new stock was far more than the stockbroker had anticipated.
  - b. Some investors are satisfied with a 15 percent return, while others want to see a much larger return.
12. **wisely** adj., knowledgeably, smartly
  - a. If you invest wisely, you will be able to retire early.
  - b. Mary wisely followed her stockbroker's advice and took her money out of some bad investments.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

aggressive	committed	long-term	resources
attitude	fund	portfolio	return
conservative	invest	pull out	wise

Investment is a common, everyday occurrence. Companies (1) \_\_\_\_\_ time and money in finding and training their employees. Employees invest in their own training and education. Financial investment takes place at a corporate level and at an individual level. Whether an individual or a company, a decision must be made on the percentage of (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to have invested and the percentage to have in cash.

To avoid making stupid decisions, many people use financial advisors. Financial advisors help individuals and corporations make (3) \_\_\_\_\_ investment decisions. What kind of portfolio should be maintained? What should be in this (4) \_\_\_\_\_ At what point should an investor pull back or (5) \_\_\_\_\_ of the market? What kind of (6) \_\_\_\_\_ should the investor realistically expect? How much risk can an investor take (both emotionally and financially)? Investors who are (7) \_\_\_\_\_ for the (8) \_\_\_\_\_ can more easily weather the ups and downs of a market. As one analyst commented, "If you're staying awake at night thinking about the stock market, you probably have too much invested."

Many employees have retirement plans at work. They decide what level of contribution to make to a certain (9) \_\_\_\_\_. These decisions and large company decisions depend to a large degree on (10) \_\_\_\_\_. Is the decision maker (11) \_\_\_\_\_ or (12) \_\_\_\_\_? That attitude often depends on the age of the investor or on the stage and the needs of the business.

## WORD FAMILIES

<b>noun</b>	aggression	The act of aggression against our country caused a fear of war and had a negative effect on the stock market.
<b>adjective</b>	aggressive	The director's aggressive position on investing was frowned upon by the Board of Directors.
<b>adverb</b>	aggressively	I chose this stockbroker because he invests my money aggressively.

<b>verb</b>	commit	I'm committed to keeping the money in my pension fund until I retire.
<b>noun</b>	commitment	The employee's commitment to working hard and saving her money was commendable.
<b>adjective</b>	noncommittal	I had hoped that the discussion would yield a definite answer from them, but they were noncommittal.

<b>verb</b>	conserve	Conserve your money now so you will be able to invest when the stock market gets better.
<b>adjective</b>	conservative	Some people are conservative investors and take few risks with their money.
<b>adverb</b>	conservatively	If you invest too conservatively, you may lose some chances for making money.

<b>verb</b>	invest	The company has been successful because it has invested wisely in its resources.
<b>noun</b>	investment	The CFO is responsible for corporate investment.
<b>noun</b>	investor	The fall in the stock market shook up the investors.

<b>verb</b>	return	I wish I could return to the days where investing was simple.
<b>noun</b>	returns	Our returns on our investments exceeded expectations.
<b>adjective</b>	returnable	The merchandise is returnable as long as you have your receipt.

<b>noun</b>	wisdom	Common wisdom is to place your money in a variety of investments.
<b>adjective</b>	wise	The wise investor does her homework before parting with her money.
<b>adverb</b>	wisely	She planned her retirement wisely and was able to retire to her summer house.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A B C D

#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A B C      3. A B C

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>4. What does the man recommend?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(A) Investing mainly in natural resources.</li> <li>(B) Investing in various industries.</li> <li>(C) Investing aggressively.</li> <li>(D) Investing in the basket industry.</li> </ul> <p>5. How much money has the man made through his investments?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(A) One million dollars.</li> <li>(B) Two million dollars.</li> <li>(C) Five million dollars.</li> <li>(D) Ten million dollars.</li> </ul> | <p>6. What will the woman do?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(A) Take her money out of the stock market.</li> <li>(B) Hire an investment advisor.</li> <li>(C) Start a marketing business.</li> <li>(D) Follow the man's investment strategy.</li> </ul> |
|--|--|

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>7. What is this talk about?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(A) How to invest in the stock market.</li> <li>(B) How to choose a good college.</li> <li>(C) How to choose investments.</li> <li>(D) How to save money for college.</li> </ul> <p>8. When should parents start saving money for college?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(A) Two or three years from now.</li> <li>(B) When their children are small.</li> <li>(C) After they have had two or three children.</li> <li>(D) When their children are in high school.</li> </ul> | <p>9. How often should parents put money in the stock market?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(A) Every month.</li> <li>(B) Every two or three months.</li> <li>(C) Every year.</li> <li>(D) Every two or three years.</li> </ul> |
|--|--|

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. The stockbroker recommended investing some money more \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) aggressive      (C) aggressively  
 (B) aggression      (D) aggressor
11. All employees are encouraged to \_\_\_\_\_ a percentage of their earnings to the retirement fund.  
 (A) committed      (C) commitment  
 (B) commit      (D) committing
12. Because he had made such \_\_\_\_\_ investments, he lost very little money when the stock market went down.  
 (A) conservative      (C) conservatively  
 (B) conserved      (D) conserve
13. After months of study and research, the \_\_\_\_\_ decided to put his money into new facilities and materials.  
 (A) investor      (C) investing  
 (B) investment      (D) invested
14. A good financial analyst will advise investors on strategies that will generate higher \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) returned      (C) returns  
 (B) returning      (D) returnable
15. Is it \_\_\_\_\_ to consider funding a new project when we haven't even seen the returns from the last one?  
 (A) wisdom      (C) wisely  
 (B) wisest      (D) wise

### Part 6 Text Completion

Many people try to save money by acting as their own investment advisors. This is not usually considered to be a wise choice. In the long term, it can actually end up costing the investor more money because of poor investment decisions. A professional investment advisor understands investment options more thoroughly than the layperson ever could. A good investment advisor becomes familiar with her clients' 16 toward investing and gives advice accordingly. The advisor makes certain recommendations to clients who are conservative investors and makes different recommendations to clients who prefer to invest more 17. The best way to create a strong investment 18 that matches your needs and preferred investing strategy is to work with a professional investment advisor.

16. (A) funds  
 (B) returns  
 (C) attitudes  
 (D) resources
17. (A) aggressor  
 (B) aggression  
 (C) aggressive  
 (D) aggressively
18. (A) portage  
 (B) portrait  
 (C) portfolio  
 (D) portmanteau

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following two e-mail messages.

To: Amelia Waddell  
 From: Peter Simpkins  
 Subject: Investment

Hi Amelia,

I wondered if you would give me the name of your investment advisor. My business is doing very well this year. In fact, I am now making a lot more money than I did when I had a job with a salary. I would prefer to invest my profits in the stock market as I'm sure I would earn more money that way than just letting it earn interest in a bank account. Of course, I want to invest wisely, so I am looking for professional advice. You know I tend to have a conservative attitude toward money, and I hope your advisor can help me make some safe investments. Please get back to me soon as I'd like to get started on this before the end of the month. Thanks.

Peter

To: Peter Simpkins  
 From: Amelia Waddell  
 Subject: Re: Investment

Hi Peter,

I would be happy to help you out. As a matter of fact, I just talked with my investment advisor this morning, and she mentioned that she is looking for more clients. Her name is Susannah Oliveros. I have been working with her for several years and have always been satisfied. I have gotten good returns on the investments I have made with her. I will call you this afternoon, and we can discuss all the details then. I will also give you her phone number so you can call her tomorrow. I know you will like her.

Amelia

19. Why did Peter write the e-mail message?  
 (A) He is looking for a job.  
 (B) He needs some investment advice.  
 (C) He lent some money to Amelia.  
 (D) He is looking for new clients.
20. Why does Peter have extra money to invest?  
 (A) He earned a lot of interest in his bank account.  
 (B) He has a high salary.  
 (C) His business is very profitable.  
 (D) He made money in the stock market last year.
21. When will Amelia call Peter?  
 (A) This morning.  
 (B) This afternoon.  
 (C) Tomorrow.  
 (D) Before the end of the month.
22. The word *wisely* in line 8 of the first e-mail is closest in meaning to  
 (A) smartly  
 (B) carefully  
 (C) quickly  
 (D) easily
23. The word *returns* in line 6 of the second e-mail is closest in meaning to  
 (A) goes back  
 (B) gives back  
 (C) suggestions  
 (D) profits

# Lesson 24

## WORDS TO LEARN

calculation  
deadline  
file  
fill out  
give up  
joint  
owe  
penalty  
preparation  
refund  
spouse  
withhold

# Taxes

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **calculation** n., computation; estimate
  - a. It took my accountant some time to complete the calculations on my income tax.
  - b. According to my calculations, I'll owe less money on my income taxes this year.
2. **deadline** n., a time by which something must be finished
  - a. The deadline for paying this year's taxes is just two weeks away.
  - b. My best work is done with strict deadlines.
3. **file** v., to enter into public record
  - a. If you file your taxes late, you will have to pay a fine.
  - b. If you believe the tax preparer gave you incorrect information, you should file a complaint with her boss.
4. **fill out** v., to complete
  - a. I usually ask someone to help me fill out my tax form.
  - b. Don't forget to sign the tax form after you have filled it out.
5. **give up** v., to quit; to stop
  - a. Bruce gave up trying to prepare his tax return himself and now hires an accountant to do it.
  - b. Ms. Gomez is so optimistic that she never gives up.
6. **joint** adj., together; shared
  - a. We opened a joint bank account five years ago.
  - b. The couple no longer files joint tax returns.
7. **owe** v., to have a debt; to be obligated to pay
  - a. People are often surprised to discover that they owe more money in income taxes at the end of the year.
  - b. As the business grew, the owner paid back loans and owed less money.
8. **penalty** n., a punishment; a consequence
  - a. Anyone who pays less than they should in taxes will face a penalty.
  - b. Penalties are imposed to discourage underpayment of taxes by adding a percentage to the taxes you already owe.
9. **preparation** n., the act of making something ready
  - a. Income tax preparation can take a long time.
  - b. It is important to do some preparation on your own before hiring an accountant to work on your tax form.
10. **refund** n., the amount paid back; v., to give back
  - a. With the tax refund, we bought two plane tickets.
  - b. The government will refund any money that you overpaid.
11. **spouse** n., a husband or wife
  - a. You can claim your spouse as a dependent on your tax return if he or she doesn't earn an income.
  - b. My spouse prepares the tax return for both of us.
12. **withhold** v., to keep from; to refrain from
  - a. My employer withholds money from each paycheck to apply toward my income taxes.
  - b. Do not withhold any information from your accountant or he will not be able to prepare your tax form correctly.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

calculated	fill out	owe	refund
deadline	gave up	penalized	spouse
filed	joint	prepares	withhold

Every year, my wife gathers all of our pay stubs and expense reports and (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to fill out our tax forms. She tries to finish them in March, well before the April 15th (2) \_\_\_\_\_. It's a time-consuming process. There are receipts to find, records to organize, and forms to (3) \_\_\_\_\_. When we first got married, we (4) \_\_\_\_\_ separate returns. But now she marks me as her (5) \_\_\_\_\_ and files the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ return. It saves us money and saves me time!

My wife is very proud of her accuracy. The government has never sent the forms back with corrections. For several years now, we have received a (7) \_\_\_\_\_. But this year, she (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the numbers over and over again and found we had not paid enough taxes throughout the year. She didn't want to (9) \_\_\_\_\_ any money. Finally, she (10) \_\_\_\_\_ and sent in our check. Actually, it was my fault. I had changed jobs and didn't ask my employer to (11) \_\_\_\_\_ enough money from my paychecks. I'm just glad we found and corrected the mistake before we got (12) \_\_\_\_\_.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	calculate	The young man tries to calculate his expenses every month.
noun	calculation	The calculation is no more difficult than high school math.
noun	calculator	In order to avoid making addition and subtraction errors, I suggest you use a calculator.

verb	file	Don't wait until the last minute to file your taxes.
noun	file	I keep all my tax information in one file.

adjective	joint	My husband and I filed a joint tax return.
adverb	jointly	Even though you are separated right now, you will save money if you and your wife file your taxes jointly.

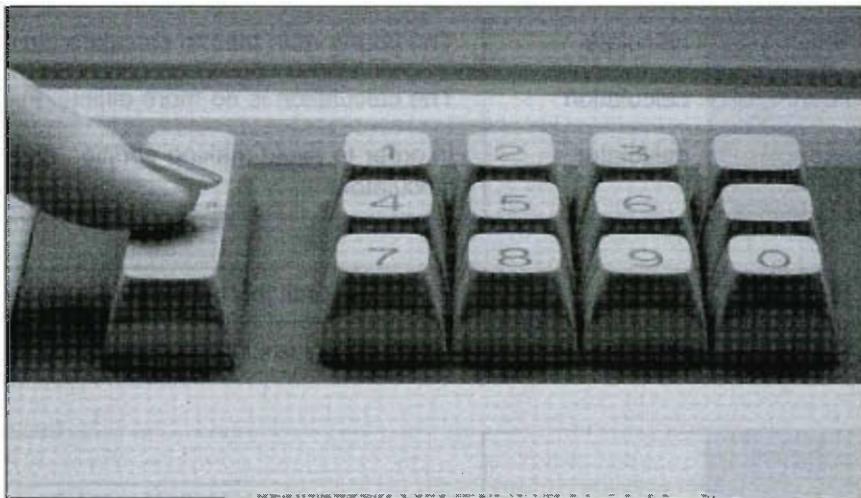
verb	penalize	The government will penalize taxpayers who try to evade paying their fair share of taxes.
noun	penalty	For every dollar you owe in overdue taxes, a 10 percent penalty is imposed.
adjective	penal	Tax evasion is a penal offense.

verb	prepare	Most people wait until the last minute to prepare their tax returns.
noun	preparation	If you are organized, income tax preparation takes only a few hours.
adjective	preparatory	The preparatory work for doing my taxes is more time-consuming than filling out the forms.

verb	refund	The government should refund your overpaid taxes within a few weeks of filing your tax return.
noun	refund	If you have overpaid your income taxes, you will get a refund at the end of the year.
adjective	refundable	Sales tax that tourists pay in a foreign country may be refundable when they leave the country.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. (A) (B) (C) (D)

**Part 2 Question–Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. (A) (B) (C)      3. (A) (B) (C)

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 4. Who usually prepares the man's taxes?   | 6. What is the penalty for missing the deadline?                      |
| (A) The man.<br>(B) His wife.<br>(C) The man and his wife together.<br>(D) An accountant.  | (A) 1 percent.<br>(B) 2 percent.<br>(C) 9 percent.<br>(D) 10 percent. |
| 5. When did the man file his taxes last year?  |   |
| (A) One month before the deadline.<br>(B) Two months before the deadline.<br>(C) One month after the deadline.<br>(D) Two months after the deadline. |   |

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 7. Who is the speaker?   | 9. What does the speaker offer to do?  |
| (A) A tax preparer.<br>(B) A government tax agent.<br>(C) A tax filer.<br>(D) An employer.               | (A) Calculate the amount to withhold from the paycheck.<br>(B) Make an arrangement with the employer.<br>(C) Show the listener a fee schedule.<br>(D) Send in the tax payment. |
| 8. When can the refund check be expected?  |  |
| (A) In eighteen weeks.<br>(B) Before six weeks.<br>(C) In four weeks.<br>(D) In ten weeks at the latest. |  |

**READING****Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

10. According to my \_\_\_\_\_, we owe a lot of money in taxes this year.  
 (A) calculations (C) calculators  
 (B) calculated (D) calculate
11. Those \_\_\_\_\_ on my desk contain all the information we'll need for preparing our taxes.  
 (A) filed (C) file  
 (B) files (D) filing
12. It is usually advantageous for spouses to file their income taxes \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) joints (C) joint  
 (B) jointly (D) jointed
13. We didn't know we had to claim the interest from our savings account and were \_\_\_\_\_ for the error.  
 (A) penalize (C) penalty  
 (B) penalizing (D) penalized
14. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the forms took much less time than we expected.  
 (A) preparatory (C) prepared  
 (B) preparation (D) prepares
15. I didn't overpay my taxes this year so I didn't get a \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) refunded (C) refund  
 (B) refundable (D) refunds

**Part 6 Text Completion****Smith & Johnson****Tax Preparation**

We take away the headaches of tax time.

\_\_\_\_\_ 16 your own taxes can be frustrating and often leads to costly errors in calculations. Are you ready to give up trying to fill \_\_\_\_\_ 17 your tax forms on your own? Smith & Johnson Tax Preparation can help you! People who use professional tax preparers get larger refunds and avoid \_\_\_\_\_ 18 for underpayment and missed deadlines.

Make tax time easier. Call us today. You owe it to yourself.

16. (A) Prepare  
 (B) To prepare  
 (C) Preparing  
 (D) Preparation
17. (A) in  
 (B) up  
 (C) out  
 (D) through
18. (A) pennants  
 (B) penalties  
 (C) penumbras  
 (D) peninsulas

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following letter.

April 1, 20—

Mr. Roger Earnshaw  
2943 Northern Boulevard  
New Orange, NH

Dear Mr. Earnshaw,

Enclosed are your completed tax forms, which I have prepared for you at your request. I am sorry to report that you will not receive the \$500 refund that you expected. Instead, my calculations show that you owe \$450 in taxes, as well as an additional penalty of \$45 for underpayment of taxes. The reason for this is that you and your spouse have chosen not to file your taxes jointly this year. You may want to reconsider this for the future since, as you can see, it is more costly for married couples to file separately. If you and your spouse wish to continue to file separately, you may want to ask your employer to withhold a greater amount from your paychecks so that you don't end up owing money again next year. This will be even more important if you get the salary increase that you have been hoping for.

Write out a check for the taxes that you still owe and the penalty and mail it together with your tax forms before the April 15 deadline. Please let me know if I can be of any further assistance.

Sincerely,

Kathleen O'Hara  
CPA

19. Who wrote the letter?  
 (A) A tax agent.  
 (B) A tax preparer.  
 (C) Mr. Earnshaw's spouse.  
 (D) Mr. Earnshaw's employer.
20. What is the total amount that Mr. Earnshaw owes?  
 (A) \$45.  
 (B) \$450.  
 (C) \$495.  
 (D) \$500.
21. What does Ms. O'Hara recommend to Mr. Earnshaw to improve his tax situation?  
 (A) Get married.  
 (B) File separately.  
 (C) Ask for a salary increase.  
 (D) Withhold more from his checks.
22. The word *jointly* in line 4 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) together  
 (B) apart  
 (C) on time  
 (D) finally
23. The word *deadline* in line 9 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) holiday  
 (B) schedule  
 (C) anniversary  
 (D) due date

## Lesson 25

### WORDS TO LEARN

desire  
detail  
forecast  
level  
overall  
perspective  
project  
realistic  
target  
translation  
typically  
yield

# Financial Statements

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **desire** v., to wish for
  - a. We desire to have our own home.
  - b. He desires to retire when he becomes forty.
2. **detail** v., to report or relate minutely or in particulars
  - a. The office manager detailed each step of the inventory process at the staff meeting.
  - b. Fabio created a financial statement that detailed every expected expenditure for the next quarter.
3. **forecast** n., a prediction of a future event; v., to estimate or calculate in advance
  - a. The financial forecast indicates a deficit in the next quarter.
  - b. Analysts forecast a strong economic outlook.
4. **level** n., a relative position or rank on a scale
  - a. We have never had an accountant work at such a sophisticated level before.
  - b. The meeting was only open to staff at the assistant director level or higher.
5. **overall** adj., regarded as a whole; general
  - a. The company's overall expectations were out of proportion.
  - b. Overall, our costs are running true to prediction.
6. **perspective** n., a mental view or outlook
  - a. The budget statement will give the manager some perspective on where the costs of running the business are to be found.
  - b. Joseph's accountant gave him some perspective as well as some data on how much he could expect to earn in his first year in business.
7. **project** v., to estimate or predict
  - a. We need to project our earnings and expenses in order to plan next year's budget.
  - b. The director projects that the company will need to hire ten new employees this year.
8. **realistic** adj., tending to or expressing an awareness of things as they really are
  - a. Stefano found that an accurate accounting gave him a realistic idea of his business's financial direction.
  - b. Realistic expectations are important when you review your financial statements.
9. **target** v., to establish as a goal; n., a goal
  - a. We targeted March as the deadline for completing the financial statement.
  - b. Most managers target desired income as the primary criterion for success.
10. **translation** n., the act or process of translating
  - a. The translation of the statement from Japanese into English was very helpful.
  - b. The accountant was able to provide a translation of the economic terms used in the meeting.
11. **typically** adv., acting in conformity to a type; characteristically
  - a. Office expenses typically include such things as salaries, rent, and office supplies.
  - b. The director typically dominates the staff meetings.
12. **yield** n., an amount produced; v., to produce a profit
  - a. Henry's budget gave him the desired yield: a better indication of his expected profit.
  - b. The company's investment yielded high returns.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

desired	level	projected	translate
detailed	overall	realistic	typical
forecasts	perspective	target	yield

A business budget focuses on future profits and future capital requirements. A budget can help the business owner determine the amount of profit the business is expected to make, the amount of sales it will take to reach a goal, and what (1) \_\_\_\_\_ of expenses are attached to those sales. A business establishes a (2) \_\_\_\_\_, a goal to work toward. A business (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the sales that will be needed to reach this target.

Projecting or planning ahead is part of (4) \_\_\_\_\_ business planning. When creating a (5) \_\_\_\_\_ income statement, a business owner tries to determine how to reach the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ target. The annual profit must be sufficient to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the owner a return for his or her time spent operating the business, plus a return on the investment. The owner's target income is the sum of a reasonable salary for the time spent running the business and a normal return on the amount invested in the firm.

After projecting the income needed, the business owner has to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the target profit into a net sales figure for the forecasted period. The owner has to determine whether this sales volume is (9) \_\_\_\_\_. One useful technique is to break down the required annual sales into a daily sales figure to get a better (10) \_\_\_\_\_ of the sales required to yield the annual profit.

At this stage in the financial plan, the owner should create a (11) \_\_\_\_\_ picture of the firm's expected operating expenses. Many books and business organizations give (12) \_\_\_\_\_ operating statistics data, based on a percentage of net sales. The business's accountant can help you assign dollar values to anticipated expenses.

Developing a projected income statement is an important part of any financial plan, as the process forces the business owner to examine the firm's future profitability.

## WORD FAMILIES

<b>verb</b>	desire	Our manager is trying to predict how many customers will desire our product over the next quarter.
<b>noun</b>	desire	Her desire for greater control of the business led her to discuss her need for more information with her accountant.
<b>adjective</b>	desirable	The category summary, while desirable, was time-consuming to prepare.

<b>verb</b>	detail	The job description details all the duties of this position.
<b>noun</b>	detail	The budget report needs to be accurate down to the last detail.
<b>adjective</b>	detailed	The director asked for a detailed description of our meeting.

<b>verb</b>	project	The budget summary helped us project our expenditures for the year.
<b>noun</b>	project	The financial project was time-consuming and challenging.
<b>noun</b>	projection	Maurice's projections for the upcoming fiscal year were not as helpful as we had hoped.

<b>verb</b>	realize	The plan helps her realize her dream of having the business turn a profit.
<b>noun</b>	reality	The financial statement reinforced the reality that our business is in deep trouble.
<b>adjective</b>	realistic	The accountant needs realistic numbers on which to base his plan.

<b>verb</b>	translate	The computer was able to translate data from the created spreadsheet into the spreadsheet program I prefer.
<b>noun</b>	translation	The translation of the document was provided at no charge.
<b>adjective</b>	translatable	The data was not translatable between programs and had to be entered by hand, which took hours.

<b>noun</b>	type	This type of business requires a lot of start-up money.
<b>adjective</b>	typical	Part of a category summary is defining the expenses that are typical of the business in question.
<b>adverb</b>	typically	Typically, we finished preparing the budget just in time to meet the deadline.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A B C D

#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A B C      3. A B C

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. What is the woman doing?<br>(A) Developing a project report.<br>(B) Preparing a financial statement.<br>(C) Making a weather forecast.<br>(D) Writing an expense report. | 6. What does the man offer to do?<br>(A) Write a check.<br>(B) Sign a statement.<br>(C) Solve her financial problems.<br>(D) Correct her calculations. |
| 5. When does she want to have this finished?<br>(A) By noon.<br>(B) Before 8:00.<br>(C) By the end of the week.<br>(D) Before the end of the year.                          |  |

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 7. Who is this talk directed at?<br>(A) Large companies.<br>(B) Financial advisors.<br>(C) Small business owners.<br>(D) Finance companies.                             | 9. According to the speaker, what is the first step to take when starting a small business?<br>(A) Get an office with a key.<br>(B) Write a financial statement.<br>(C) Raise start-up funds.<br>(D) Hire a project manager. |
| 8. When does a business typically become profitable?<br>(A) During the first five years.<br>(B) During the first year.<br>(C) After five years.<br>(D) After two years. |  |

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. Before we begin, I think we should all focus on the \_\_\_\_\_ outcome of this effort.  
 (A) desirableness (C) desired  
 (B) desire (D) desirability
11. The accountant can review all the \_\_\_\_\_ of the financial statement with you.  
 (A) detailed (C) details  
 (B) detailing (D) detail
12. The \_\_\_\_\_ figures for the next quarter will not be available until a week from tomorrow.  
 (A) project (C) projection  
 (B) projected (D) projects
13. The projected financial statement demonstrated to Susan that her business had a \_\_\_\_\_ chance of increasing its profit over the next two quarters.  
 (A) realistic (C) realistically  
 (B) realist (D) reality
14. To create our financial strategy, our consultant took the experiences of similar businesses and \_\_\_\_\_ relevant outcomes to our situation.  
 (A) translatable (C) translator  
 (B) translation (D) translated
15. Our business experienced a \_\_\_\_\_ fall in profits during the third quarter of the year.  
 (A) typical (C) type  
 (B) typically (D) typed

### Part 6 Text Completion

#### Memo

To: Department Heads  
 From: Roy Jones, Manager  
 Re: Planning Meeting

As you know, our quarterly planning meeting will take place in two weeks. I want to let you know some of the topics that will be discussed, to give you a chance to prepare.

First, the overall economic situation in the country looks very good for the coming year. Economists 16 an increase in consumer spending, especially in our sector. Therefore, we should look into increasing production. I believe that a 15 percent increase by the end of the year is a realistic target.

Second, since the company plans to increase sales overseas, we will need to hire several 17. We will need to discuss how many we need and which languages should have priority.

These are the most important topics for the meeting. If anyone 18 to put a special item on the meeting agenda, please let me know by the beginning of next week.

16. (A) foreclose  
 (B) forebode  
 (C) forego  
 (D) forecast
17. (A) translators  
 (B) translates  
 (C) translations  
 (D) transports
18. (A) desire  
 (B) desires  
 (C) will desire  
 (D) have desired

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following article and e-mail message.

Do you have a sound financial plan for your small business? You should. The majority of small businesses fail during the first five years, typically because they have not made realistic financial plans. A new business owner may start out with the necessary funds, a qualified staff, and office space and equipment. These things may not save the business from disaster, however, if the business owner hasn't set realistic targets and made plans to reach them. Everyone who contemplates starting a new business should sit down and write out all the details of a financial plan before doing anything else.

To: Shirley Haines  
 From: Matthew Rockwell  
 Subject: Financial planning  
 Attach: Financial Plans for Small Businesses

Shirley,

Have you seen the attached article on financial planning? It appeared in this week's issue of *Small Business Owner* magazine. It has given me a new perspective on things. I can't believe we have already been running our business for six months, but we still haven't sat down together to write out a financial plan. Overall, I believe our business is doing well, and we certainly have enough clients. But, I now understand that our future success depends on having a good financial plan. We need to project our earnings for the next year and set financial targets. We should get to work on this right away. Can we meet tomorrow afternoon? Three o'clock is a good time for me. Let me know soon.

Matthew

19. According to the article, why do most small businesses fail?  
 (A) Lack of financial planning.  
 (B) Lack of adequate office space.  
 (C) Lack of qualified staff.  
 (D) Lack of adequate funds.
20. Why did Matthew write the e-mail message?  
 (A) He wants to start a small business with Shirley.  
 (B) He is writing an article for a magazine.  
 (C) He wants to make a financial plan.  
 (D) He is looking for new clients.
21. When does Matthew want to meet with Shirley?  
 (A) Tomorrow.  
 (B) Next week.  
 (C) In six months.  
 (D) Next year.
22. The word *typically* in line 3 of the article is closest in meaning to  
 (A) unfortunately  
 (B) usually  
 (C) really  
 (D) sadly
23. The word *perspective* in line 4 of the e-mail is closest in meaning to  
 (A) information  
 (B) advice  
 (C) goal  
 (D) view

**Word Review #5****Lessons 21–25 Financing and Budgeting**

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

1. The Small Business Administration will help you to arrange to \_\_\_\_\_ money to start a business.  
(A) borrow  
(B) borrowed  
(C) borrowing  
(D) borrower
2. When we \_\_\_\_\_ a loan, we found very good terms.  
(A) take out  
(B) took out  
(C) taken out  
(D) taking out
3. Most people get nervous when someone is \_\_\_\_\_ their books.  
(A) audit  
(B) audits  
(C) audited  
(D) auditing
4. Sometimes it is difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ of bad investments.  
(A) pull up  
(B) pull out  
(C) pull at  
(D) pull to
5. I prefer \_\_\_\_\_ in social-conscience funds.  
(A) invest  
(B) investment  
(C) investing  
(D) investor
6. When the Dow is dropping, investors need to be \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) resource  
(B) resources  
(C) resourceful  
(D) resourcefulness
7. Sometimes it is difficult to understand how the government \_\_\_\_\_ tax liability.  
(A) calculating  
(B) calculations  
(C) calculators  
(D) calculates
8. One decision with tax returns is whether to \_\_\_\_\_ itemizing in favor of the standard deduction.  
(A) give up  
(B) giving up  
(C) gave up  
(D) given up
9. The company's \_\_\_\_\_ earnings over the next six months were exciting.  
(A) project  
(B) projects  
(C) projection  
(D) projected
10. Some parts of the tax code are so confusing that they need \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) translate  
(B) translates  
(C) translated  
(D) translation

*Choose the one word or phrase that best completes each sentence.*

At Grover Investment Services, we understand that you work hard to earn your money, and it is important to invest it 11. This is where we come in. We offer our 12 a full range of investment services. Whether you are a conservative or aggressive investor, we can help you develop an investment plan that suits your needs. At Grover, we are 13 to helping you get the best possible return for your money. Call us today.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 11. (A) wise<br>(B) wisely<br>(C) wizened<br>(D) wisdom           | 13. (A) commit<br>(B) committee<br>(C) committed<br>(D) commitment |
| <br>  |  |
| 12. (A) accountants<br>(B) officers<br>(C) spouses<br>(D) clients |  |

First-time home buyers may feel overwhelmed by the process of applying for a mortgage. However, the process of 14 money to buy a house is not very complicated. First, you will have to fill out a form giving information about your financial situation. You need to show that you have a good income. It is also important not to have a lot of 15. If you already owe a lot of money, the bank may hesitate to lend you more. Then, you will have to make a 16, usually about 10 percent of the total price of the house. The bank lends you the rest of the money for the purchase.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 14. (A) borrow<br>(B) borrows<br>(C) borrowed<br>(D) borrowing | 16. (A) refund<br>(B) target<br>(C) down payment<br>(D) forecast |
| <br>   |  |
| 15. (A) debut<br>(B) debt<br>(C) doubt<br>(D) dubbed           |  |

Many people use the services of an accountant to help 17 their tax forms. They consider it well worth the money. An accountant can help you avoid 18 for underpayment of taxes and, in general, ensure that your tax form has been filled out correctly. But remember, accountants have deadlines too. Be sure to give all your tax information to your accountant early, then you can be sure that your taxes will be ready to 19 on time. No one wants to pay a fine for sending in their tax form too late.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 17. (A) prepare<br>(B) preparer<br>(C) preparation<br>(D) preparatory | 19. (A) file<br>(B) fund<br>(C) budget<br>(D) invest |
| <br>  |  |
| 18. (A) pennants<br>(B) penalties<br>(C) penitents<br>(D) pendants    |  |

## Lesson 26

### WORDS TO LEARN

adjacent  
collaboration  
concentrate  
conducive  
disruption  
hamper  
inconsiderately  
lobby  
move up  
open to  
opt  
scrutiny

# Property and Departments

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **adjacent** adj., next to
  - a. My office is adjacent to the receptionist area on the third floor.
  - b. The office manager found it very efficient to have the copier adjacent to the mail room.
2. **collaboration** n., the act of working with someone
  - a. The manager had never seen such effective collaboration between two groups.
  - b. We believe that it was our collaboration that enabled us to achieve such favorable results.
3. **concentrate** v., to focus; to think about
  - a. In his quiet, corner office, the manager could finally concentrate and finish his work.
  - b. We should concentrate our efforts on the last quarter of the year.
4. **conducive** adj., contributing to; leading to
  - a. The new office arrangement is much more conducive to work than the dark, depressing space the company had before.
  - b. Arranging chairs so that participants can see each other easily is conducive to open communication.
5. **disruption** n., interruption; disturbance
  - a. If there are no disruptions, the office renovations will be finished this week.
  - b. The strike caused a disruption in production at the factory.
6. **hamper** v., to impede or interfere
  - a. When the weight of the freezing rain broke the telephone lines, the telemarketers' jobs were seriously hampered.
  - b. The lack of supplies hampered our ability to finish on schedule.
7. **inconsiderately** adv., rudely; impolitely
  - a. The manager inconsiderately scheduled the meeting for late Friday afternoon.
  - b. Mr. Peterson inconsiderately disrupted the meeting by asking a lot of irrelevant questions.
8. **lobby** n., an anteroom, foyer, or waiting room
  - a. The salesperson waited in the busy lobby for the buyer to see him.
  - b. The reception area was moved from the lobby of the building to the third floor.
9. **move up** v., to advance, improve position
  - a. As the employee moved up the corporate ladder, she never forgot where she started.
  - b. In order to move up in the company, employees had to demonstrate their loyalty.
10. **open to** adj., receptive to; vulnerable
  - a. What I valued most in my previous supervisor was that she was always open to ideas and suggestions.
  - b. Since the junior executive was still on probation, he was open to much scrutiny and criticism.
11. **opt** v., to choose, to decide on
  - a. The operations manager opted for the less expensive office design.
  - b. If Mary opts to join that department, you will be working together.
12. **scrutiny** n., close, careful examination
  - a. After a great deal of scrutiny, the manager decided that the employee's work had improved considerably.
  - b. Jim left his old job because he found it difficult to work under the close scrutiny of his boss.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

adjacent	conducive	inconsiderate	open to
collaboration	disruptive	lobby	opting
concentrate	hampered	move up	scrutinized

The layout of any office has an important influence on the atmosphere and operations in the company. The shipping department most likely will not be located next to the customer service department. The noise would be too (1) \_\_\_\_\_. Likewise, locating a kitchen (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to the (3) \_\_\_\_\_ would be (4) \_\_\_\_\_ for office visitors and clients. The marketing department is often situated close to the sales department due to their necessary (5) \_\_\_\_\_.

Employee productivity may be (6) \_\_\_\_\_ or improved by the arrangement of workers and departments. Employees vie for corner offices as they (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the corporate ladder. They want to be accessible to top management, but not so close that everything that they do is (8) \_\_\_\_\_. At the same time, many companies are (9) \_\_\_\_\_ for open work spaces versus traditional offices. Open spaces are more (10) \_\_\_\_\_ to team projects, where employees interact freely. However, some employees feel that such an environment makes it difficult to (11) \_\_\_\_\_. Employees know under which conditions they work the best. If employers are willing to listen and are (12) \_\_\_\_\_ suggestions, they can take advantage of office space and help employees to realize their full potential.

## WORD FAMILIES

<b>verb</b>	collaborate	If we collaborate on this project, you will be sure to receive credit.
<b>noun</b>	collaboration	Collaboration often brings about results that no one could have predicted.
<b>adjective</b>	collaborative	The new project is a collaborative effort among several departments.

<b>verb</b>	concentrate	Some people find it difficult to concentrate when there is a lot of noise and activity around them.
<b>noun</b>	concentration	The concentration of a large percentage of the company's funds in just a few areas left several departments underfunded.
<b>adjective</b>	concentrated	With some concentrated effort, we should be able to finish this work by the deadline.

<b>verb</b>	disrupt	Try not to disrupt the meeting being held in the sales department.
<b>noun</b>	disruption	I'm sorry for the disruption, but this phone call is very important.
<b>adjective</b>	disruptive	Having to temporarily move the offices proved to be very disruptive and sales decreased during that quarter.

<b>noun</b>	inconsiderateness	The inconsiderateness of many of the customers caused several employees to quit their jobs.
<b>adjective</b>	inconsiderate	Would it be inconsiderate to ask to use your office while you are away?
<b>adverb</b>	inconsiderately	John inconsiderately looked through his coworker's mail before putting it on his desk.

<b>verb</b>	opt	When we moved offices, I opted for the one without a window.
<b>noun</b>	option	Presented with several options, we chose the one that required the least amount of effort.
<b>adjective</b>	optional	Attendance at tomorrow's meeting is optional for the people working in this department.

<b>verb</b>	scrutinize	The auditor carefully scrutinized the financial records.
<b>noun</b>	scrutiny	Employees under constant scrutiny tend to perform worse than those employees who have more freedom.
<b>adjective</b>	inscrutable	You can never tell what she is thinking, since her facial expressions are inscrutable.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D.

**Part 2 Question-Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

4. What does the man think of the current lobby?  
 (A) People conduct a lot of conversations there.  
 (B) It's quite pleasant.  
 (C) More people should use it.  
 (D) It's not a good place for conversations.
5. What might be disruptive to the business?  
 (A) Loud conversations in the lobby.  
 (B) Remodeling work.  
 (C) The need to scrutinize plans.  
 (D) A heavy workload.
6. When will the new lobby be finished?  
 (A) This afternoon.  
 (B) In two weeks.  
 (C) Next month.  
 (D) In four months.

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

7. What is this talk about?  
 (A) How to encourage collaboration.  
 (B) How to increase productivity.  
 (C) How to concentrate.  
 (D) How to design an office.
8. What is the problem with a large, open office?  
 (A) It isn't conducive to collaboration.  
 (B) It doesn't include options.  
 (C) Work is easily disrupted.  
 (D) It isn't adjacent to a lobby.
9. Why is it important to have a large work room?  
 (A) To allow staff members to work together.  
 (B) To maintain a high level of activity.  
 (C) To increase concentration.  
 (D) To have a more attractive design.

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## Part 6 Text Completion

## Notice

In order to maintain a professional office environment that is 16 to work, all staff members are asked to observe the following guidelines.

- Be 17 of your coworkers. When using an open work area, do not speak in loud voices or turn on radios.
  - Our clients are important. Do not disrupt your coworkers when they are meeting with clients.
  - Remember that the lobby is the first place our clients see when they enter the office. Please 18 by doing your best to keep this area clean and neat.

16. (A) optional  
(B) conducive  
(C) inscrutable  
(D) collaborative

17. (A) consideration  
(B) considerately  
(C) considerate  
(D) consider

18. (A) can cooperate  
(B) to cooperate  
(C) cooperating  
(D) cooperate

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following memo.

**Memo**

To: All office staff  
 From: P. Windermere, Office Manager  
 Re: Parking situation

As you may be aware, starting next week, the parking garage will be closed for repairs to the upper level due to damage caused by the heavy rains last month. There will be no parking allowed on any level of the garage while the repairs are taking place, as parked cars may hamper the work. Cars parked in the garage will be towed at the owner's expense. While the garage is closed, you may opt to park on the street or in the lot adjacent to the building. Remember that it is a private lot and a fee will be charged. I realize that the parking options will be limited, and I am open to any suggestions for solutions to this parking situation that any of you may have. Unfortunately, the repair work will take more than a few weeks. We cannot expect the garage to open again until two months from now. In the meantime, I thank you for your cooperation.

19. Why will the garage be closed?  
 (A) It needs repairs.  
 (B) The fees are too high.  
 (C) Its parking options are limited.  
 (D) Street parking is better.
20. What will happen to cars that are parked in the garage?  
 (A) They will be charged a fee.  
 (B) They will be repaired.  
 (C) They will be towed.  
 (D) They will be used for work.
21. When will the garage reopen?  
 (A) In a week.  
 (B) In just a few weeks.  
 (C) In a month.  
 (D) In two months.
22. The word *hamper* in line 6 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) allow  
 (B) interfere  
 (C) encourage  
 (D) contribute
23. The word *adjacent* in line 9 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) distant  
 (B) underneath  
 (C) next to  
 (D) across from

## Lesson 27

### WORDS TO LEARN

adhere to  
agenda  
bring up  
conclude  
go ahead  
goal  
lengthy  
matter  
periodically  
priority  
progress  
waste

# Board Meetings and Committees

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **adhere to** v., to follow; to pay attention to
  - a. The chairman never adhered to his own rules.
  - b. The best committee members are those who adhere to the time limits and speak only when they have something important to add.
2. **agenda** n., a list of topics to be discussed
  - a. The board was able to cover fifteen items on the agenda.
  - b. The agenda was sent out three weeks ago so that everyone could prepare for the meeting.
3. **bring up** v., to introduce a topic
  - a. Just as the meeting was about to finish, the manager brought up a controversial issue.
  - b. No one brought up the resignation of the director.
4. **conclude** v., to stop; to come to a decision
  - a. The committee members concluded the meeting early so that they could finish their budgets.
  - b. After long discussions, the board has concluded that the project has to be canceled.
5. **go ahead** v., to proceed with; n., permission to do something
  - a. Five of the six members felt that they should go ahead with the plan.
  - b. The manager was just waiting for the go ahead from her boss before mailing the report.
6. **goal** n., objective, purpose
  - a. Employees are expected to analyze and evaluate their annual goals.
  - b. The director had to report to the committee that his department would not reach its goal of 35 percent growth.
7. **lengthy** adj., long in time, duration, or distance
  - a. After lengthy discussions, the chairperson was reelected for another term.
  - b. The report was so lengthy that members had to take it home and read it over the weekend.
8. **matter** n., an item, issue, topic of interest
  - a. If there are no other matters to discuss, we will conclude the meeting.
  - b. This is not the place to bring up personal matters.
9. **periodically** adv., from time to time
  - a. The group tried to meet periodically.
  - b. Periodically, new members were nominated to the committee.
10. **priority** n., something of importance, something that should be done before other things
  - a. Since the remaining issues were not a priority, the group decided to move them to the next week's agenda.
  - b. The manager was ineffective because she was unable to set priorities.
11. **progress** n., a movement forward; v., to move forward on something, especially work or a project
  - a. The executive committee asked each group to present a report showing their progress for the year.
  - b. Progress is being made on the annual report; we expect to see a finished product by next week.
12. **waste** v., not to use wisely; n., not worthwhile
  - a. Without a leader, the group members wasted time and energy trying to organize themselves.
  - b. The meeting wasn't a waste of time, but the members had hoped to accomplish more than they did.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

adhered to	concluded	lengthy	priority
agenda	go ahead	matters	progress
brought up	goals	periodically	waste

Committee meetings are a frequent and necessary event at almost every company. In order for meetings to be productive and not viewed as a (1) \_\_\_\_\_ of time, they should be run efficiently. Critical to the success of any meeting is the (2) \_\_\_\_\_. Everyone who attends the meeting should be aware of the agenda and be prepared to discuss the (3) \_\_\_\_\_ at hand and the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to be accomplished. To avoid (5) \_\_\_\_\_ discussions, time frames should be set and (6) \_\_\_\_\_.

The meeting is called to order by the chairperson. Attendance is taken and agenda items are (7) \_\_\_\_\_ one by one. In general, (8) \_\_\_\_\_ topics should be at the beginning of the agenda, to make sure that the attendees are able to discuss them fully and make timely decisions. Once the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ is given for a plan or project, a plan of action is developed. The committee must then (10) \_\_\_\_\_ check up on the (11) \_\_\_\_\_ of that plan. The meeting is (12) \_\_\_\_\_ without any outstanding issues and a date for the next meeting is set.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	adhere	The chairperson asked us to adhere to the items on the agenda.
noun	adherence	Your adherence to these guidelines would be appreciated.

verb	conclude	To conclude, we must all focus on the year ahead of us and the challenges that we will face.
noun	conclusion	Unfortunately, the conclusion of the meeting was that they needed to downsize their workforce.
adjective	conclusive	There is no conclusive evidence to back up the report.

verb	lengthen	Ms. Greene decided to lengthen the time allotted to the meeting to allow each person a chance to speak.
noun	length	Because of its length, we decided not to read the entire report at the meeting.
adjective	lengthy	A presentation that is too lengthy will only put the audience to sleep.

noun	period	The sales reports for the current period are excellent.
adjective	periodic	They received periodic updates from the overseas licensees.
adverb	periodically	The employee checked his messages periodically during the week-long seminar.

verb	prioritize	Once the team members learned to prioritize their work, they were much more productive.
noun	priority	The committee member has difficulties setting priorities for herself.
adjective	prior	The director did not give much attention to Ellen's proposal as he had several prior matters to attend to.

verb	progress	Everyone was surprised at how quickly the meeting had progressed.
noun	progression	The quick progression of events didn't surprise anyone.
adjective	progressive	The new president is very progressive and is always looking for ways to improve the business.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. (A) (B) (C) (D)

**Part 2 Question-Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. (A) (B) (C)      3. (A) (B) (C)

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. What do the speakers say about the meeting?  | 6. What will the speakers do the next time there is a meeting?   |
| (A) They had a good time.<br>(B) A lot was accomplished.<br>(C) Important matters were discussed.<br>(D) It was too long. | (A) Look at the agenda.<br>(B) Accomplish more things.<br>(C) Avoid attending it.<br>(D) Plan it better. |
| 5. How long did the meeting last?   |  |
| (A) Two hours.<br>(B) Three hours.<br>(C) Four hours.<br>(D) Nine hours.  |  |

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 7. What is this talk about?   | 9. What will happen at 4:30?   |
| (A) How to have a better staff meeting.<br>(B) How to make speeches.<br>(C) How to write an agenda.<br>(D) How to develop guidelines. | (A) The meeting will end.<br>(B) Goals will be discussed.<br>(C) Guidelines will be presented.<br>(D) A new item will be introduced. |
| 8. What are the listeners asked to do?  |  |
| (A) Make long speeches.<br>(B) Discuss personal matters.<br>(C) Bring something to the meeting.<br>(D) Follow the agenda.             |  |

**READING****Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. When using these facilities, please \_\_\_\_\_ to the rules posted by the door.  
 (A) adhere (C) adherence  
 (B) adhering (D) adhered
11. As the chairman stood to give his \_\_\_\_\_, everyone in the room was listening.  
 (A) conclusion (C) conclusive  
 (B) conclude (D) concluding
12. George decided to \_\_\_\_\_ his business trip by a few days so he could do some sightseeing.  
 (A) length (C) lengthy  
 (B) lengthen (D) lengthened
13. The original members of the committee met \_\_\_\_\_ for lunch or dinner.  
 (A) period (C) periodically  
 (B) periods (D) periodic
14. As her first \_\_\_\_\_, the committee chairwoman wanted to attract new, energetic members to the group.  
 (A) prior (C) prioritize  
 (B) priority (D) prioritized
15. Even as they \_\_\_\_\_ through the hundreds of pages of supporting material, the committee was still not convinced that the project was justified.  
 (A) progression (C) progresses  
 (B) progressed (D) progressive

**Part 6 Text Completion****Memo**

To: Department Staff  
 From: Alison Roth, Department Manager  
 Re: Meeting

All members of the department staff are requested to attend a department meeting next Friday morning. As you know, we meet 16 to review our work of the past months and finalize plans for the coming months. The goal of this Friday's meeting is to set our priorities for the next six months. The meeting agenda is attached for your review. Let's agree to follow the agenda and not 17 other matters at this time so that we can finish the meeting in a timely manner. The most important item on the agenda is the budget. We need to take a careful look at our spending practices. We 18 too much money over the past six months. Please come with ideas about how we can use our funds more efficiently in the future. Please arrive at the meeting on time so that we can conclude before 12:00.

16. (A) period  
 (B) periodic  
 (C) periodical  
 (D) periodically
17. (A) set back  
 (B) go ahead  
 (C) bring up  
 (D) adhere to
18. (A) waste  
 (B) have wasted  
 (C) will waste  
 (D) are wasting

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following agenda and e-mail message.

<p><b>Perruche, Inc.</b></p> <p>Annual Meeting May 17, 20— 1:00 p.m.</p> <p>Agenda</p> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 40%;">1. Progress report on overseas expansion</td><td style="width: 60%;">Robert Fleurat</td></tr> <tr> <td>2. Reducing waste in our plants</td><td>Madeline Costello</td></tr> <tr> <td>3. Reassessing our financial goals</td><td>Jean Duprey</td></tr> <tr> <td>4. Hiring and firing policies</td><td>Cynthia Weinstein</td></tr> <tr> <td>5. Looking ahead: priorities for the next decade</td><td>Samuel Lyon</td></tr> </table>	1. Progress report on overseas expansion	Robert Fleurat	2. Reducing waste in our plants	Madeline Costello	3. Reassessing our financial goals	Jean Duprey	4. Hiring and firing policies	Cynthia Weinstein	5. Looking ahead: priorities for the next decade	Samuel Lyon	<p>To: Cynthia Weinstein From: Samuel Lyon Subject: Yesterday's meeting</p> <p>Hello Cynthia,</p> <p>We all missed you at yesterday's meeting. We were concerned that a medical emergency prevented your attendance but are glad to know that you are all right now. The meeting went well, and we were able to adhere to the agenda for the most part. There was only one small change. Jean gave his presentation on finance right after Robert since he had to leave early. Your secretary faxed a copy of your report to me, and I read it in your place. There were a few questions which will be submitted to you by e-mail. The meeting was not lengthy at all. In fact, even though we had scheduled three hours for the entire meeting, we actually concluded half an hour earlier than that. You see how efficient we have become. A copy of the meeting minutes will be faxed to you before 5:00 today. I hope to speak with you soon.</p> <p>Samuel</p>
1. Progress report on overseas expansion	Robert Fleurat										
2. Reducing waste in our plants	Madeline Costello										
3. Reassessing our financial goals	Jean Duprey										
4. Hiring and firing policies	Cynthia Weinstein										
5. Looking ahead: priorities for the next decade	Samuel Lyon										

19. What was the second item presented at the meeting?  
 (A) Progress report on overseas expansion.  
 (B) Reducing waste in our plants.  
 (C) Reassessing our financial goals.  
 (D) Hiring and firing policies.
20. Who read the report on hiring and firing policies?  
 (A) Madeline Costello.  
 (B) Jean Duprey.  
 (C) Cynthia Weinstein.  
 (D) Samuel Lyon.
21. What time did the meeting end?  
 (A) 1:00.  
 (B) 3:30.  
 (C) 4:00.  
 (D) 4:30.
22. The word *goals* in line 3 of the agenda is closest in meaning to  
 (A) objectives  
 (B) problems  
 (C) needs  
 (D) decisions
23. The words *adhere to* in line 6 of the e-mail are closest in meaning to  
 (A) study  
 (B) design  
 (C) follow  
 (D) understand

## Lesson 28

### WORDS TO LEARN

brand  
conform  
defect  
enhance  
garment  
inspect  
perceptive  
repel  
take back  
throw out  
uniformly  
wrinkle

# Quality Control

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **brand** n., an identifying mark or label; a trademark
  - a. Consumers often buy highly advertised brands of athletic shoes.
  - b. All brands of aspirin are the same.
2. **conform** v., to match specifications or qualities
  - a. The quality control manager insisted that every product that left the plant conform to the company's rigorous standards.
  - b. Our safety standards conform to those established by the government.
3. **defect** n., an imperfection or flaw
  - a. Because of a defect in stitching, the entire suit was thrown out.
  - b. One way to sell a product with a defect is by labeling it as such and reducing the price.
4. **enhance** v., to make more attractive or valuable
  - a. The reason behind quality control is to enhance the company's reputation for superior products.
  - b. A stylish color enhances the appeal of a car.
5. **garment** n., an article of clothing
  - a. Every garment must be carefully inspected for defects before it is shipped.
  - b. The garment workers are accountable for production mistakes.
6. **inspect** v., to look at closely; to examine carefully or officially
  - a. A quality control agent who does not inspect every product carefully can ruin his company's reputation.
  - b. Children's car seats are thoroughly inspected and tested for safety before being put on the market.
7. **perceptive** adj., able to see or understand
  - a. Dora always hires good workers because she is very perceptive about people's abilities.
  - b. It takes a perceptive person to be a good manager.
8. **repel** v., to keep away; to fight against
  - a. Umbrellas that do not repel water should never be passed through quality control.
  - b. Faulty products repel repeat customers.
9. **take back** v., to return something; to withdraw or retract
  - a. Good quality control significantly limits the number of products taken back for a refund.
  - b. The quality inspector took the shoddy work back to the assembly line to confront the workers.
10. **throw out** v., to dispose of
  - a. It is cheaper to throw out shoddy products than to lose customers.
  - b. The factory decided to throw out hundreds of lightbulbs that might have been damaged, rather than lose customers.
11. **uniformly** adv., in the same way; consistently
  - a. The products are checked to make sure they are uniformly packaged before they leave the factory.
  - b. The food at chain restaurants is uniformly prepared so that customers will always find the same quality at each restaurant.
12. **wrinkle** n., a crease, ridge, or furrow, especially in skin or fabric
  - a. A wrinkle that is ironed into a permanent-press product will annoy the consumer each time the garment is worn.
  - b. A wrinkle in the finish can be repaired more economically before a sale than after.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

brand	enhance	perceive	throws out
conform	garment	repel	uniform
defects	inspect	take back	wrinkle

Alex is excited about his new job with Parapluie Rain Wear. As quality control manager, his job is to make sure that his company's goods (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to standardized quality criteria and are free from (2) \_\_\_\_\_. Before any (3) \_\_\_\_\_ leaves the factory, Alex must (4) \_\_\_\_\_ it. He knows that if he (5) \_\_\_\_\_ a damaged garment before a customer sees it, he will (6) \_\_\_\_\_ his company's reputation and increase the demand for their products. Alex must ensure that all products meet certain criteria: A customer who buys a raincoat that does not (7) \_\_\_\_\_ rain will probably (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the raincoat to the store and buy another (9) \_\_\_\_\_. The same is true if the seams are not sewn tightly or the color is not (10) \_\_\_\_\_. Alex knows that, in addition to keeping out rain, the product must be attractive to look at and to touch. It should not (11) \_\_\_\_\_ easily, and it should last a long time. Alex knows that it is important for customers to (12) \_\_\_\_\_ his company's goods as quality products so that his company will profit—and he can get a raise.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	defect	Disgusted by the poor quality of products at the factory, the employee defected to a plant that took pride in its work.
noun	defect	Even a small defect can cause a product to fail.
adjective	defective	Good quality control employees will notice defective machinery before a serious breakdown occurs.

verb	inspect	We must inspect every product before we sell it.
noun	inspection	Each employee must conduct a careful inspection.
noun	inspector	The inspector leaves his identification number on the product to ensure accountability.

verb	perceive	The worker perceived that the stitching on the seams could not withstand normal strain.
noun	perception	Customers' perception of quality is often based on their experience with a given store or brand.
adjective	perceptive	Perceptive workers are excellent quality control inspectors.

verb	repel	A quality raincoat can repel rain and keep you dry.
noun	repellent	Testing insect repellent is never a pleasant task.
adjective	repellent	Testing stain removers can be repellent to workers because of the toxic fumes.

noun	uniform	The employees at this company are required to wear uniforms.
adjective	uniform	A successful company will ensure the uniform quality of its products.
adverb	uniformly	All of our company's products must be uniformly labeled.

verb	wrinkle	Linen is not a practical fabric because it wrinkles easily.
noun	wrinkle	Inspect garments carefully and remove any wrinkles that you find.
adjective	wrinkled	Garments become wrinkled after they have been tried on several times at the store.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D.

**Part 2 Question-Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| <p>4. What does the company do with garments that have defects?<br/>           (A) It exchanges them for better products.<br/>           (B) It throws them out.<br/>           (C) It stores them at the factory.<br/>           (D) It sells them at a discount.</p> | <p>5. How many of the garments end up with defects?<br/>           (A) 15 percent.<br/>           (B) 16 percent.<br/>           (C) 50 percent.<br/>           (D) 60 percent.</p> | <p>6. What type of garment does the company manufacture?<br/>           (A) Shirts.<br/>           (B) Skirts.<br/>           (C) Sweaters.<br/>           (D) Uniforms.</p> |
|--|---|--|

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| <p>7. Who is this talk directed at?<br/>           (A) Store employees.<br/>           (B) Factory workers.<br/>           (C) Product inspectors.<br/>           (D) Customers.</p> | <p>8. When is a product inspected?<br/>           (A) When it reaches the store.<br/>           (B) Before it leaves the factory.<br/>           (C) Before the customer takes it home.<br/>           (D) When the customer returns it.</p> | <p>9. What can a customer do with a defective product?<br/>           (A) Ask for a new product in exchange.<br/>           (B) Send it back to the factory.<br/>           (C) Show it to an inspector.<br/>           (D) Return it to the store.</p> |
|--|--|---|

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## Part 6 Text Completion

Thank you for buying a Flexco product. Flexco is a top name in women's clothing, and the Flexco brand carries a reputation for excellence. Customer satisfaction is our top priority, and all Flexco garments carry the Flexco guarantee. All our products must 16 to high standards. They 17 by trained professionals before they leave the factory. If your purchase is defective in any way, you may take it 18 to the store for a complete refund.

16. (A) conform  
(B) conforms  
(C) conforming  
(D) to conform

17. (A) inspect  
(B) inspected  
(C) are inspected  
(D) have inspected

18. (A) up  
(B) out  
(C) off  
(D) back

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following letter.

October 10, 20—

Customer Service Department  
Flexco Women's Clothing  
234502 Anthony Place  
Woodston, NY 12229

Dear Customer Service,

I am writing to express my extreme dissatisfaction with a recent purchase of a Flexco garment. Last week I went to our local department store to buy a gift for my wife. I chose a very handsome Flexco raincoat and gave it to my wife on her birthday last Saturday. She was pleased with the gift and wore it yesterday because we had a big rainstorm. We were both surprised to find out that the raincoat is not water repellent at all. My wife returned from her walk very, very wet. In addition, the fabric of the coat became wrinkled in the rain. I bought the Flexco raincoat for my wife because Flexco is one of her favorite brands. She already owns several Flexco dresses, skirts, and blouses. We never expected to be disappointed by a Flexco product.

I took the raincoat back to the store this morning. The manager there said that he did not see any defects in the coat, but he offered me a different coat in exchange. Since I understand that Flexco guarantees a complete refund on all its products, I did not accept the manager's offer. I hope that Flexco will stand by its guarantee. I am returning the raincoat with this letter, together with the receipt from the department store, and hope to receive a complete refund before the end of the month. Thank you for your attention to this matter.

Sincerely,

Thomas Jamison

19. Why did Mr. Jamison write this letter?  
 (A) He wants to order more garments from Flexco.  
 (B) He is unhappy with his purchase.  
 (C) He is looking for a present for his wife.  
 (D) He wants to express his appreciation of Flexco products.
20. What Flexco product did Mr. Jamison buy?  
 (A) A dress.  
 (B) A skirt.  
 (C) A blouse.  
 (D) A raincoat.
21. What happened when Mr. Jamison returned to the store?  
 (A) He bought more garments.  
 (B) He was offered a refund.  
 (C) He was offered a new coat.  
 (D) He noticed some defective clothes.
22. The word *wrinkled* in line 5 of the first paragraph is closest in meaning to  
 (A) creased  
 (B) wet  
 (C) destroyed  
 (D) dirty
23. The word *brands* in line 6 of the first paragraph is closest in meaning to  
 (A) gifts  
 (B) names  
 (C) stores  
 (D) styles

## Lesson 29

### WORDS TO LEARN

anxious  
ascertain  
assume  
decade  
examine  
experiment  
logical  
research  
responsibility  
solve  
supervisor  
systematically

# Product Development

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **anxious** adj., worried
  - a. The developers were anxious about the sales forecast for the new product.
  - b. The graphic designers tried to be calm during their presentation, but you could tell they were anxious it would not be well received.
2. **ascertain** v., to discover; to find out for certain
  - a. A necessary part of product development is to ascertain whether the product is safe.
  - b. A customer survey will help to ascertain whether there is a market for the product.
3. **assume** v., to take upon oneself; to believe to be true
  - a. The young man felt ready to assume the new responsibilities of his promotion.
  - b. A company should assume nothing about the market but instead pay close attention to research results.
4. **decade** n., a period of ten years
  - a. After a decade of trying, the company finally developed a vastly superior product.
  - b. Each decade seems to have its own fad products.
5. **examine** v., to interrogate; to scrutinize
  - a. Before marketing a new product, researchers must carefully examine it from every aspect.
  - b. Good researchers have to examine every possible option, including some that seem bizarre.
6. **experiment** v., to try out a new procedure or idea; n., a test or trial
  - a. Product developers must conduct hundreds of experiments in their research.
  - b. After designing a new product, researchers continue experimenting to determine whether it has other uses.
7. **logical** adj., formally valid; using orderly reasoning
  - a. It is only logical for a research and development team to concentrate on one or two new products at a time.
  - b. In addition to logical thinkers, a good research and development team should include a few dreamers.
8. **research** n., the act of collecting information about a particular subject.
  - a. Part of the research the team does is to determine whether similar products are already on the market.
  - b. For toy manufacturers, research can be pure fun.
9. **responsibility** n., a task
  - a. The product development department has a huge responsibility to be sure that the product is safe, even if used improperly.
  - b. Another responsibility of product development is to ensure that there will be a demand for the product.
10. **solve** v., to find a solution, explanation, or answer
  - a. Researchers find that every time they solve one problem, two more result.
  - b. One of the biggest problems to solve is why people would want to own the new product.
11. **supervisor** n., an administrator in charge
  - a. The department supervisor has to balance his department's responsibilities in order to keep the president satisfied with its progress.
  - b. A good supervisor gets his team to work with him, not just for him.
12. **systematically** adv., methodically; following a system
  - a. Once the creative development is completed, the department works systematically toward making the idea a reality.
  - b. While creative thinking is necessary, analyzing a problem systematically is indispensable.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

anxious	decade	logical	solve
ascertain	examining	researched	supervisor
assume	experiments	responsible	systematic

Michael was worried about his promotion. He needn't have been (1) \_\_\_\_\_ though. He had worked in the Product Development Division for nine and a half years, almost a (2) \_\_\_\_\_. He knew the department inside out. Now, however, he would be the director. As a member of the department, he had only to do what his (3) \_\_\_\_\_ told him. As the director, he would be the person (4) \_\_\_\_\_ for the success of his department. Fears are not always (5) \_\_\_\_\_; in fact, they are often illogical.

As his first task, he decided to conduct a (6) \_\_\_\_\_ analysis of the steps required to develop new products, and to organize the tasks into a logical order. The first step in developing new products would be to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ what kind of products the market needed and what problems existed with the products currently being used.

The second task would be to find out how best to examine these problems and determine what kind of research would be needed to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the problems. It would be better to say, reexamine these problems, since most of these unsolved problems had been thoroughly (9) \_\_\_\_\_ over the years.

The third task would be to look at the quality and characteristics of the competition's products. By (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the competition's products, he would know where he should improve. And the final task would be to decide how to gather the most substantial information from the fewest number of (11) \_\_\_\_\_. Michael smiled and sat back to read over his list. Confident that he had a good team and a good plan, he felt ready to (12) \_\_\_\_\_ his new job.

## WORD FAMILIES

noun	anxiety	The level of anxiety was high when the experimental car underwent road tests.
adjective	anxious	If you feel anxious, sit down and try to relax.
adverb	anxiously	The stockholders anxiously awaited the release of the new drug that, if successful, would make their stocks more valuable.

verb	assume	Product developers should assume nothing that research does not support.
noun	assumption	Most consumers make the assumption that, unless they are warned otherwise, the products they buy are safe.
adjective	assumed	The assumed results should be kept confidential until the product is retested.

verb	experiment	The product developer had experimented with improving electronic equipment since she was in the sixth grade.
noun	experimentation	Hi-tech companies are constantly involved in experimentation with new products in order to stay ahead of their competitors.
adjective	experimental	The new computer was experimental, so you could try it at the store, but you couldn't buy one.

noun	logic	Most problems can be easily solved by the application of logic.
adjective	logical	It was logical to put Martha in charge of the project as she had spent so much time developing the idea.
adverb	logically	I thought Mr. Lee answered the question quite logically.

noun	responsibility	Although the ultimate responsibility falls on the supervisor, every employee shares it.
adjective	responsible	The researcher responsible for passing the defective product has joined the cafeteria workers' assembly line.
adverb	responsibly	Product designers must act responsibly when they consider how a product might be misused.

verb	supervise	It's important to carefully supervise the collection of research data to ensure its accuracy.
noun	supervisor	George hopes to be promoted to supervisor of his department.
noun	supervision	Many employees do better work when they are under less supervision.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*

1. A. B. C. D.

**Part 2 Question-Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 4. What does the woman want to do with the doll?<br>(A) Make it less expensive.<br>(B) Examine it.<br>(C) Change its color.<br>(D) Add a noisemaker. | 6. What does the man suggest that the woman do?<br>(A) Search for a bigger doll.<br>(B) Research prices and sales.<br>(C) Give the doll a new figure.<br>(D) Hire more salespeople. |
| 5. How much does the woman think that sales will increase?<br>(A) 13 percent.<br>(B) 15 percent.<br>(C) 30 percent.<br>(D) 40 percent.               |   |

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 7. Why is the product popular?<br>(A) It has a low price.<br>(B) People are familiar with it.<br>(C) It is available everywhere.<br>(D) Nobody is sure of the reason. | 9. Who buys the product?<br>(A) Children.<br>(B) Teenagers.<br>(C) Men and women.<br>(D) People of all ages. |
| 8. How long has the product been on the market?<br>(A) Exactly two years.<br>(B) Exactly twenty years.<br>(C) More than twenty years.<br>(D) About ten years.         |  |

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## Part 6 Text Completion

In order to stay competitive in today's market, companies must continually work to develop new products. Through 16 research, a company can ascertain what consumers are interested in buying. Then products that match those interests can be developed. Nothing should 17 about consumer interests. Product developers need 18 all the data carefully before spending money on a new product. This is only logical. Consumers will buy products that meet their needs and desires. The money and effort spent on market research will be repaid many times over by a product that sells well.

16. (A) system  
(B) systemize  
(C) systematic  
(D) systematically

17. (A) assume  
(B) assumes  
(C) assumed  
(D) be assumed

18. (A) examine  
(B) to examine  
(C) examining  
(D) will examine

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following two letters.

February 12, 20—

Kathleen Hollinger  
Product Development Department  
New Age Systems, Inc.  
475 Cutter Avenue  
Sellingham, WA 90876

Dear Ms. Hollinger,

I understand that the company has an opening in the Product Development Department. I am interested in applying for this position. I have been working for New Age Systems for close to a decade. Currently I am a research assistant in the Marketing Department. During my time at New Age Systems, I have worked in several departments at the company and have had the opportunity to learn a great deal about its work. I feel that I am now ready to assume the responsibilities of a higher level position. I am anxious to speak with you about working in the Product Development Department. Thank you for your attention. I look forward to hearing from you.

Sincerely,

Dean Ayers

February 16, 20—

Dean Ayers  
Marketing Department  
New Age Systems, Inc.  
475 Cutter Avenue  
Sellingham, WA 90876

Dear Mr. Ayers,

Thank you for your letter expressing interest in applying for the position in the Product Development Department. Unfortunately, the position you are interested in has already been filled. However, I have communicated with your supervisor, and he speaks very highly of you. I have also examined your work record. It is clear that you would be a good asset to our department. I expect that we will have another opening before the end of this year. As soon as I have ascertained the availability of that position, I will be in contact with you. I look forward to meeting with you in the near future.

Sincerely,

Kathleen Hollinger  
Manager, Product Development Department

19. How long has Mr. Ayers worked for New Age Systems, Inc.?

- (A) Almost ten years.
- (B) Exactly ten years.
- (C) Almost twenty years.
- (D) More than twenty years.

20. What job does Mr. Ayers have now?

- (A) Product developer.
- (B) Department head.
- (C) Marketing manager.
- (D) Research assistant.

21. What will Ms. Hollinger do?

- (A) Hire Mr. Ayers right away.
- (B) Ask Mr. Ayers to supervise a project.
- (C) Tell Mr. Ayers when a position becomes available.
- (D) Send Mr. Ayers a copy of his work record.

22. The word *assume* in line 9 of the first letter is closest in meaning to

- (A) teach
- (B) study
- (C) decide
- (D) take

23. The word *examined* in line 6 of the second letter is closest in meaning to

- (A) looked at
- (B) brought up
- (C) taken back
- (D) given up

## Lesson 30

### WORDS TO LEARN

apprehensive  
circumstance  
condition  
due to  
fluctuate  
get out of  
indicator  
lease  
lock into  
occupy  
option  
subject to

# Renting and Leasing

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **apprehensive** adj., anxious about the future
  - a. Most new home buyers are apprehensive about their decision.
  - b. The mortgage lender was apprehensive about the company's ability to pay.
2. **circumstance** n., a condition; a situation
  - a. Under the current economic circumstances, they will not be able to purchase the property.
  - b. If the circumstances change in the near future and we have new properties, we will be sure to call you.
3. **condition** n., the state of something; a requirement
  - a. Except for some minor repairs, the building is in very good condition.
  - b. There are certain conditions that are unique to leasing a property.
4. **due to** prep., because of
  - a. Due to the low interest rates, good office space is difficult to find.
  - b. He didn't believe that the low prices were due only to the neighborhood.
5. **fluctuate** v., to go up and down; to change
  - a. No one is very comfortable making a large investment while the currency values fluctuate almost daily.
  - b. Prime business areas fluctuate with local economies, crime rates, and cost of living indices.
6. **get out of** v., to escape; to exit
  - a. The agent wasn't sure if the executives could get out of their prior real estate arrangement.
  - b. The company wanted to get out of the area before property values declined even further.
7. **indicator** n., a sign, a signal
  - a. If the economy is an accurate indicator, rental prices will increase rapidly in the next six months.
  - b. The results of the elections were seen as an important indicator of the stability in the area.
8. **lease** n., a contract to pay to use property for an amount of time; v., to make a contract to use property
  - a. With the lease expiring next year, they need to start looking for a new location as soon as possible.
  - b. They decided to lease the property rather than buy it.
9. **lock into** v., to commit; to be unable to change
  - a. The company locked itself into a ten-year lease that they didn't want.
  - b. Before you lock yourself into something, check all your options.
10. **occupy** v., to dwell or reside in
  - a. Tenants are usually allowed to occupy their space beginning on the first day of the month.
  - b. Our company has occupied this office for more than five years.
11. **option** n., a choice, an alternative
  - a. You could arrange the lease with an option to buy after a certain amount of time.
  - b. With the real estate market so tight right now, you don't have that many options.
12. **subject to** adj., under legal power; dependent
  - a. This contract is subject to all the laws and regulations of the state.
  - b. The go-ahead to buy is subject to the president's approval.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

apprehensive	due to	indicator	occupancy
circumstances	fluctuations	lease	options
condition	get out of	lock into	subject to

Starting a new business is both an exciting and frightening undertaking. Most new business owners are (1) \_\_\_\_\_ about their ability to make all the decisions that arise during the course of opening a business. One of the first issues that will arise is whether to buy or (2) \_\_\_\_\_ property. In order to evaluate the options, business owners research the current real estate market. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ rates are a good (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of the overall business climate. Prices per square foot will increase as the occupancy rate increases.

Economic change is part of the business climate. There are often large (5) \_\_\_\_\_ in prices within a given city. These fluctuations are (6) \_\_\_\_\_ many factors like the (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of the building, the surrounding neighborhood, access to public transportation, and business projections for the area.

Because there is so much uncertainty in starting a business, many owners do not want to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ themselves (9) \_\_\_\_\_ a long-term lease. Many negotiate clauses in their contracts to (10) \_\_\_\_\_ a lease under certain conditions. They want to insure the prices and conditions of a property before making a large commitment. Leases often provide more flexibility than buying a property. They like to leave their (11) \_\_\_\_\_ open. They don't like to be (12) \_\_\_\_\_ the whims of the marketplace.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	apprehend	A child can't apprehend the importance of saving for the future.
noun	apprehension	The air was thick with apprehension as the landlord met with the tenants.
adjective	apprehensive	The tenants were apprehensive about the conditions of their rental agreement.

adverb	circumstantially	The building owner circumstantially takes money out of the escrow account for emergency repairs.
noun	circumstance	Because of our circumstances, the rental agent kindly allowed us to get out of our lease early.
adjective	circumstantial	The judge's decision that the tenant was responsible for repairing the damage was based solely on circumstantial evidence.

verb	condition	The president conditioned her acceptance on two factors that were spelled out in the letter of agreement.
noun	condition	They decided to rent the space, under the condition that the price would not be raised for the next two years.
adjective	conditional	If you give a conditional go-ahead, we will start drawing up the plans.

verb	indicate	As was indicated in the terms of the lease, any changes to the property must be approved by the owners.
noun	indicator	The state of local schools is a good indicator of the health of the economy.
noun	indication	The management team had every indication that the tenants were planning to stay for the near future.

verb	fluctuate	As interest rates began to fluctuate, many investors became nervous and took their money out of the real estate market.
noun	fluctuation	Construction is sensitive to any fluctuations in the economy.
gerund	fluctuating	Any additional fluctuating on prices will not be accepted.

verb	occupy	The owner must make sure that the space is in good condition before the tenant occupies it.
noun	occupant	Most of the occupants of this building are doctors and lawyers.
noun	occupancy	The occupancy rate of the building has never fallen below 85 percent.

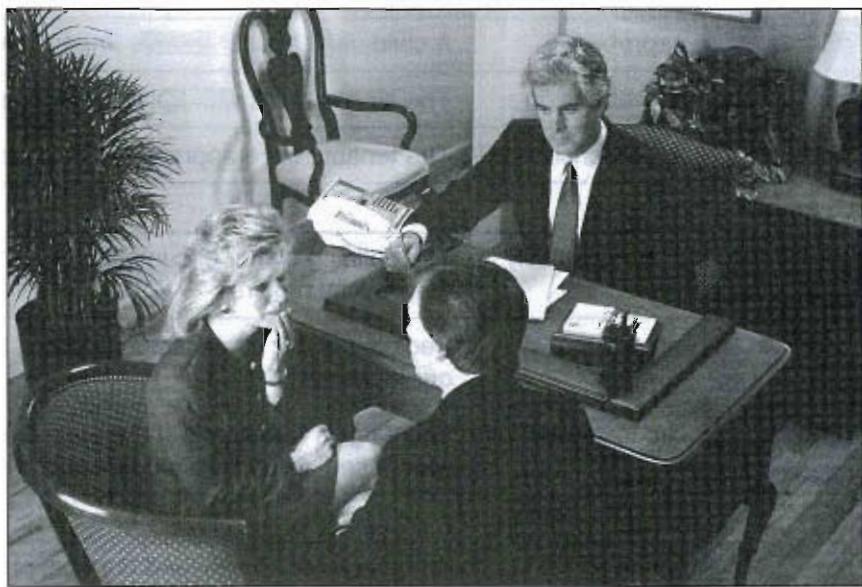
## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. (A) (B) (C) (D)

#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. (A) (B) (C)      3. (A) (B) (C)

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. What does the man want to do?<br>(A) Validate his signature.<br>(B) Sign a contract.<br>(C) Become a lawyer.<br>(D) Get out of a lease. | 6. When does he have to make a decision?<br>(A) Before 10:00.<br>(B) Before the end of the month.<br>(C) In four months.<br>(D) In ten months. |
| 5. What is he afraid of?<br>(A) Wearing the wrong suit.<br>(B) Paying too much money.<br>(C) Making the wrong decision.<br>(D) Being sued. |  |

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 7. Who is the audience for this talk?<br>(A) Customers and clients.<br>(B) Landlords.<br>(C) Lawyers.<br>(D) Tenants.  | 9. What length of time does the speaker recommend for a lease?<br>(A) Four years.<br>(B) Five years.<br>(C) Nine years.<br>(D) Ten years. |
| 8. What should a business owner do before signing a lease?<br>(A) Make sure her business is successful.<br>(B) Look at the neighborhood.<br>(C) Get more customers.<br>(D) Occupy the space. |   |

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

10. The president was \_\_\_\_\_ about adding more space to the factory.  
(A) apprehend                    (C) apprehension  
(B) apprehensive                (D) apprehended

11. The financial \_\_\_\_\_ of our business don't allow us to lease an office with such a high monthly rent.  
(A) circumstances              (C) circumstantially  
(B) circumstantial             (D) circumstanced

12. The real estate agent couldn't determine how to best work with a company that placed so many \_\_\_\_\_ on everything that they did.  
(A) conditional                  (C) conditioned  
(B) condition                    (D) conditions

13. The buyer \_\_\_\_\_ with a nod of his head that he was placing a bid on the property.  
(A) indicates                    (C) indicated  
(B) indication                  (D) indicator

14. \_\_\_\_\_ as it does, I don't understand how anyone can depend on that country's market to provide a safe investment.  
(A) Fluctuated                  (C) Fluctuation  
(B) Fluctuating                (D) Fluctuate

15. The lawyers signed the papers and the company took \_\_\_\_\_ of the new building.  
(A) occupied                    (C) occupancy  
(B) occupants                  (D) occupying

## Part 6 Text Completion

**For Rent**

Large, sunny office in prime downtown location. We are seeking a tenant to take over the lease from the current occupant, who must leave due to unforeseen circumstances. The new tenant will take over the six months remaining on the lease and will have the option to renew for an additional year. The office has been recently repainted and is in excellent condition. Call 567-0943 between 10:00 and 4:00 Monday through Friday to make an appointment to see the space.

16. (A) to  
(B) of  
(C) by  
(D) on

17. (A) optionally  
(B) optional  
(C) option  
(D) opt

18. (A) fluctuation  
(B) indication  
(C) apprehension  
(D) condition

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following e-mail message.

To: Ted Van Dorn  
 From: Bernadette Riley  
 Subject: Office space  
 Date: April 10

Ted,

I have found the solution to our office problems. I know that you have been wanting to get out of the neighborhood where our office is currently located, but that you have been apprehensive about the cost of renting in a better neighborhood. I have found an office downtown that I am sure we can afford. It is a bit smaller than our current space, but I think it will be big enough. The best part is, the rent is the same as we are paying now. This is due to the fact that the office is not in excellent condition. However, I think it will be easy for us to paint it and make a few small repairs. The space will be available for occupancy on the fifteenth of next month. We have the option of signing a one- or two-year lease, so we won't have to lock ourselves into a long-term contract. However, in order to get the low rent, we have to sign by the thirtieth of this month. If you are interested in this, I can arrange for you to see the space this weekend. Let me know as soon as possible.

Berni

19. Why doesn't Ted like his current office?
- It is in a bad location.
  - It is too expensive.
  - It isn't big enough.
  - It isn't in good condition.
20. When can Ted and Bernadette move into the new office?
- April 10.
  - April 15.
  - May 10.
  - May 15.
21. What do they have to do before the end of this month?
- Paint the office.
  - Sign the lease.
  - Change the locks.
  - Leave their old office.
22. The word *apprehensive* in line 3 is closest in meaning to
- certain
  - relaxed
  - anxious
  - delighted
23. The word *option* in line 8 is closest in meaning to
- choice
  - desire
  - necessity
  - requirement

**Word Review #6****Lessons 26–30 Management Issues**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

1. The owner of the new company personally \_\_\_\_\_ every expense.  
 (A) scrutiny  
 (B) scrutinize  
 (C) scrutinized  
 (D) scrutinizing
2. Several employees will \_\_\_\_\_ on designing the office for efficiency.  
 (A) collaborate  
 (B) collaborated  
 (C) collaborating  
 (D) collaboration
3. When there is a problem with company policy, it should be \_\_\_\_\_ before the board of directors.  
 (A) bring up  
 (B) bring in  
 (C) brought up  
 (D) brought in
4. The quality control department felt it was making good \_\_\_\_\_ when the number of defects declined.  
 (A) progress  
 (B) progressed  
 (C) progressing  
 (D) progressive
5. \_\_\_\_\_ goods can ruin the future of a new company.  
 (A) Defect  
 (B) Defects  
 (C) Defective  
 (D) Defection
6. The public's \_\_\_\_\_ of a company depends on how solidly the company stands behind its products.  
 (A) perceive  
 (B) perceptive  
 (C) perceived  
 (D) perception
7. The market research matched our \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) assumes  
 (B) assuming  
 (C) assumed  
 (D) assumptions
8. Determining the safeness of a particular appliance requires a \_\_\_\_\_ investigation of the electrical components.  
 (A) system  
 (B) systems  
 (C) systematic  
 (D) systematize
9. When \_\_\_\_\_ office space, it is wise to insist upon an option to renew.  
 (A) lease  
 (B) leasing  
 (C) leased  
 (D) lessor
10. \_\_\_\_\_ a lease might be expensive.  
 (A) Getting in  
 (B) Getting on  
 (C) Getting off of  
 (D) Getting out of

*Choose the one word or phrase that best completes each sentence.*

To: m\_schwartz@donner.com  
 From: j\_holmes@blitzen.com  
 Subject: board meeting

Mary,

We all missed you at yesterday's meeting, but you will be happy to know it went well. We were able to adhere \_\_\_\_\_ 11 the agenda and cover all topics in the allotted time. Wilbur gave a \_\_\_\_\_ 12 explanation of the budget, and now I feel we all understand it quite thoroughly. He plans to e-mail you a copy of his notes. The meeting \_\_\_\_\_ 13 on time, at 5:00. The next meeting is scheduled for June 16.

John

11. (A) to  
 (B) at  
 (C) of  
 (D) in
12. (A) length  
 (B) lengthy  
 (C) lengthen  
 (D) lengthily
13. (A) had concluded  
 (B) has concluded  
 (C) concluded  
 (D) concludes

Our job here in the Quality Control Department is to make sure that no garment leaves the factory in less than perfect condition. This means that each garment 14 carefully by a trained garment inspector. We throw out all 15 garments. It is important to protect our 16 and make sure that the name of our company is always associated with top-quality products.

14. (A) inspects  
 (B) is inspected  
 (C) is inspecting  
 (D) has inspected
15. (A) defect  
 (B) defects  
 (C) detective  
 (D) defective
16. (A) lobby  
 (B) research  
 (C) brand  
 (D) wrinkle

Dear Mr. Wilcox,

Your lease for the office you 17 at 121 North Main Street will expire next month. I will be very happy to have you renew the lease if you desire. You have occupied that space for a 18, and during those ten years you have always been a reliable tenant. Unfortunately, 19 to rising costs everywhere, I will have to raise the rent on that space by 20 percent. I hope this won't cause you any hardship. Please let me know if you are still interested in renewing the lease, and I will have my assistant send one over to you.

Sincerely,

Amanda Brightwood

17. (A) occupy  
 (B) occupied  
 (C) occupant  
 (D) occupancy
18. (A) month  
 (B) semester  
 (C) decade  
 (D) century
19. (A) because  
 (B) up  
 (C) ought  
 (D) due

## Lesson 31

### WORDS TO LEARN

appeal  
arrive  
compromise  
daringly  
familiar  
guide  
majority  
mix  
rely  
secure  
subjective  
suggestion

# Selecting a Restaurant

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **appeal** n., the ability to attract
  - a. A restaurant with good food and reasonable prices has a lot of appeal.
  - b. The pleasing decor and friendly waiters are what give that restaurant its appeal.
2. **arrive** v., to reach a destination
  - a. By the time our meal arrived, it was cold.
  - b. Frank arrived at the restaurant only minutes after Claudia left.
3. **compromise** n., a settlement of differences; v., to settle differences
  - a. The couple made a compromise and ordered food to take out.
  - b. John doesn't like sweet dishes so I compromised by adding just a small amount of sugar.
4. **daringly** adj., bravely
  - a. We daringly ordered the raw squid.
  - b. Bob daringly asked to see the menu in French.
5. **familiar** adj., often encountered or seen; common
  - a. It's nice to see some familiar items on the menu.
  - b. The chef blends the familiar tastes with the unusual.
6. **guide** n., one who leads, directs, or gives advice; a guidebook
  - a. The guide led our tour group to a small restaurant only known to the locals.
  - b. I don't know where to go, so why don't we consult the guide.
7. **majority** n., the greater number or part
  - a. The majority of the group wanted to try the new Chinese restaurant.
  - b. Claude was in the majority, so he was very pleased with the decision.
8. **mix** v., to combine or blend into one mass; n., a combination
  - a. The daring chef mixed two uncommon ingredients.
  - b. The mix of bright colors on the plate was very pleasing.
9. **rely** v., to have confidence in; to depend on
  - a. I have always relied on the restaurant advice this guidebook gives.
  - b. I seldom rely on the restaurant reviews in the paper when choosing a restaurant.
10. **secure** v., to get possession of; to obtain
  - a. Despite the popularity of the restaurant, Max was able to secure reservations for this evening.
  - b. The hostess secured us another chair, so we could eat together.
11. **subjective** adj., particular to a given person; highly personal; not objective
  - a. Food preferences are subjective and not everyone agrees on what tastes good.
  - b. The reviews in this guidebook are highly subjective, but fun to read.
12. **suggestion** n., a proposal; advice
  - a. Can I make a suggestion about what to order?
  - b. We followed the waiter's suggestion and ordered one of the specials.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

appeal	daring	majority	secure
arrive	familiar	mix	subjective
compromise	guidance	relies	suggestion

When Atul is trying to impress business contacts who are potential new clients, he takes them to the best restaurant in town. He hopes this will help (1) \_\_\_\_\_ a new contract for his telecommunications business.

It's hard to determine which restaurants are best. Atul (2) \_\_\_\_\_ on newspaper and magazine reviews. He also asks his friends and colleagues for (3) \_\_\_\_\_. They are happy to make a (4) \_\_\_\_\_.

Food tastes are (5) \_\_\_\_\_. Although Atul likes to be (6) \_\_\_\_\_ and take risks, he knows that the food should (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to a variety of palates. He wants the (8) \_\_\_\_\_ of his guests to be happy. He usually decides to (9) \_\_\_\_\_ on a restaurant that offers a menu with a (10) \_\_\_\_\_ of (11) \_\_\_\_\_ standards and some exciting specials.

When he calls to book the table, he tells the person taking the reservation what time his party will (12) \_\_\_\_\_ and the number of people he needs seating for.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	appeal	On a beautiful spring day, a sidewalk café appeals to many people.
noun	appeal	That restaurant has been around for a long time but it hasn't lost its appeal.
adjective	appealing	An ice-cold drink seems very appealing on a hot day.

verb	dare	I prefer familiar things and don't usually dare to try new restaurants.
adjective	daring	Kobi had more daring tastes than the rest of his family.
adverb	daringly	Jane daringly refused a fork and attempted to eat her entire meal with chopsticks.

verb	guide	The hostess guided us to our table.
noun	guidance	Li asked the waiter for guidance in selecting the wine.
adjective	guidable	Finding the patrons to be very guidable, the waiter steered them to the most expensive items on the menu.

verb	mix	The chef was famous for mixing unfamiliar ingredients.
noun	mixture	The texture of the vegetable mixture was too lumpy for my taste.
adjective	mixable	Oil and water are not mixable.

verb	rely	We will rely on the hostess's recommendations.
noun	reliability	The reliability of deliveries became a problem for the manager.
adjective	reliable	Hiring a reliable staff is the first priority for every restaurant manager.

verb	suggest	Can I suggest a good wine to go with the entrée?
noun	suggestion	Clark asked his boss for a suggestion for a good place to eat.
adjective	suggestible	The patrons were in a suggestible mood, and were easily convinced to have dessert.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. (A) (B) (C) (D)

#### Part 2 Question–Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. (A) (B) (C)      3. (A) (B) (C)

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. How often do restaurant reviews appear in the local newspaper?<br>(A) Every day.<br>(B) Every week.<br>(C) Every month.<br>(D) Every year.                              | 6. Who recommends restaurants to the man?<br>(A) His friends.<br>(B) His mother.<br>(C) His brother.<br>(D) His coworkers. |
| 5. What is the speakers' opinion of restaurant reviews?<br>(A) They are appealing.<br>(B) They are usually helpful.<br>(C) They are very subjective.<br>(D) They are mean. |  |

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 7. Where is the listener now?<br>(A) At home.<br>(B) In the bar.<br>(C) At the restaurant.<br>(D) In the parking lot.  | 9. What time is the reservation for?<br>(A) 7:30.<br>(B) 8:00.<br>(C) 8:30.<br>(D) 11:00. |
| 8. What does the speaker suggest?<br>(A) Driving to the restaurant.<br>(B) Arriving early for drinks.<br>(C) Making a reservation.<br>(D) Bringing a big appetite. |   |

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## Part 6 Text Completion

Are you looking for a delicious lunch experience that won't empty your wallet?

Try the Blue Shutters Café.

Our varied menu 16 to all tastes.

We're famous for our homemade soups, garden-fresh salads, and freshly baked breads and pastries.

Try our homemade pies in all flavors from 17 favorites like apple pie to exotic choices such as loganberry and chestnut meringue.

But 18 on our word alone. Come on down and try for yourself.  
We're open Monday through Saturday from 11:00 A.M. until 2:30 P.M.

Read about the Blue Shutters Café in the recent edition of the local restaurant guide "Restaurants of Riverdale."

16. (A) appeal  
(B) appeals  
(C) appealed  
(D) are appealing

17. (A) famously  
(B) famished  
(C) familiar  
(D) family

18. (A) no rely  
(B) not rely  
(C) not to rely  
(D) don't rely

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following restaurant review and e-mail message.

The Mountain View Restaurant is a charming dinner location that just opened up in Falls Village. The menu provides an interesting mix of both meat and vegetarian entrées. The chef, who trained in Paris, has introduced some exotic dishes such as Octopus Soufflé and Three Tuber Salad. For the less daring diner, the menu also abounds in such familiar choices as Baked Chicken and Pepper Crusted Steak. Whether you choose to rely on a familiar dish or decide to experiment with something exotic, you are sure to be delighted with your meal. All the selections I tasted were delicious, and the prices are quite reasonable. Don't forget to leave room for dessert. I especially suggest the chocolate cake. It's the best in town. Unfortunately, the charm of the menu selections is not matched by the charm of the décor. It is rather drab and uninspiring. If you visit the inn on a weekend evening, arrive by 6:00 since the restaurant does not take reservations, and it is difficult to get a table after 7:00 unless you are willing to wait half an hour or more.

To: Margaret Smithers  
From: Anna Simpson  
Subject: Dinner out

Hi Margaret,

Did you read the review of the Mountain View Inn in this Sunday's *Falls Village Times*? It sounds great. I usually read the restaurant reviews in that paper, and the majority of them are quite accurate. I rely on those reviews a great deal more than the ones in our local restaurant guide. I think we should try the inn. Are you free Saturday night? I think we should arrive at the time suggested in the paper. Then we can have a relaxed meal and still have time to go to an 8:30 movie afterwards. Can you do it? Let me know before you leave work today.

Anna

19. What is the reviewer's opinion of the restaurant?  
 (A) The prices are too high.  
 (B) The food is very good.  
 (C) The décor is exotic.  
 (D) The menu is boring.
20. What does the reviewer recommend ordering?  
 (A) Octopus soufflé.  
 (B) Tuber salad.  
 (C) Baked chicken.  
 (D) Chocolate cake.
21. When does Anna want to arrive at the restaurant?  
 (A) Before 6:00.  
 (B) After 7:00.  
 (C) At 8:00.  
 (D) By 8:30.
22. The word *mix* in line 3 of the restaurant review is closest in meaning to  
 (A) style  
 (B) combination  
 (C) number  
 (D) course
23. The word *majority* in line 4 of the e-mail is closest in meaning to  
 (A) few  
 (B) some  
 (C) most  
 (D) several

## Lesson 32

### WORDS TO LEARN

basic  
complete  
excite  
flavor  
forget  
ingredient  
judge  
mix-up  
patron  
predict  
randomly  
remind

# Eating Out

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **basic** adj., serving as a starting point or basis; simple
  - a. The new restaurant offers a very basic menu.
  - b. The restaurant manager ordered enough basic supplies to get through the first month.
2. **complete** v., to finish or make whole
  - a. We ordered some dessert to complete our meal.
  - b. Some restaurants want to hear their customers' opinions and ask them to complete a short evaluation form.
3. **excite** v., to arouse an emotion
  - a. Exotic flavors always excite me.
  - b. The new Asian restaurant has excited the interest of many people.
4. **flavor** n., a distinctive taste
  - a. Fusion cooking is distinguished by an interesting mix of flavors.
  - b. The cook changed the flavor of the soup with a unique blend of herbs.
5. **forget** v., to be unable to remember
  - a. The waiter forgot to bring the rolls, annoying the customer.
  - b. Don't forget to tell your friends what a great meal you had tonight.
6. **ingredient** n., an element in a mixture
  - a. The chef went to the farmer's market to select the freshest ingredients for tonight's menu.
  - b. I was unfamiliar with some of the ingredients in the dish.
7. **judge** v., to form an opinion
  - a. Hector was not familiar with Asian cooking, so he was unable to judge if the noodles were cooked correctly.
  - b. The restaurant review harshly judged the quality of the service.
8. **mix-up** n., a confusion
  - a. There was a mix-up in the kitchen so your order will be delayed.
  - b. There was a mix-up about the ingredients and the dish was ruined.
9. **patron** n., a customer, especially a regular customer
  - a. Once the word was out about the new chef, patrons lined up to get into the restaurant.
  - b. This restaurant has many loyal patrons.
10. **predict** v., to state, tell about, or make known in advance
  - a. I predicted this restaurant would become popular and I was right.
  - b. Kona was unable to predict what time Andy, who is always late, would show up at the restaurant.
11. **randomly** adv., without any specific pattern
  - a. We randomly made our selections from the menu.
  - b. That chef chooses his spices randomly, but his dishes always taste great.
12. **remind** v., to cause to remember
  - a. Ms. Smith was annoyed at having to remind the waitress to bring the check.
  - b. I reminded the client that we are meeting for dinner tomorrow.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

basic	flavor	judged	predict
complete	forget	mix up	randomly
excite	ingredients	patrons	remind

The key to a happy meal is that everyone should enjoy eating what they ordered. Before the waiter takes your order, you can ask him for a recommendation or you can select (1) \_\_\_\_\_ from the menu.

Good service is part of the overall enjoyment of the meal. The waiter should make the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ feel welcome and comfortable. Good waiters can (3) \_\_\_\_\_ what you need, like more water, without having to be asked for it. It's easy for a waiter to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ something, but you should not have to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ a waiter more than once to bring you something. Nor do you want the waiter to (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the food orders. You should get what you ordered, and your order should be (7) \_\_\_\_\_.

The quality of the food is the primary way restaurants are (8) \_\_\_\_\_. The food should taste and look wonderful. Your plate of food should (9) \_\_\_\_\_ all your senses and be fragrant and colorful. Even the most (10) \_\_\_\_\_ or familiar dishes can taste different from restaurant to restaurant. A chef can bring out a distinct (11) \_\_\_\_\_ in a dish, depending on the (12) \_\_\_\_\_ he or she uses.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	complete	The meal could not be completed without dessert.
noun	completion	The coffee was the last item ordered and brought the meal to completion.
adverb	completely	The chef forgot that the dessert was in the oven and completely ruined it.

verb	excite	The chef knows how to excite his patrons.
noun	excitement	You can feel the excitement in the air.
adjective	excited	I am really excited about trying out this new restaurant.

verb	flavor	I like a chef who uses exotic spices to flavor the food.
noun	flavor	Some people don't like Mexican food because the flavors are too spicy.
adjective	flavorful	The special ingredients made the dish very flavorful.

verb	forget	Don't forget to bring us the check.
adjective	forgetful	The forgetful waitress put a burden on the rest of the staff.
adjective	forgettable	The meal was bland and forgettable.

verb	mix up	An inexperienced waiter can easily mix up orders.
noun	mix-up	We had a big mix-up in our plans and I ended up waiting for my friends at the wrong restaurant.
adjective	mixed up	Bob always gets mixed up when he tries to order food at a foreign restaurant.

verb	predict	I predict that this restaurant will be a success.
noun	prediction	The manager's prediction came true, and the chef was named to the "Top 100" list.
adverb	predictably	Predictably, because the waiter neglected to write down the order, he forgot some necessary items.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. (A) (B) (C) (D)

**Part 2 Question–Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. (A) (B) (C)      3. (A) (B) (C)

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>4. What are the speakers discussing?<br/>           (A) The flavor of the food.<br/>           (B) Their last vacation.<br/>           (C) The restaurant décor.<br/>           (D) The serving dishes.</p> <p>5. What does the man want to do?<br/>           (A) Take a rest.<br/>           (B) Return to the restaurant.<br/>           (C) Forget about the restaurant.<br/>           (D) Get a new set of dishes.</p> | <p>6. What does the woman predict?<br/>           (A) The restaurant will close soon.<br/>           (B) The flavor of the dishes will improve.<br/>           (C) The waiter will be very patient.<br/>           (D) The restaurant will become popular.</p> |
|---|--|

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>7. Who is speaking?<br/>           (A) The kitchen assistant.<br/>           (B) The head chef.<br/>           (C) A patron.<br/>           (D) A waitress.</p> <p>8. What does the speaker offer?<br/>           (A) To cook the meal.<br/>           (B) To take the order.<br/>           (C) To bring some free food.<br/>           (D) To serve water.</p> | <p>9. When will the food be ready?<br/>           (A) In 2 minutes.<br/>           (B) In 8 minutes.<br/>           (C) In 15 minutes.<br/>           (D) In 50 minutes.</p> |
|---|--|

## **READING**

## Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## Part 6 Text Completion

One of the joys of traveling abroad is taking the opportunity to try out different kinds of food. Travelers should always make a point of eating the local dishes. It is exciting to try out dishes made with unfamiliar ingredients and unusual 16. Daring travelers can order 17 from the menu. Or, they can look at the dishes that other patrons are eating and order one that looks appealing. A traveler who doesn't speak the local language well can order by pointing to the dishes he wishes to order. That is the easiest way to avoid a mix 18. Finally, dessert should not be forgotten. A sweet treat at the end of the meal will complete the experience of enjoying foreign cooking.

16. (A) favors  
(B) flavors  
(C) fivers  
(D) fevers

17. (A) random  
(B) randomly  
(C) randomize  
(D) randomness

18. (A) up  
(B) in  
(C) of  
(D) out

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following advertisement.

Don't miss the Yorktown Festival of Food. This exciting annual event will take place May 10–16 at the Yorktown Fairgrounds.\* Over 100 local restaurants will participate. Which are the best restaurants in town? You be the judge! The price of admission includes:

- Samples of food from all participating restaurants
- Cooking demonstrations by local chefs
- Copies of recipes of some of Yorktown's favorite dishes, including ingredients lists and preparation instructions
- A free Festival of Food chef's hat and apron

Fifty festival ticket holders will be randomly selected to enjoy a meal especially prepared for the festival by world-renowned chef Jean Pierre de la Farge, director of the Paris School of Cuisine. You could be one of them! Get your tickets today. An unforgettable experience is guaranteed.

Tickets are available at all participating restaurants and at the Yorktown Office of Tourism. Ticket prices are \$15/day or \$50 for the entire week.

\*If rain is predicted, the event will take place in the Yorktown Sports Arena.

19. How often does the festival take place?
- Once a day.
  - Once a week.
  - Once a month.
  - Once a year.
20. What can people do at the festival?
- Try different kinds of food.
  - Cook a meal.
  - Judge a contest.
  - Buy hats and aprons.
21. What will 50 people win?
- A ticket.
  - A cooking lesson.
  - A free meal.
  - A trip to Paris.
22. The word *randomly* in line 11 is closest in meaning to
- quickly
  - by chance
  - beforehand
  - with determination
23. The word *predicted* in line 19 is closest in meaning to
- heavy
  - expected
  - falling
  - problematic

## Lesson 33

### WORDS TO LEARN

burden  
commonly  
delivery  
elegance  
fall to  
impress  
individual  
list  
multiple  
narrow  
pick up  
settle

# Ordering Lunch

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **burden** n., a responsibility; something that is carried
  - a. The secretary usually takes on the burden of ordering lunch for business meetings.
  - b. The deliveryman's back ached from the heavy burden he carried.
2. **commonly** adv., usually, habitually
  - a. The people who work in this building commonly order their lunch from the sandwich shop on the first floor.
  - b. The restaurants in this area commonly serve office workers and are only open during the week.
3. **delivery** n., the act of conveying or delivering
  - a. The caterer hired a courier to make the delivery.
  - b. The restaurant is reluctant to make deliveries, but makes an exception for our office.
4. **elegance** n., refinement, beauty, grace
  - a. The elegance of the restaurant made it a pleasant place to eat.
  - b. A sandwich may lack elegance, but it makes a convenient and inexpensive lunch.
5. **fall to** v., to become one's responsibility
  - a. The task of preparing the meal fell to the assistant chef when the chief chef was ill.
  - b. The menu was in French, so ordering for us fell to Monique, who spoke French.
6. **impress** v., to affect strongly, often favorably
  - a. I was impressed with how quickly they delivered our lunch.
  - b. If you want to impress the new staff member, order her a nice lunch.
7. **individual** adj., by or for one person; special; particular
  - a. We had the delivery man mark the contents of each individual order.
  - b. The jaunty whistle of the delivery woman marked her individual style.
8. **list** n., a series of names, words, or other items
  - a. The office manager compiled a list of everyone's order.
  - b. We keep a list of all the restaurants in this area that deliver.
9. **multiple** adj., having, relating to, or consisting of more than one part
  - a. The delivery person was not able to keep track of the multiple order, causing a food mix-up.
  - b. It takes multiple steps to get into this building, which frustrates all our employees.
10. **narrow** v., to limit or restrict
  - a. Etseko narrowed the restaurant possibilities down to three.
  - b. This restaurant delivers only pizza and sandwiches, so that certainly narrows down the choices.
11. **pick up** v., to take on passengers or freight
  - a. The delivery man picks up lunch orders on his motor scooter.
  - b. If you ask me nicely, I will pick up the order on my way home.
12. **settle** v., to make compensation for, to pay; to choose
  - a. We settled the bill with the cashier.
  - b. After much debate, we finally settled on the bistro on the corner.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

burdensome	elegant	individual	narrow
common	fails to	list	pick up
delivered	impress	multiple	settled

As the office manager, it usually (1) \_\_\_\_\_ Lucia to order the food for a working lunch or an office party. Lucia finds ordering food for a working lunch to be especially (2) \_\_\_\_\_. First, in order to avoid placing (3) \_\_\_\_\_ small orders from different food establishments, she must (4) \_\_\_\_\_ down the choice to one kind of food. The most (5) \_\_\_\_\_ choices are sandwiches and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ pizzas.

Once she has (7) \_\_\_\_\_ on a good choice, she calls a restaurant or other food service on her approved (8) \_\_\_\_\_. Usually she needs the food (9) \_\_\_\_\_ so she does not have to leave the office and (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the order herself.

In case of a more formal lunch, where her boss is trying to (11) \_\_\_\_\_ new clients, for example, Lucia will call a catering service that can provide a more (12) \_\_\_\_\_ meal.

## WORD FAMILIES

<b>verb</b>	burden	The frequently complicated lunch orders unfairly burdened Jacques.
<b>noun</b>	burden	In addition to all her other responsibilities, Marie had the burden of picking up the daily lunch order.
<b>adjective</b>	burdensome	Keeping track of everybody's lunch orders can be a burdensome task.

<b>noun</b>	in common	The two secretaries keep a file of restaurant menus in common to facilitate placing an order.
<b>adjective</b>	common	It is a common practice for restaurants to deliver.
<b>adverb</b>	commonly	It was commonly known that the sandwich shop had slow deliverymen.

<b>verb</b>	deliver	That restaurant delivers food at no extra charge.
<b>noun</b>	delivery	We all got very hungry waiting for the delivery to arrive.

<b>noun</b>	elegance	The elegance of the surroundings was accentuated by the wonderful meal the caterers delivered.
<b>adjective</b>	elegant	Delores set an elegant table that was sure to impress.
<b>adverb</b>	elegantly	The tasty appetizers were elegantly served from silver platters.

<b>verb</b>	impress	I am favorably impressed by how quickly the pizza was delivered.
<b>noun</b>	impression	She gave the impression that the food would be delivered within the hour.
<b>adjective</b>	impressionable	I have an impressionable child, so I don't like him to see deliverymen running red traffic lights.

<b>verb</b>	individualize	The take-out shop does not allow you to individualize your order by asking for substitutions.
<b>noun</b>	individual	The portions are large enough to feed two individuals.
<b>adverb</b>	individually	The individually marked boxes made it easy for us to claim our orders.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D.

#### Part 2 Question–Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 4. Why does the man want to have lunch at the office?<br>(A) It is burdensome to leave the office.<br>(B) He has a bad impression of the restaurant.<br>(C) The office is more elegant than the restaurant.<br>(D) He wants to show slides during lunch. | 6. What time will lunch be delivered?<br>(A) Noon.<br>(B) 1:00.<br>(C) 1:30.<br>(D) 2:00. |
| 5. Who will the man have lunch with?<br>(A) The woman.<br>(B) The sales staff.<br>(C) The regional manager.<br>(D) The conference attendees.   |   |

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 7. What takes 10 minutes?<br>(A) Delivering the order.<br>(B) Selecting a meal from the list.<br>(C) Getting the food ready to be picked up.<br>(D) Making a group order. | 9. What kind of food can be ordered from the Parkside Café?<br>(A) Rice.<br>(B) Meat.<br>(C) Sandwiches.<br>(D) Ice cream. |
| 8. How much does a delivery cost?<br>(A) 15 percent.<br>(B) 50 cents.<br>(C) It's free.<br>(D) 50 percent.  |  |

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## Part 6 Text Completion

Memo

To: All department staff  
From: J. Holtzman, Manager  
Re: Ordering Lunch

It has long been the practice in this department to order lunch to be served during department meetings. While this is a custom we all enjoy, it has become a 16 on our budget. Therefore, I have developed the following guidelines for ordering meeting lunches.

- We cannot afford to constantly order elegant lunches. Please limit your orders to common, everyday lunch choices such as sandwiches and salads.
  - There are many restaurants in the area that offer take-out lunches. I will 17 the choices down to three or four places that have reasonable prices, then let you know which they are. Please order only from the restaurants on the approved list.
  - We will no longer pay for delivery. All lunch orders must be 18 up in person.

Thank you in advance for your cooperation.

16. (A) burden  
(B) burglar  
(C) burnish  
(D) burnoose

17. (A) select  
(B) allow  
(C) enlarge  
(D) narrow

18. (A) stood  
(B) taken  
(C) looked  
(D) picked

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following advertisement and e-mail message.

**Now Open**

The Broad Street Eatery  
1001 Broad Street  
phone: 298-0943

Serving breakfast and lunch  
Monday–Saturday 6:30 A.M. – 2:30 P.M.

Don't settle for the common lunch  
choices you can find anywhere.

At the Broad Street Eatery,  
we offer a tempting range of soups,  
sandwiches, and salads for the discerning eater.

We specialize in take-out orders. Call ahead for pick up.

We also offer free delivery on all orders over \$30.  
(There is a 10 percent delivery charge on smaller orders.)

To: Molly Anderson  
From: Jerry Pinsky  
Subject: New restaurant

Hi Molly,

Have you heard about the Broad Street Eatery? It's that new place that opened up last month just around the corner. I think we should order the lunch for this Friday's meeting from there. Some of the menu choices look quite elegant and I'm sure will impress our clients. Best of all, the prices are quite reasonable. I'll send you a list later of what I want you to order. Since the order will be large, I think you should call it in the day before the meeting. I'm sure we'll qualify for the free delivery, so you won't have to worry about picking it up. That will lighten your burden a bit. Thanks for your help with this.

Jerry

19. When should Molly place the lunch order?  
 (A) Monday.  
 (B) Thursday.  
 (C) Friday.  
 (D) Saturday.
20. If the order costs \$45, how much will the delivery charge be?  
 (A) \$0.  
 (B) \$3.  
 (C) \$4.50.  
 (D) \$30.
21. What is Jerry's opinion of the restaurant?  
 (A) It's too far away.  
 (B) The prices are very high.  
 (C) It should be open later.  
 (D) The food looks good.
22. The word *common* in line 7 of the advertisement is closest in meaning to  
 (A) usual  
 (B) boring  
 (C) tasty  
 (D) different
23. The word *elegant* in line 5 of the e-mail is closest in meaning to  
 (A) ordinary  
 (B) expensive  
 (C) pleasing  
 (D) large

## Lesson 34

### WORDS TO LEARN

accustom to  
apprentice  
culinary  
demand  
draw  
incorporate  
influx  
method  
outlet  
profession  
relinquish  
theme

# Cooking as a Career

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **accustom to** v., to become familiar with, to become used to
  - a. Chefs must accustom themselves to working long hours.
  - b. It can be hard to accustom oneself to eating new types of food.
2. **apprentice** n., a student worker in a chosen field
  - a. Instead of attending cooking school, Raul chose to work as an apprentice with an experienced chef.
  - b. The cooking school has an apprentice program that places students in restaurants to gain work experience.
3. **culinary** adj., relating to the kitchen or cooking
  - a. The chef was widely known for his culinary artistry.
  - b. His interest in culinary arts drew him to a commercial foods program.
4. **demand** v., to require
  - a. Theodore was always exhausted because his new job at the restaurant demanded so much of him.
  - b. This style of cooking demands many exotic ingredients and a lot of preparation time.
5. **draw** v., to cause to come by attracting
  - a. We hope the new restaurant will draw other business to the area.
  - b. Matthew was drawn to a career in cooking.
6. **incorporate** v., to unite one thing with something else already in existence
  - a. Coca incorporated the patron's suggestions into her new menu.
  - b. Here are the fresh greens for you to incorporate into a salad.
7. **influx** n., a flowing in
  - a. An influx of new chefs is constantly needed to fill open jobs.
  - b. Due to the rise in popularity of cooking as a career, cooking schools report an influx of applications.
8. **method** n., a procedure
  - a. Gloria perfected a simple method for making croissants.
  - b. Many chefs borrow cooking methods from a variety of cultures and incorporate them into their cooking style.
9. **outlet** n., a means of release or gratification, as for energies, drives, or desires
  - a. Even before he became a professional baker, Jacob used baking as an outlet for frustration.
  - b. Many people find cooking to be a hands-on outlet for their creativity.
10. **profession** n., an occupation requiring considerable training and specialized study
  - a. Cooking is considered as much a profession as is law or medicine.
  - b. Lulu took up cooking as her profession and is very happy with her decision.
11. **relinquish** v., to let go; to surrender
  - a. People find it hard to relinquish their accustomed food preferences and try something new.
  - b. After Claude married Kiki, he had to relinquish his exclusive hold on the kitchen and learn to share the joys of cooking.
12. **theme** n., an implicit or recurrent idea; a motif
  - a. The caterers prepared food for a party with a tropical island theme.
  - b. The restaurant's food and decor demonstrated its southwestern theme.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

accustomed	demanding	influx	profession
apprenticeship	drawn	methods	relinquish
culinary	incorporate	outlet	themes

When people start thinking about careers, they may be looking for an (1) \_\_\_\_\_ for their creativity. Many people are (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to cooking as a career and see it as a (3) \_\_\_\_\_, not merely a trade. The restaurant business is (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and needs a constant (5) \_\_\_\_\_ of new talent.

Chefs (6) \_\_\_\_\_ ingredients and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of cooking from around the world into successful menus. Most chefs offer meals that are variations on standard (8) \_\_\_\_\_. They will try to stretch their patrons' range of food tastes by taking food that is still recognized as traditional and infusing it with something new, like a rare spice or seasoning. People (9) \_\_\_\_\_ to certain tastes and textures aren't going to (10) \_\_\_\_\_ their preferences immediately.

Chefs attend (11) \_\_\_\_\_ school or train in restaurants with experienced chefs, in an (12) \_\_\_\_\_. For those of you who like hands-on creativity, being a chef might be a good choice.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	accustom to	Shirley could not accustom herself to the demands of her new job.
noun	custom	It is the custom at this restaurant to offer free meals to patrons on their birthdays.
adjective	accustomed to	Janet has become accustomed to eating spicy food.

verb	apprentice	Instead of attending cooking school, Michael decided to apprentice to a master chef.
noun	apprentice	The new group of apprentices will start working any day now.
noun	apprenticeship	The apprenticeship was a grueling period, but George learned a lot.

verb	demand	The head chef demands a lot from his assistants.
noun	demand	Pierre could not keep up with the many demands of the customers.
adjective	demanding	Working as a chef is a very demanding job.

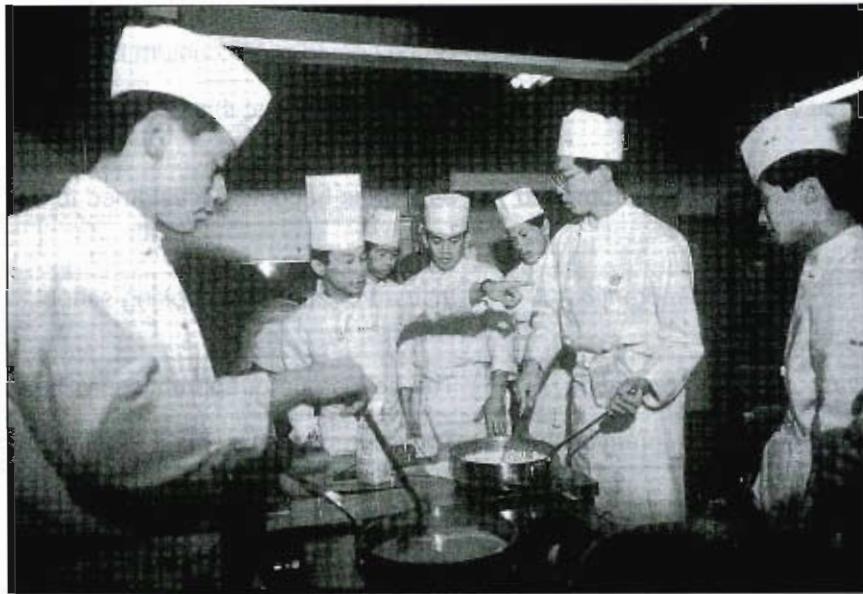
verb	incorporate	Take these items and incorporate them into a stew.
noun	incorporation	The restaurant was the incorporation of every good idea the chef had thought of in his career.
gerund	incorporating	Chef Tao was famous for incorporating different cooking styles into one.

noun	method	The chef discovered a more efficient method of peeling boiled eggs.
noun	methodology	Even the order of adding ingredients is an unappreciated aspect of cooking methodology.
adjective	methodical	The head cook was not so artistic as methodical in preparing standard dishes.

noun	profession	The number of people choosing cooking as a profession has risen over the past decade.
adjective	professional	She was professional in her approach to dealing with the problem of late deliveries.
adverb	professionally	Although the customer was rude and loud, the waiter handled the situation very professionally.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D.

**Part 2 Question–Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.                  3. A. B. C.

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>4. According to the conversation, what do good chefs do?<br/>           (A) Demand a lot from their assistants.<br/>           (B) Manage their restaurants well.<br/>           (C) Attract customers.<br/>           (D) Influence new chefs.</p> <p>5. What does the woman think of cooking as a career?<br/>           (A) It pays well.<br/>           (B) It's hard to manage.<br/>           (C) It's not worth the effort.<br/>           (D) It's very demanding.</p> | <p>6. What does the man plan to do?<br/>           (A) Take more rests.<br/>           (B) Eat at restaurants more often.<br/>           (C) Become a chef.<br/>           (D) Practice cooking</p> |
|---|---|

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>7. Who is this talk for?<br/>           (A) Cooking instructors.<br/>           (B) People who work in the culinary arts.<br/>           (C) People looking for a profession.<br/>           (D) Career counselors.</p> <p>8. What kind of people are attracted to the cooking profession?<br/>           (A) Bored.<br/>           (B) Demanding.<br/>           (C) Exciting.<br/>           (D) Creative.</p> | <p>9. What does the speaker recommend to become a professional chef?<br/>           (A) Becoming an apprentice.<br/>           (B) Reading cookbooks.<br/>           (C) Visiting restaurants around the world.<br/>           (D) Attending a culinary school.</p> |
|---|---|

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. Susannah is having a hard time becoming \_\_\_\_\_ to the long hours of her job at the restaurant.  
 (A) custom (C) accustoms to  
 (B) customs (D) accustomed to
11. The student accepted a six-month \_\_\_\_\_ with a famous chef.  
 (A) apprentice (C) apprenticing  
 (B) apprenticed (D) apprenticeship
12. The patrons at this restaurant are often \_\_\_\_\_, but they usually tip well.  
 (A) demands (C) demanding  
 (B) demanded (D) demand
13. I love this chef's cooking style, which \_\_\_\_\_ so many different tastes.  
 (A) incorporation (C) incorporating  
 (B) incorporates (D) incorporator
14. The experienced chef was \_\_\_\_\_ about the way he prepared his award-winning dish.  
 (A) method (C) methodically  
 (B) methodical (D) methodology
15. The \_\_\_\_\_ attitude of the staff is one of the keys to a restaurant's success.  
 (A) professional (C) profession  
 (B) professionalism (D) professionally

### Part 6 Text Completion

More and more people are choosing to become professional chefs. The number of students enrolled in culinary schools is growing every year. People choose this career for different reasons. Some 16 to a cooking career because of a love of food. Others find that cooking is the perfect 17 for their creativity. People traditionally think of Paris as the city where professional chefs are trained. However, fine culinary schools can be found all over the world. The 18 of a cooking career are great, but there are also many rewards.

16. (A) draw  
 (B) are drawn  
 (C) have drawn  
 (D) are drawing
17. (A) outlay  
 (B) output  
 (C) outage  
 (D) outlet
18. (A) demand  
 (B) demands  
 (C) demanders  
 (D) demanding

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following article.

Welcome to the National Institute of the Culinary Arts. You have chosen to enter a highly rewarding profession. People are drawn to this career for many different reasons, but you all have something in common—an appreciation of fine food. At the institute you will have the opportunity to study with some of the most highly skilled chefs in the world. In order to take the best advantage of this opportunity, you need to approach it with an open mind. Be ready to relinquish your old ideas about cooking and take in new ideas about the most artistic methods of preparing food. While at the institute, you will become accustomed to long hours, hard work, and also wonderful results. By the time you have finished with your coursework and are ready to start your apprenticeship, you will feel that you have accomplished much more than you ever expected to here at the institute. Please take the time to look over the following pages carefully as they contain all the information you need about course requirements, textbooks, apprenticeship opportunities, and the instructors at the institute.

19. Who is the audience for this article?  
(A) Students.  
(B) Instructors.  
(C) Working chefs.  
(D) Restaurant patrons.
20. What kind of place is the institute?  
(A) A restaurant.  
(B) A bookstore.  
(C) An art school.  
(D) A cooking school.
21. What does the writer ask the readers to do?  
(A) Start cooking.  
(B) Order more courses.  
(C) Keep reading.  
(D) Enjoy fine food.
22. The word *relinquish* in line 10 is closest in meaning to  
(A) let go  
(B) add to  
(C) share  
(D) discuss
23. The words *accustomed to* in line 13 are closest in meaning to  
(A) interested in  
(B) tired from  
(C) bored by  
(D) used to

# Lesson 35

## WORDS TO LEARN

assist  
coordinate  
dimension  
exact  
general  
ideally  
lead time  
plan  
proximity  
regulate  
site  
stage

# Events

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **assist** v., to give help or support to
  - a. Bonnie hired a secretary to assist her with the many details of the event.
  - b. The hotel manager was able to assist us with some last-minute advice.
2. **coordinate** v., to adjust or arrange parts to work together
  - a. Benet tried to coordinate all departments to make sure the event ran smoothly.
  - b. The colors of the flowers were ordered to coordinate with the colors in the corporate logo.
3. **dimension** n., a measure of width, height, or length
  - a. What are the dimensions of the ballroom?
  - b. We need the dimensions of the meeting rooms before we can determine how many chairs each will hold.
4. **exact** adj., characterized by accurate measurements or inferences
  - a. We will need an exact head count by noon tomorrow.
  - b. The exact measurements of the room are unknown, but we can guess.
5. **general** adj., involving only the main features rather than precise details
  - a. We have a general idea of how many guests will attend.
  - b. In general, about half the guests will bring their spouses.
6. **ideally** adj., perfectly; conforming to an ideal
  - a. Ideally, the location for the concert would have plenty of parking.
  - b. Lucy explained that ideally her wedding would take place on the beach, but she realized it might be difficult to arrange.
7. **lead time** n., the time between the initial stage of a project and the appearance of results
  - a. The lead time for reservations is unrealistic.
  - b. We will need to give the caterer enough lead time to cut the cake.
8. **plan** v., to formulate a scheme
  - a. We plan to get together tomorrow to discuss the menu.
  - b. Planning their wedding was a source of tension for the young couple.
9. **proximity** n., the state, quality, sense, or fact of being near or next to; closeness
  - a. The fans were worried by the proximity of the storm clouds.
  - b. An important factor in selecting the site was its close proximity to a parking garage.
10. **regulate** v., to control
  - a. The state strictly regulates the preparation of food for public consumption.
  - b. The site staff closely regulates how many cars can be brought on the grounds.
11. **site** n., a place or setting
  - a. Once we saw the site, we knew it would be perfect for the event.
  - b. The manager of the site was most helpful.
12. **stage** v., to exhibit or present
  - a. The gazebo outside was the perfect location from which to stage the cutting of the cake.
  - b. A historic house can be the perfect site to stage a small reception.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

assist	exact	lead time	regulations
coordinated	general	planning	site
dimensions	ideally	proximity	stage

Planning an event is not simple. There are hundreds of details that have to be (1) \_\_\_\_\_, whether it is a wedding or a business conference. Early in the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ process, you need to decide on the (3) \_\_\_\_\_. If you know where you want to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the event, you should contact the site representative for an (5) \_\_\_\_\_ description of the facility. The staff will provide you with information about room (6) \_\_\_\_\_; food and beverage arrangements, including whether there are local (7) \_\_\_\_\_ or restrictions for serving alcoholic beverages; and required (8) \_\_\_\_\_ for reserving the site.

If you decide that the first site is not (9) \_\_\_\_\_ suited for your specific requirements, a guidebook will (10) \_\_\_\_\_ you in finding an alternative setting. In considering location, you should also think about its (11) \_\_\_\_\_ to public transportation.

With a (12) \_\_\_\_\_ idea of how many people will attend, and how much money you can spend, you can narrow down the available sites to the ones that best accommodate the needs of your group.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	assist	Let me assist you with planning your next event.
noun	assistance	Dennis's idea of assistance is to call a professional firm for advice.
noun	assistant	In light of the number of events she had to run this year, Annu asked her boss for an assistant.

verb	coordinate	Ralph had a hard time coordinating the schedules of everybody involved in planning the event.
noun	coordination	Edna is a very good organizer, and coordination of events is one of her specialties.
noun	coordinator	The staff chose Marcel to be the coordinator for the company picnic.

verb	generalize	When we generalize, we must be aware of the many exceptions.
adjective	general	I need a general idea of what you want before I can provide specific answers.
adverb	generally	Although I cannot speak for every case, generally it is less expensive to buy in quantity.

verb	idealize	Rhoda idealized the location until she could no longer see any flaws in it.
adjective	ideal	A hotel with a large garden would be the ideal site for the reception.
adverb	ideally	Ideally, the site would be within our budget and have an outdoor area.

verb	plan	The committee planned to hold the luncheon in the office conference room rather than at a restaurant.
noun	plan	The finalized plans for the event will be presented at the staff meeting tomorrow.
noun	planner	Since she wanted to have a large wedding, Matilda decided to hire a wedding planner to help her make the arrangements.

verb	regulate	The state will regulate the food-handling precautions.
noun	regulation	Please obey the state regulations regarding serving alcohol to minors.
adjective	regulatory	Even though it is private, the country club's kitchen is subject to the rules of regulatory agencies.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D.

**Part 2 Question–Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. What are the speakers discussing?<br>(A) The wedding coordinator.<br>(B) The place for the wedding reception.<br>(C) The decorations for the reception.<br>(D) The wedding date. | 6. When do they have to sign the contract?<br>(A) Right now.<br>(B) Later today.<br>(C) This week.<br>(D) In four weeks. |
| 5. Where does the man want to hold the wedding reception?<br>(A) At a hotel.<br>(B) In a park.<br>(C) At a club.<br>(D) In his backyard.  |  |

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 7. What event is being planned?<br>(A) A meeting.<br>(B) An awards ceremony.<br>(C) A formal dance.<br>(D) An office party. | 9. What kind of site are they looking for?<br>(A) One that is near the office.<br>(B) A small one.<br>(C) One that has a stage.<br>(D) An inexpensive one. |
| 8. When will the event take place?<br>(A) Next week.<br>(B) Next month.<br>(C) In the afternoon.<br>(D) Next weekend.       |  |

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## Part 6 Text Completion

The most important part of 16 a successful event is to give yourself plenty of lead time. You don't want to leave important details until the last minute. Ideally, you should give yourself several weeks to plan your event, or several months if it will be a large affair. The first step is to find a suitable 17 for your event. You want a place that is pleasant and convenient. You also need a place that is the right size. If you have even a general idea of the number of guests you can expect to attend, it will be easy to calculate the 18 of the room that you will need. Many places that rent rooms for events can also provide food and entertainment, and may also assist you with your plans.

16. (A) plan  
(B) plans  
(C) to plan  
(D) planning

17. (A) site  
(B) stage  
(C) assistant  
(D) regulation

18. (A) dimities  
(B) dimmers  
(C) dimensions  
(D) diminishments

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following advertisement and e-mail message.

Hold your next event at the  
**Starlight Hotel**  
The grandest hotel in Weston

Are you planning a party, banquet, reception, or conference? We have the ideal location for you. We can accommodate groups of all sizes. Choose from any of our elegant event rooms:

The Garden View Room—holds up to 100 people  
 The Starlight Room—holds up to 200 people  
 The Banquet Hall—holds up to 250 people  
 The Stardust Ballroom—holds up to 350 people

We are ready to assist you with planning food, entertainment, invitations, and decorations.

We are conveniently located in the heart of the downtown entertainment district, in proximity to major bus and subway lines.

Contact Prisca Haines, Site Coordinator  
 phone: 953-9172  
 e-mail: p\_haines@starlight.com

To: Prisca Haines  
 From: Peter Richards  
 Subject: Event room  
 Date: September 22

Dear Ms. Haines,

I saw the ad for event rooms at the Starlight Hotel in the *Weston Daily News* of September 20th. I am coordinating our company's annual awards banquet, which will be held on the 18th of next month. We would like to stage a simple but elegant affair. We don't expect more than about 75–85 guests. We would like to have a dinner followed by speeches and presentations of awards. Other than that, we don't plan to have any special entertainment. I would like to discuss the menu with you. Ideally, we would like to provide our guests with a choice of a meat entrée and a vegetarian entrée. I would like to know if your hotel kitchen can provide that, and which dishes you would specifically recommend.

Please call me before the weekend to discuss planning this event. I can be reached at 953-0955. Thank you.

Peter Richards

19. When will the company banquet take place?  
 (A) This weekend.  
 (B) September 20.  
 (C) September 22.  
 (D) October 18.
20. Which room will Ms. Haines probably recommend for the banquet?  
 (A) The Garden View Room.  
 (B) The Starlight Room.  
 (C) The Banquet Hall.  
 (D) The Stardust Ballroom.
21. What will Mr. Richards need assistance with?  
 (A) The entertainment.  
 (B) The decorations.  
 (C) The invitations.  
 (D) The food.

22. The word *ideal* in line 5 of the advertisement is closest in meaning to  
 (A) large  
 (B) perfect  
 (C) beautiful  
 (D) convenient
23. The word *coordinating* in line 3 of the e-mail is closest in meaning to  
 (A) hosting  
 (B) presenting  
 (C) arranging  
 (D) discussing

**Word Review #7****Lessons 31–35 Restaurants and Events**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

1. The aroma coming from the restaurant was so \_\_\_\_\_ that the tourists did not hesitate before entering.  
 (A) appeal  
 (B) appealed  
 (C) appealing  
 (D) appeals
2. Because the menu was not in his native language, the visitor asked the waiter for \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) guide  
 (B) guided  
 (C) guiding  
 (D) guidance
3. The waiter \_\_\_\_\_ that the customer would enjoy the duck.  
 (A) predict  
 (B) predicted  
 (C) predicting  
 (D) prediction
4. Food critics are also expected to \_\_\_\_\_ a restaurant's service and atmosphere.  
 (A) judge  
 (B) judges  
 (C) judging  
 (D) judgment
5. The host usually \_\_\_\_\_ the check for his guest.  
 (A) picks over  
 (B) picks on  
 (C) picks off  
 (D) picks up
6. Sometimes diners request \_\_\_\_\_, or "separate," checks.  
 (A) individuality  
 (B) Individually  
 (C) individual  
 (D) individualize
7. The most \_\_\_\_\_ customers seem to be the worst tippers.  
 (A) demand  
 (B) demanded  
 (C) demanding  
 (D) demandingly
8. Food preparation is not just frying hamburgers; it is a respected \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) profess  
 (B) professing  
 (C) profession  
 (D) professional
9. An event planner must \_\_\_\_\_ the entire affair, not just choose the menu.  
 (A) coordinated  
 (B) coordinating  
 (C) coordinator  
 (D) coordinate
10. The planner must also ensure that participants observe all local \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) regulated  
 (B) regulations  
 (C) regulating  
 (D) regulate

*Choose the one word or phrase that best completes each sentence.*

To: Robert Hughes  
 From: Betsy Wyman  
 Subject: re: places to eat

Hi Rob,

I got your message asking for ideas about places to take your clients to dinner. I have a great 11 for you. The Waterfall Room is a fantastic restaurant that just opened on Maple Avenue. The atmosphere is pleasant and the food is very good. If you 12 before 6:30, you can get the dinner special—a complete three-course meal including a glass of wine—for only \$30. It's a great deal. I really think this is the best place in town to enjoy an 13 meal at a reasonable price. Let me know how you like it.

Betsy

11. (A) suggest  
 (B) suggesting  
 (C) suggestion  
 (D) suggestible
12. (A) arrive  
 (B) demand  
 (C) appeal  
 (D) predict
13. (A) elegantly  
 (B) elegance  
 (C) elegies  
 (D) elegant

To: Sue Evans  
 From: Ron Smith  
 Subject: lunch tomorrow

Sue,

George will be out of the office all week, so it will 14 you to order the lunch for tomorrow's staff meeting. We always order from Sam's Deli. We'll need enough for 15 people. Look at their list of sandwiches and order three or four different kinds. 15 to order a variety of desserts, too. People always like a sweet treat with their meal. Please make sure that the food 16 by noon tomorrow. Thanks.

Ron

14. (A) pick up  
 (B) fall to  
 (C) rely on  
 (D) mix up
15. (A) No forget  
 (B) Not forget  
 (C) No forgetting  
 (D) Don't forget
16. (A) delivers  
 (B) is delivered  
 (C) is delivering  
 (D) will deliver

Do you have what it takes to become a professional chef? The first requirement, of course, is an interest in the 17 arts. There is no point in becoming a chef if you don't love fine food. You will also need to be willing to work long hours because this is a very 18 profession. In addition, you will need leadership qualities. A working chef has 19 the work of everyone in the kitchen.

17. (A) fine  
 (B) visual  
 (C) culinary  
 (D) performing
18. (A) demand  
 (B) demander  
 (C) demanded  
 (D) demanding
19. (A) to coordinate  
 (B) coordinating  
 (C) coordinates  
 (D) coordinate

## Lesson 36

### WORDS TO LEARN

agent  
announcement  
beverage  
blanket  
board  
claim  
delay  
depart  
embarkation  
itinerary  
prohibit  
valid

# General Travel

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **agent** n., a representative of a company
  - a. A travel agent can usually find you the best deals on tickets and hotels.
  - b. You can buy your ticket from the ticket agent at the train station right before you get on the train.
2. **announcement** n., a public notification
  - a. Did you hear an announcement about our new departure time?
  - b. I expect an announcement any time now about a snow emergency at the airport.
3. **beverage** n., a drink other than plain water
  - a. The flight attendant offered all passengers a cold beverage during the flight.
  - b. The restaurant had a range of beverages on the drinks menu, including soft drinks and juices.
4. **blanket** n., a covering for keeping warm, especially during sleep; any full coverage; v., to cover uniformly
  - a. It's going to be a cold night so I'll ask housekeeping to send an extra blanket for our bed.
  - b. The snow blanketed the windshield, making it difficult to see the roads.
5. **board** v., to enter a boat, plane, or train
  - a. For security reasons, visitors are not allowed in the area of the airport where passengers board the planes.
  - b. We will board the train for New York in ten minutes.
6. **claim** v., to take as rightful; to retrieve
  - a. Please proceed directly to the baggage arrival area to claim your luggage.
  - b. Lost luggage can be claimed at the airline office.
7. **delay** v., to postpone until a later time
  - a. The bus was delayed due to inclement weather.
  - b. The heavy traffic delayed our arrival at the train station.
8. **depart** v., to go away or leave; to vary from a regular course of action.
  - a. After the wedding, the married couple departed for their honeymoon in Morocco.
  - b. We're going to depart from our usual policy and allow you to leave work early one day a week.
9. **embarkation** n., the process of getting on a plane or ship
  - a. Cruise passengers are given a pass for embarkation when they check in at the dock.
  - b. The flight crew must check the passengers' documents before embarkation.
10. **itinerary** n., a proposed route for a journey, showing dates and means of travel
  - a. He reviewed the itinerary the travel agent had faxed him before purchasing the ticket.
  - b. I had to change my itinerary when I decided to add two more countries to my vacation.
11. **prohibit** v., to forbid by authority or to prevent
  - a. We were prohibited from wearing casual clothes in the office.
  - b. Airline regulations prohibit the passengers from having beverages open during takeoff and landing.
12. **valid** adj., having legal efficacy or correctness
  - a. I need to make certain that my passport is valid if we plan to go overseas this December.
  - b. The officer's argument for increased airport security seemed valid at the time.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

agent	blanket	delayed	itinerary
announcements	board	depart	prohibited
beverage	claims	embarkation	valid

When Ms. Tan has to go on business travel, she calls her favorite travel (1) \_\_\_\_\_ . He reminds her to make sure that she takes a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ passport on her trip. Once her reservations have been made and confirmed, the travel agent will issue a ticket and an (3) \_\_\_\_\_ . Before leaving for the airport, she calls the airline to check if the flight is on time and has not been (4)\_\_\_\_\_.

At the airport, after checking in her suitcase at the check-in counter, since she is (5) \_\_\_\_\_ from taking more than one piece of carry-on luggage onto the plane, Ms. Tan receives her (6) \_\_\_\_\_ card. She will present this at the gate when it is time to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ her flight. She is told to be at the gate 15 minutes before the flight is to (8)\_\_\_\_\_. During the flight, the attendant may offer her a (9) \_\_\_\_\_ , and she can even request a (10) \_\_\_\_\_ if she is cold. The captain will make (11) \_\_\_\_\_ during the flight to let the passengers know at what altitude they are flying, and when they may expect to arrive at their destination.

Once the flight has landed, Ms. Tan disembarks and must go through customs after she (12) \_\_\_\_\_ her baggage. After this, she will take a cab to the hotel where she is staying, so she can rest and prepare for her meeting the next day. She will also reconfirm her return flight a day or two before she leaves to return home.

## WORD FAMILIES

<b>verb</b>	announce	The captain announced that the flight would be landing in approximately 15 minutes.
<b>noun</b>	announcement	The flight attendant made an announcement reminding the passengers that this was a no-smoking flight.
<b>noun</b>	announcer	The announcer gave the instructions for boarding, in three languages.

<b>verb</b>	board	You can't board the flight without an embarkation card.
<b>noun</b>	board	The board of directors met to discuss problems with the striking pilots.
<b>adjective</b>	onboard	The onboard telephone was expensive to use, but a true time-saver.

<b>verb</b>	claim	International passengers must proceed to customs as soon as they claim their baggage.
<b>noun</b>	claim	If the airline has lost your luggage, you can file a claim with the insurance company.
<b>noun</b>	claimant	There was a long line of claimants waiting at the lost luggage office.

<b>verb</b>	delay	Please don't delay me; I need to get to my gate immediately.
<b>noun</b>	delay	The delay in takeoff times was caused by a bad storm.

<b>verb</b>	depart	The flight will depart from Gate 25.
<b>noun</b>	departure	The pilot always reminds the flight attendants to make sure that all passengers are ready for departure.
<b>adjective</b>	departed	The house felt empty without the departed guests.

<b>verb</b>	validate	You can get your parking ticket validated at the concierge desk.
<b>noun</b>	validation	The restaurant received three stars, which is quite a validation of the chef's skills.
<b>adjective</b>	valid	Your ticket is no longer valid because it was issued over a year ago.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*

1. A B C D



#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A B C                  3. A B C

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |                                  |                           |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 4. Who is the man speaking with? | 6. When will they arrive? |
| (A) A pilot.                     | (A) In one hour.          |
| (B) A waitress.                  | (B) In two hours.         |
| (C) A travel agent.              | (C) In three hours.       |
| (D) A flight attendant.          | (D) In four hours.        |
5. What does the woman offer the man?
- (A) Something to eat.
  - (B) Something to read.
  - (C) Something to drink.
  - (D) Something to listen to.

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 7. What do passengers have to show the flight attendant? | 9. What is not allowed before takeoff? |
| (A) An embarkation card.                                 | (A) Talking on the phone.              |
| (B) A passport.  | (B) Selling things.                    |
| (C) A trip itinerary.                                    | (C) Drinking.                          |
| (D) A boarding pass.                                     | (D) Dining.                            |
8. When will the flight leave?
- (A) At 1:15.
  - (B) In twenty minutes.
  - (C) At nine o'clock.
  - (D) In five minutes.

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. The desk clerk \_\_\_\_\_ the change in gate numbers at least an hour ago.  
 (A) announcement      (C) announcer  
 (B) announcing      (D) announced
11. When it's time to \_\_\_\_\_ the flight, an announcement will be made.  
 (A) boarded      (C) board  
 (B) boarding      (D) boarder
12. As soon as John \_\_\_\_\_ his luggage, he went outside to look for a taxi.  
 (A) claim      (C) claimant  
 (B) claimed      (D) claims
13. The man had to \_\_\_\_\_ his travel plans because an emergency came up at work.  
 (A) delay      (C) delayed  
 (B) delaying      (D) delays
14. The train's \_\_\_\_\_ was delayed because of a problem on the track.  
 (A) departed      (C) departs  
 (B) departure      (D) depart
15. The airport applied a blanket rule that all passengers must be in possession of \_\_\_\_\_ tickets in order to enter the waiting area.  
 (A) valid      (C) validate  
 (B) validity      (D) validation

### Part 6 Text Completion

#### Information for Travelers

- \* We make every effort to leave on time. To avoid 16, please plan to arrive at least one hour before your scheduled departure time. This is especially important because all passengers must pass through security control.
- \* Scissors, nail clippers, and other sharp instruments 17 on board. Leave these items at home or surrender them to the security officer in charge.
- \* Each passenger is allowed two small carry-on bags. Check your excess luggage with the attendant. You can claim it at the end of your trip.
- \* We request that passengers remain in the waiting area until the attendant 18 the embarkation time. Please don't attempt to board ahead of time.
- \* Your comfort is our priority. Snack service is available on board. Please ask the attendant for pillows and blankets if you require them.

Thank you for traveling with us. Have a safe and happy trip.

16. (A) delays  
 (B) delights  
 (C) deliveries  
 (D) delusions
17. (A) prohibit  
 (B) prohibits  
 (C) are prohibited  
 (D) are prohibiting
18. (A) announce  
 (B) announces  
 (C) will announce  
 (D) does announce

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following travel itinerary.

**Breezeway Travel Agency**

Itinerary for: Edward Rochester

April 15 Depart New York City — 10:30 P.M.  
 \*Solar Airlines flight 133  
 Arrive Seattle, WA — 12:15 P.M.

Hotel: Puget Inn  
 1764 Capital Street  
 Seattle, WA

April 18 Depart Seattle — 8:05 A.M.  
 \*\*Train # 10  
 \*\*\*Arrive Vancouver, Canada 11:20 A.M.

Hotel: Gas Town Hotel  
 375 Alaska Avenue  
 Vancouver, Canada

April 20 Depart Vancouver — 11:30 P.M.  
 \*Solar Airlines flight 136

April 21 Arrive New York City — 5:10 A.M.

\* Please arrive at airport at least one hour ahead of scheduled departure time.

Plane will begin boarding 20 minutes ahead of scheduled departure time.

It is prohibited to bring firearms, explosive devices, or sharp instruments on board any Solar Airlines flight.  
 There is no meal service on board any Solar Airlines flight. Beverages will be available for sale.

\*\* Please arrive at train station 30 minutes before scheduled departure time.

\*\*\* A valid passport is required for entry into Canada.

19. How many nights will Mr. Rochester stay at the Puget Inn?  
 (A) One.  
 (B) Two.  
 (C) Three.  
 (D) Four.
20. What time can he get on the return flight to New York City?  
 (A) 10:30.  
 (B) 11:10.  
 (C) 11:30.  
 (D) 5:10.
21. What can he buy during the flight?  
 (A) A meal.  
 (B) A drink.  
 (C) A passport.  
 (D) A train ticket.
22. The word *itinerary* in line 2 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) bill  
 (B) ticket  
 (C) advice  
 (D) schedule
23. The word *prohibited* in line 20 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) not encouraged  
 (B) uncommon  
 (C) permitted  
 (D) not allowed

## Lesson 37

### WORDS TO LEARN

deal with  
destination  
distinguish  
economize  
equivalent  
excursion  
expense  
extend  
prospective  
situation  
substantially  
system

# Airlines

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **deal with** v. phrase, to attend to; to manage; to see to
  - a. Ticket agents must deal courteously with irate customers.
  - b. Sick passengers, frightened children, and rude pilots are just a few of the things cabin attendants have to deal with.
2. **destination** n., the place to which one is going or directed
  - a. The Great Barrier Reef is a popular tourist destination this year.
  - b. Once you have determined your desired destination, we can work toward getting the best airfare.
3. **distinguish** v., to make noticeable or different
  - a. Suki was able to distinguish between the different types of jets on the runway.
  - b. My travel agent has distinguished herself as being one of the best in our area.
4. **economize** v., to be careful about spending money
  - a. My travel agent knows I like to economize and always looks out for the best prices for me.
  - b. We decided to economize this year and take our vacation during the off season, when prices are lower.
5. **equivalent** adj., equal
  - a. Carlos used the Internet to search for hotels of equivalent dollar value to the one recommended.
  - b. The food the airline serves in coach class is equivalent to that served in first class.
6. **excursion** n., a pleasure trip; a trip at a reduced fare
  - a. With some time between meetings in London, the company president enjoyed an excursion to Stonehenge.
  - b. The finance officer was pleased to find an excursion for the entire consulting team.
7. **expense** n., something requiring payment
  - a. A luxury vacation involves many expenses.
  - b. If we keep our expenses down, we might have enough money to take a longer trip.
8. **extend** v., to make longer; to offer
  - a. We extended our vacation by a day.
  - b. Our wonderful travel agent extended the full services of her firm to us.
9. **prospective** adj., likely to become or be
  - a. The airline had a reception to impress travel agents who might be prospective clients.
  - b. I narrowed my list of prospective destinations to my three top choices.
10. **situation** n., the combination of circumstances at a given moment
  - a. The airline suggested I check with the State Department regarding the political situation in the country I'm flying to.
  - b. The vast number of different airfares available makes for a complicated situation.
11. **substantially** adj., significantly
  - a. The airline I work for had a substantially higher rating for customer satisfaction than our competitors had.
  - b. The airfares charged by different airlines are not substantially different.
12. **system** n., a functionally related group of elements
  - a. The airline system covers the entire world with flights.
  - b. We need a better system to keep track of how much money we are spending on this vacation.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

deal with	equivalent	extending	situation
destination	excursion	distinguishable	substantial
economical	expensive	prospective	system

If you travel, you most likely will have to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ flying. Flying is the quickest, most convenient means of travel between countries, and often between different parts of one country. Flying is (2) \_\_\_\_\_, but when all costs are taken into account for traveling any (3) \_\_\_\_\_ distance, air travel is usually less expensive than driving by car. It is also the most (4) \_\_\_\_\_ way to go in terms of time. You'll miss the scenery en route, but you'll have more time at your vacation (5) \_\_\_\_\_ with air travel.

Airlines sell seats at a variety of prices under a (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of requirements and restrictions. Full-fare tickets are the most expensive, but give you the most flexibility in terms of making changes. A (7) \_\_\_\_\_ traveler can buy a ticket up to takeoff time as long as a seat is available.

Fares change rapidly, and even travel experts find it difficult to keep up. The changing (8) \_\_\_\_\_ is due to many factors, including increased competition. As a general rule, the less you pay for the ticket, the more restrictions you can expect. If you are trying to save money, look for (9) \_\_\_\_\_ fares. These are the airline's (10) \_\_\_\_\_ of a special sale. Most excursion fares are for round-trip travel and have strict regulations and a minimum and maximum length of stay, so don't count on (11) \_\_\_\_\_ your vacation or staying less time than required. However, once you are on the plane, you are not (12) \_\_\_\_\_ from passengers who paid higher fares.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	distinguish	I can't distinguish any difference in the two airlines, since their fares are the same.
adjective	distinguishable	The airline's planes were easily distinguishable by the bright logo on the planes' tails.
adverb	distinguishably	Even though you have paid a lower fare, you won't be distinguishably different than the other passengers on the plane.

verb	economize	We no longer fly first class, since our company is trying to economize.
adjective	economical	Without hesitation, we chose the more economical of the two airline tickets.
adverb	economically	A good travel agent can help you plan your trip economically.

noun	expense	To stay within our travel budget, we must keep all our expenses as low as possible.
adjective	expensively	The first-class seats are for those who travel expensively but with great style.
adverb	expensive	Only the most expensive fares were still available.

verb	extend	When people travel to an interesting destination for business, they often extend their trip by a few days in order to enjoy the place as a tourist.
noun	extent	Larry has traveled to Japan many times and the extent of his knowledge of that country is impressive.
adjective	extensive	Pamela is taking six months off from work in order to take an extensive tour of South America.

noun	prospect	The prospects of getting a seat on this evening's flight are not good.
adjective	prospective	The travel agency offered special deals in order to attract prospective customers.

noun	substance	I couldn't recognize the substance that was on my meal tray and that the airlines called dinner.
adjective	substantial	Ms. Qin found there was a substantial difference in the price quoted for the plane ticket, depending on which day she flew.
adverb	substantially	There is substantially no difference in the quality of food served in first class and in economy class.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes  
the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D.

**Part 2 Question-Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 4. What are the speakers discussing? | 6. When does the woman want to arrive? |
| (A) The length of the trip.          | (A) Sunday.                            |
| (B) The schedule of the airline.     | (B) Monday.                            |
| (C) The cost of the ticket.          | (C) Tuesday.                           |
| (D) The quality of the airline.      | (D) Wednesday.                         |
5. How can the woman get a lower airfare?
- (A) By staying for just two days.
  - (B) By flying to a different city.
  - (C) By charging it as a work expense.
  - (D) By changing the day of her arrival.

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 7. How can a client find out about tickets to another country? | 9. Why is there no information on excursions?    |
| (A) Call back later.   | (A) The excursion rates are no longer available. |
| (B) Press two.   | (B) The computer system is not working.          |
| (C) Use the computer.  | (C) The situation has changed.                   |
| (D) Press one.   | (D) The excursions have all been reserved.       |
8. What can a client do by pressing three?
- (A) Make hotel reservations.
  - (B) Purchase airline tickets.
  - (C) Find out about excursion rates.
  - (D) Connect with the agency's computer.

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. Let me point out the features of our service that \_\_\_\_\_ our airline from our competitors.  
 (A) distinguishably      (C) distinguishing  
 (B) distinguishable      (D) distinguish
11. Let's shop around until we find a more \_\_\_\_\_ airfare.  
 (A) economical      (C) economy  
 (B) economize      (D) economically
12. We need to keep our \_\_\_\_\_ down so you'll have to find us better prices on airline tickets.  
 (A) expensiveness      (C) expenses  
 (B) expensively      (D) expensive
13. I decided not to \_\_\_\_\_ my trip since I felt so tired by the time I finished my business meetings.  
 (A) extended      (C) extensive  
 (B) extent      (D) extend
14. My travel agent said there were good \_\_\_\_\_ of finding a reasonably priced airfare.  
 (A) prospective      (C) prospectors  
 (B) prospectively      (D) prospects
15. Unless the airfares differ \_\_\_\_\_, you should book seats on the airline with which you have frequent flyer miles.  
 (A) substance      (C) substantial  
 (B) substantially      (D) substantiality

### Part 6 Text Completion

#### Renovated City Airport Now Open

Frequent flyers will be happy to know that the renovations at City Airport are finally finished. The airport renovations were scheduled for completion at the end of last year, but the construction team fell behind schedule and 16 the deadlines twice. Now the work is completed, and travelers no longer have to deal 17 the noise, dust, and inconvenience of construction work. Passengers can move more easily and comfortably through the airport, and everything is easier to find. One of the biggest improvements in the renovated airport is the signs indicating the location of the various airlines' check-in counters. The new signs are much 18 than the old ones, and it is easier for passengers to find the airlines they are looking for. In general, now that the work at the airport is finally over, the situation there has substantially improved.

16. (A) extend  
 (B) extended  
 (C) have extended  
 (D) had extended
17. (A) to  
 (B) for  
 (C) with  
 (D) from
18. (A) distinguishable  
 (B) more distinguishable  
 (C) most distinguishable  
 (D) the most distinguishable

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following two e-mail messages.

To: Belinda Tuttle  
 From: Mark Wallaby  
 Subject: Re: Amazon Tours

Dear Ms. Tuttle,

In response to your request for information on guided tours in the Amazon region, I have found two excursions that may interest you. Both are led by reputable companies that are known for organizing interesting and educational trips at reasonable expense. One led by Jungle Tours, Inc., goes to all the destinations you are interested in visiting and lasts two weeks, the length of time you requested. However, it leaves on November 10th, a week earlier than the date you mentioned. I don't know whether or not you would be able to leave this early. There is a tour leaving on your designated date, run by Paradise Adventures. It doesn't, however, go to all the destinations you are interested in, and it lasts three weeks, not two, so you wouldn't return until December 8th. I don't know whether or not you would be able to extend the length of your vacation. If either of these two prospects interests you, let me know. Otherwise I will keep looking for a tour that will suit you.

Mark Wallaby  
 Southern Travel

To: Mark Wallaby  
 From: Belinda Tuttle  
 Subject: Re: Amazon Tours

Dear Mr. Wallaby,

Thank you for the information on trips to the Amazon. Unfortunately, I cannot change the dates of my vacation because of my work situation. The end of the year is a very busy time for accountants, and I will have a lot of work to deal with as soon as I return from my trip. On the other hand, I don't really need to economize, so I am flexible about the expense. The exact destinations don't really matter either. I will be happy just to visit that part of the world. So please keep looking and let me know what you find. Thank you for your efforts.

Belinda Tuttle

19. What is Mark Wallaby's job?  
 (A) Tour guide.  
 (B) Educator.  
 (C) Accountant.  
 (D) Travel agent.
20. When does Ms. Tuttle want to begin her vacation?  
 (A) November 10.  
 (B) November 17.  
 (C) December 1.  
 (D) December 8.
21. Why doesn't Ms. Tuttle like the tours suggested by Mr. Wallaby?  
 (A) They are too expensive.  
 (B) The companies have a bad reputation.  
 (C) They go to the wrong destinations.  
 (D) The dates don't fit her vacation time.
22. The word *prospects* in line 18 of the first e-mail is closest in meaning to  
 (A) possibilities  
 (B) businesses  
 (C) ideas  
 (D) plans
23. The word *situation* in line 3 of the second e-mail is closest in meaning to  
 (A) location  
 (B) requirements  
 (C) circumstances  
 (D) responsibilities

## Lesson 38

### WORDS TO LEARN

comprehensive  
deluxe  
directory  
duration  
entitle  
fare  
offset  
operate  
punctually  
relatively  
remainder  
remote

## Trains

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **comprehensive** adj., covering broadly; inclusive
  - a. The conductor has a comprehensive knowledge of rail systems from all over the world.
  - b. Our travel agent gave us a comprehensive travel package, including rail passes.
2. **deluxe** adj., noticeably luxurious
  - a. My parents decided to splurge on deluxe accommodations for their trip.
  - b. The train station is not near any of the deluxe hotels, so we will have to take a taxi.
3. **directory** n., a book or collection of information or directions
  - a. We consulted the directory to see where the train station was located.
  - b. By calling directory assistance, Mr. Scannel was able to get the phone number for the train station.
4. **duration** n., the time during which something lasts
  - a. Mother lent me her spare jacket for the duration of the trip.
  - b. Despite our personal differences, my roommate and I agreed to be as pleasant as possible for the duration of the train ride.
5. **entitle** v., to allow or qualify
  - a. During the holiday rush, a train ticket entitled the passenger to a ride, but not necessarily a seat.
  - b. The mess the train line made of Pedro's sleeping room reservations entitled him to a free upgrade to a better room.
6. **fare** n., the money paid for transportation
  - a. The train fare has increased since I rode last.
  - b. Pay your fare at the ticket office and you will get a ticket to board the train.
7. **offset** v., to counterbalance
  - a. The high cost of the hotel room offset the savings we made by taking the train instead of the plane.
  - b. By reducing her transportation costs once in the United States, Mrs. Sato offset the cost of getting to this country.
8. **operate** v., to perform a function
  - a. The train operates on a punctual schedule.
  - b. The train only operates in this area at the height of the tourist season.
9. **punctually** adv., promptly; on time
  - a. Please be on time; the train leaves punctually at noon.
  - b. The train usually arrives punctually; I can't imagine what is delaying it today.
10. **relatively** adv., somewhat
  - a. The train is relatively empty for this time of day.
  - b. The train station has been relatively busy for a weekday.
11. **remainder** n., the part that is left; leftover
  - a. The Alaskan frontier has train service in the summer, but for the remainder of the year the tracks are impassable.
  - b. We will move you to a less expensive room and credit the remainder of what you've already paid to your charge card.
12. **remote** adj., far away; not close to populated areas
  - a. I was surprised to find train service to such a remote location.
  - b. We took the train out of the city and found a remote hotel in the country for the weekend.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

comprehensive	duration	offset	relatively
deluxe	entitle	operate	remainder
directories	fares	punctual	remote

Trains are among the best ways to see a lot of a country in a (1) \_\_\_\_\_ short amount of time. In addition to the consideration of time, traveling by train allows you to really see the country you are passing through. You need only get to the station on time; after that you can relax and watch from the window.

Most trains are on time and run on a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ schedule. Routes, schedules, and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ are listed in a timetable available at a train station, in many travel (4) \_\_\_\_\_, or posted on the World Wide Web. Directories that are (5) \_\_\_\_\_ list all the trains, the cities they serve, the stations they depart from, and the class of services available. A few (6) \_\_\_\_\_ travel destinations are accessible only during the peak tourist season; the train does not (7) \_\_\_\_\_ there the (8) \_\_\_\_\_ of the year.

The fare is based on how far you travel and the quality of your accommodations. The basic fare buys you a seat for the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ of the trip. To be more precise, an unreserved seat guarantees a passenger transportation only; seats are allocated on a first-come, first-served basis. On busy holidays, it is possible that you could stand for at least some of your trip. For long trips, you will want to reserve a seat.

If you are traveling overnight, the cost of your room accommodation will depend on how (10) \_\_\_\_\_ your room is. Although taking the train is less expensive than flying, the savings may be (11) \_\_\_\_\_ by the cost of booking a sleeping room.

Travelers coming to the United States can take advantage of special rates not available in the United States. These passes (12) \_\_\_\_\_ the bearer to unlimited coach travel on trains for a fixed period of days, usually a month.

## WORD FAMILIES

noun	comprehensiveness	Due to the comprehensiveness of the train system, the complete timetable was a thick document.
adjective	comprehensive	Due to the comprehensive reach of the rail system, the train can take you to every major city and many smaller ones.
adverb	comprehensively	The surveyors comprehensively studied the terrain before planning the site for the new train tracks.

verb	direct	We were unfamiliar with the city, so the hotel manager directed us to the train station.
noun	direction	The ticket agent at the train station gave us directions to the nearest restaurant.
noun	directory	At the train station you can pick up a free directory to local restaurants, museums, and other places of interest to visitors.

verb	operate	Trains don't operate in this town after the summer tourism season is over.
noun	operation	The train system is a massive operation with thousands of large and small stations across the country.
adjective	operational	As the operational expenses for the train system rose, the managers were forced to either cut services or raise prices.

noun	punctuality	The Swiss trains are legendary for their punctuality.
adjective	punctual	For a transportation service to have any credibility, it must be punctual.
adverb	punctually	The conductor arrived punctually at the train station.

verb	remain	It is safer for all passengers to remain in their seats until the train comes to a complete stop.
noun	remains	The waiter cleared off the remains of our meal after we left the dining car.
noun	remainder	After our exciting stay in New York, the remainder of the trip seemed dull.

noun	remoteness	The remoteness of the state park was part of its attraction, but since it's not served by a train line, I couldn't get to it.
adjective	remote	The remote cabin in the woods can only be reached by car; the nearest train station or airport is more than 100 miles away.
adverb	remotely	I wasn't remotely interested in taking a cross-country trip by train since I can't stand to be confined for a long time.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*

1. A. B. C. D.



#### Part 2 Question–Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.                    3. A. B. C.

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. What are the speakers discussing?<br>(A) The operator of the train.<br>(B) The comfort of the train ride.<br>(C) The directions to the train station.<br>(D) The time the train leaves. | 6. What will they do now?<br>(A) Eat some snacks.<br>(B) Buy their train tickets.<br>(C) Get on the train.<br>(D) Buy something to read. |
| 5. How long will their train ride be?<br>(A) Three and a half hours.<br>(B) Five hours.<br>(C) Ten hours.<br>(D) Thirty hours.   |  |

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 7. What is an advantage of riding a high-speed train?<br>(A) It is always on time.<br>(B) It goes to many cities.<br>(C) You can get off anytime you want.<br>(D) It is cheaper than a plane.  | 9. What is included in the cost of a high-speed train ticket?<br>(A) A comfortable seat.<br>(B) A movie.<br>(C) A class.<br>(D) A free meal. |
| 8. What is true about a high-speed train?<br>(A) It operates in most cities.<br>(B) It is almost as slow as a traditional train.<br>(C) It is almost as fast as a plane in some cases.<br>(D) It is just as fast as a traditional train. |  |

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

10. Do you have a \_\_\_\_\_ map that shows all the station stops west of the Mississippi?  
 (A) comprehension      (C) comprehensive  
 (B) comprehensively    (D) comprehensiveness
11. We got lost in the train station and had to ask for \_\_\_\_\_ to the gate that our train was leaving from.  
 (A) directions      (C) directory  
 (B) directed      (D) directs
12. The train has stopped because of a malfunction, but we expect it to be \_\_\_\_\_ again within minutes.  
 (A) operational      (C) operation  
 (B) operate      (D) operationally
13. John never arrives \_\_\_\_\_, so I am always anxious when we travel together for fear of missing a train.  
 (A) punctualness      (C) punctual  
 (B) punctually      (D) punctuality
14. Sylvia's family \_\_\_\_\_ with her in the station until she was ready to board the train.  
 (A) remains      (C) remained  
 (B) remainder      (D) remaining
15. With this traffic, there isn't even a \_\_\_\_\_ chance that we will get to the train station on time.  
 (A) remotely      (C) remoteness  
 (B) remote      (D) remotest

### Part 6 Text Completion

Dear Henry,

I have made your train reservations for you. The tickets are enclosed. Your train leaves Sunday morning at 11:15. You should arrive at the train station on time since the trains all leave punctually. All the first-class tickets were sold out, so I wasn't able to get you deluxe accommodations. The tourist-class ticket I got you is considerably cheaper than a first-class ticket, so I hope the lower 16 offsets your disappointment in not getting to ride first-class. I think you won't notice the difference since the trip is 17 short. I am sure you will be quite comfortable for the 18 of the ride. I will be waiting at the station for you when you arrive. I look forward to seeing you.

Eliza

17. (A) far  
 (B) fair  
 (C) fore  
 (D) fare
18. (A) relatively  
 (B) relation  
 (C) relative  
 (D) related
19. (A) duration  
 (B) during  
 (C) endure  
 (D) endurance

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following brochure.

### Western Train Adventure

This comprehensive travel package includes round-trip train fare with sleeping car accommodations, deluxe hotel accommodations and meals at all overnight stops, and guided tours of selected cities along the way. In addition, your train ticket entitles you to three meals a day in the dining car or snack car while on board the train. We will travel through some remote areas with spectacular scenery. Every morning, a professional guide will provide information about the geology, natural history, and flora and fauna native to the areas we will travel through. You can spend the remainder of the day relaxing in your seat, chatting with your fellow passengers, or viewing movies. They will be shown twice a day in the lounge car, following lunch and dinner. An optional boat excursion to Victoria Island will be available at the western end of the trip for an extra fee. This special excursion is two days in duration and must be reserved and paid for two weeks prior to the trip departure date. The following trip departure dates are available:

June 7  
June 28  
July 21  
August 8

See your travel agent for reservations, or visit our web site at [www.trainadventures.com](http://www.trainadventures.com).

19. Who is this information for?
  - (A) Travel agents.
  - (B) Tour guides.
  - (C) Vacationers.
  - (D) Business travelers.
20. Where can passengers watch movies?
  - (A) In the dining car.
  - (B) In the lounge car.
  - (C) In the sleeping car.
  - (D) In the snack car.
21. What is not included in the price of the travel package?
  - (A) Hotel accommodations.
  - (B) Meals.
  - (C) Guided tours.
  - (D) A trip to an island.
22. The word *comprehensive* in line 2 is closest in meaning to
  - (A) inclusive
  - (B) selected
  - (C) reserved
  - (D) popular
23. The word *entitles* in line 4 is closest in meaning to
  - (A) suggest
  - (B) reminds
  - (C) expects
  - (D) qualifies

## Lesson 39

### WORDS TO LEARN

advanced  
chain  
check in  
confirm  
expect  
housekeeper  
notify  
preclude  
quote  
rate  
reservation  
service

# Hotels

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **advanced** adj., highly developed; at a higher level
  - a. Since the hotel installed an advanced computer system, all operations have been functioning more smoothly.
  - b. Pablo has been promoted to assistant manager and he is happy with his advanced position.
2. **chain** n., a group of enterprises under a single control
  - a. Budget-priced hotel chains have made a huge impact in the industry.
  - b. The hotel being built in Seoul is the newest one in the chain.
3. **check in** v., to register at a hotel; to report one's presence
  - a. Patrons check in at the hotel immediately upon their arrival.
  - b. To know that the conference guests have arrived, we ask them to check in at the registration desk.
4. **confirm** v., to validate
  - a. Jorge called the hotel to confirm that he had a room reservation.
  - b. We automatically send a postcard to let you know that your travel dates have been confirmed.
5. **expect** v., to consider probable or reasonable
  - a. You can expect a clean room when you check in at a hotel.
  - b. Mr. Kim expected that the bed linens would be changed daily.
6. **housekeeper** n., someone employed to do domestic work
  - a. Eloise's first job at the hotel was as a housekeeper and now she is the manager.
  - b. The desk clerk is sending the housekeeper to bring more towels to your room.
7. **notify** v., to report
  - a. They notified the hotel that they had been delayed in traffic and would be arriving late.
  - b. Lydia notified the hotel in writing that she was canceling her reservation.
8. **preclude** v., to make impossible; to rule out
  - a. The horrible rainstorm precluded us from traveling any further.
  - b. The unexpected cost of the room precluded a gourmet dinner for the travelers.
9. **quote** v., to give exact information on; n., a quotation
  - a. We were quoted a price of \$89 for the room for one night.
  - b. Call ahead and get a price quote for a week-long stay.
10. **rate** n., the payment or price according to a standard
  - a. The rate for the hotel room is too high considering how few services are available on-site.
  - b. The sign in the lobby lists the seasonal rates.
11. **reservation** n., an arrangement to set something aside
  - a. I know I made a reservation for tonight, but the hotel staff has no record of it in the system.
  - b. It is difficult, if not impossible, to get reservations at this hotel at the height of the summer season.
12. **service** n., useful functions
  - a. The hotel has a number of luxury services like the on-site gym, sauna, pool, and beauty salon.
  - b. Mr. Rockmont called room service to order a late-night snack.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

advance	confirm	notify	rates
chains	expect	preclude	reservations
check in	housekeeper	quoted	service

People stay in hotels for business and personal travel. But with room rates being so high, many travelers are staying home. Since high costs can (1) \_\_\_\_\_ travel, smart travelers know they can save money and get the best (2) \_\_\_\_\_ for a room by making (3) \_\_\_\_\_ well in (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of the beginning of their trip. When you make a reservation, the hotel staff will ask you to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ them as soon as there is any change in your travel plans. To avoid any surprises, it's a good idea to call and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the availability of your room and the rate you were (7) \_\_\_\_\_.

In selecting a hotel, first think about the kinds of (8) \_\_\_\_\_ you will need or like to have. You naturally (9) \_\_\_\_\_ a clean, well-lit room. You naturally expect that a (10) \_\_\_\_\_ will clean your room daily even in the smallest hotels. Large hotel (11) \_\_\_\_\_ offer the most services, such as a pool, health club, or money exchange. The front desk clerks will tell you about such services when you (12) \_\_\_\_\_ at the hotel.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	advance	We are advancing steadily toward our goal of improving customer service at every hotel in the chain.
noun	advance	Clarissa booked the bridal suite in advance of the hotel's official opening.
adjective	advanced	All hotel employees who do well at their jobs will be given the opportunity to move up to an advanced position.

verb	confirm	It is wise to confirm your reservation before you leave for your trip.
noun	confirmation	The confirmation code given to Suzanne when she booked her room made it easy for her to resolve her problem.
adjective	confirmed	The concierge had the confirmed helpful manner that is necessary in her position.

verb	expect	We expect to reach our destination by dinner.
noun	expectation	The guest's expectations were not met, so he complained to the manager.
adjective	expectant	The expectant travelers, loaded with luggage, left the hotel for their scheduled flight.

verb	notify	Please notify the front desk clerk if there are any problems with your room.
noun	notification	Written notification is required for any changes in reservations.

verb	quote	When customers ask for the room rate, just quote them the prices listed on this sheet.
noun	quotation	The quotation given to me didn't make sense, so I called again to verify it.
adjective	quotable	Our manager instructed us that the current room rates would be quotable only until the end of the month, when a rate increase would go into effect.

verb	reserve	We reserved a room well in advance.
noun	reservation	Seeing the crowds on the highway, I decided to pull over and telephone the hotel to make a reservation.
noun	in reserve	Like many other businesses, a hotel must keep some cash in reserve to pay for emergencies.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A B C D

**Part 2 Question-Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A B C      3. A B C

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. When must a customer notify the hotel?<br>(A) When he wants to leave a deposit.<br>(B) When he will check in early.<br>(C) When he expects to return to the hotel.<br>(D) When he wants to cancel a reservation. | 6. What does the man tell the woman to do?<br>(A) Telephone the customer.<br>(B) Send the customer a bill.<br>(C) Charge the customer extra.<br>(D) Get the customer's credit card number. |
| 5. How much in advance should the customer notify the hotel?<br>(A) Two to four hours.<br>(B) Four hours.<br>(C) Twenty-four hours.<br>(D) Forty-four hours.  |  |

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 7. Who is the speaker addressing?<br>(A) New hotel employees.<br>(B) Regular hotel customers.<br>(C) Experienced hotel managers.<br>(D) Hotel chain owners.             | 9. Where will the speaker take the listeners?<br>(A) To the front door.<br>(B) To the service entrance.<br>(C) To the tour office.<br>(D) To the dining room. |
| 8. What is the goal of the hotel chain?<br>(A) To get more customers.<br>(B) To provide the best service.<br>(C) To charge higher rates.<br>(D) To hire more employees. |   |

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## **Part 6 Text Completion**

Welcome to the Springflower Radford Hotel. We are part of the Radford Hotel Group, one of the top hotel chains in the world.

Your comfort is important to us. When you check 16, please let us know if you will need any special services during your stay.

A 17 will clean your room daily and supply you with fresh linens. Please notify her if you need any extra supplies for your room.

The exercise room and pool are available for the use of all guests. Exercise classes are offered daily. Registration is required in 18. Please see the front desk clerk for more information.

You can book city tours through us. See the front desk clerk for a price quote. If you have already made a reservation for a city tour, we can confirm it for you.

Thank you for choosing a Radford Hotel. Have a pleasant stay.

16. (A) in  
(B) out  
(C) up  
(D) for

17. (A) manager  
(B) server  
(C) housekeeper  
(D) janitor

18. (A) advancement  
(B) advanced  
(C) advancer  
(D) advance

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following two letters.

June 10, 20—

Gisela Fried  
Springflower Radford Hotel  
2857 King Street  
Hartsdale, WI

Dear Ms. Fried,

I am writing to let you know of the excellent service I received from your staff during my recent stay at the Springflower Radford Hotel. Although I had made an advance reservation for my stay, I had forgotten to confirm it. Thus, when I checked in at the hotel, there were no rooms available of the type I had wanted. Your kind and professional staff immediately found another, more luxurious, room for me. Although it was more expensive than the room I had reserved, they charged me the rate I had originally been quoted.

The excellent service continued throughout my stay and, indeed, exceeded my expectations. For example, the housekeeper cheerfully arrived to clean my room at 10:00 one evening after I had had problems with the bathtub overflowing. The staff at the front desk were always ready to answer my questions and were very helpful in assisting me to find my way around the city. All in all, my stay at the hotel was a very pleasant experience. I will certainly recommend this hotel to any of my friends who plan a visit to Hartsdale in the future.

Sincerely,

Andrew Wyatt

June 17, 20—

Andrew Wyatt  
23 North Cuttersville Road  
Creek Lake, MI

Dear Mr. Wyatt,

Thank you very much for your letter of June 10 notifying me of the fine service you received during your stay at the Springflower Radford Hotel. I am pleased to know that you had such a good experience as our guest. We at the Radford Hotel chain pride ourselves on the high quality of our service. As the hotel manager, I sometimes hear complaints about my staff, but it is just as important for me to hear about the fine work that they do.

I am enclosing a coupon for the hotel restaurant so that the next time you stay with us, you can enjoy a meal free of charge at the Springflower Restaurant.

Sincerely,

Gisela Fried

19. Why did Mr. Wyatt write the letter?

- (A) To complain about the hotel.
- (B) To ask for a rate quote.
- (C) To reserve a room.
- (D) To praise the hotel staff.

20. Who is Ms. Fried?

- (A) A hotel guest.
- (B) The hotel manager.
- (C) A housekeeper.
- (D) The front desk clerk.

21. What does Ms. Fried offer Mr. Wyatt?

- (A) A free meal.
- (B) A less expensive room.
- (C) A recommendation.
- (D) A job.

22. The word *rate* in the first letter, first paragraph, line 9 is closest in meaning to

- (A) time
- (B) place
- (C) price
- (D) speed

23. The word *notifying* in the second letter, first paragraph, line 2 is closest in meaning to

- (A) advertising
- (B) complaining
- (C) informing
- (D) scolding

# Lesson 40

## WORDS TO LEARN

busy  
coincide  
confusion  
contact  
disappoint  
intend  
license  
nervously  
optional  
tempt  
thrill  
tier

# Car Rentals

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **busy** adj., engaged in activity
  - a. Alfred was busy getting ready for his vacation.
  - b. The airport was busy, with people catching planes and heading for car rental companies.
2. **coincide** v., to happen at the same time
  - a. My cousin's wedding coincided with a holiday weekend, so it was a perfect time to rent a car and go for a drive.
  - b. Sean was hoping that the days for the special discount on car rentals would coincide with his vacation, but they did not.
3. **confusion** n., a lack of clarity, order, or understanding
  - a. There was some confusion about which rental discount coupons applied to which car rental agency.
  - b. To avoid any confusion about renting the car, Yolanda asked her travel agent to make the arrangements on her behalf.
4. **contact** v., to get in touch with
  - a. Manuel contacted at least a dozen car rental agencies to get the best deal.
  - b. Last night I was contacted by my travel agent who said he had found a better price on a car rental.
5. **disappoint** v., to fail to satisfy the hope, desire, or expectation of
  - a. Leila was disappointed to discover that no rental cars were available the weekend she wished to travel.
  - b. I hate to disappoint you, but I can't allow you to rent a car unless you have a major credit card.
6. **intend** v., to have in mind
  - a. I never intended to drive to Los Angeles until my brother suggested we do it together.
  - b. Do you intend to return the car to this location or to another location?
7. **license** n., the legal permission to do or own a specified thing
  - a. First, I'll need to see your driver's license and a major credit card.
  - b. You will need a license in order to run this business.
8. **nervously** adv., in a distressed or uneasy manner
  - a. As we approached the city Lonnie started driving nervously, so I volunteered to drive that part of the trip.
  - b. I looked around nervously the entire time I was in the dark parking garage.
9. **optional** adj., not compulsory or automatic
  - a. Check this box if you wish to have this optional insurance.
  - b. Having a driver's license is not optional.
10. **tempt** v., to be inviting or attractive to
  - a. I am tempted by the idea of driving across the country instead of flying.
  - b. Gina is tempted to rent the smaller car to save a few dollars.
11. **thrill** n., the source or cause of excitement or emotion
  - a. The thought of renting a sports car gave John a thrill.
  - b. Just taking a vacation is thrill enough, even if we are driving instead of flying.
12. **tier** n., a rank or class
  - a. The car rental company had a few tiers of cars, each one costing more than the previous tier.
  - b. If you are on a budget, I suggest you think about renting a car from our lowest tier.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

busy	contacted	license	tempted
coincided	disappointment	nervous	thrill
confusing	intended	optional	tier

Many travelers taking a driving vacation simply rent a car. Yoko called ahead to rent a car at her vacation destination. Although she was (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to book a car once she arrived at her destination, Yoko was (2) \_\_\_\_\_ about not having a reservation. Her vacation (3) \_\_\_\_\_ with a holiday, so she knew many other people would also be renting cars. Yoko wanted to avoid the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of finding that a car was not available at this (5) \_\_\_\_\_ travel time.

There are a lot of car rental firms, so Yoko (6) \_\_\_\_\_ several of them to compare rates and requirements. At each company she called, she learned she would need a valid driver's (7) \_\_\_\_\_ and a major credit card to rent a car.

Yoko found the many different rates for renting cars (8) \_\_\_\_\_. Some companies offered substantial discounts provided that the car was reserved for a certain number of days. One company offered her a great daily rate, but it was based on a three-day rental. Since she only (9) \_\_\_\_\_ to rent the car for two days, the discount did not apply to her. Also, the base price did not cover (10) \_\_\_\_\_ costs, like collision insurance or gas refills.

Another factor influencing the rate was the type of car. Rentals are based on a (11) \_\_\_\_\_ price system. The more luxurious or sporty, or the larger the car, the higher the daily rate. Since Yoko needed only a small reliable car, she found a reasonable rate—although she would have liked the (12) \_\_\_\_\_ of driving a convertible!

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	confuse	These long car rental contracts always confuse me.
noun	confusion	The crowds at the car rental office resulted in a lot of confusion.
adjective	confusing	Driving in an unfamiliar city can be quite confusing.

verb	coincide	This year, my vacation coincides with a national holiday, which will make renting a car more expensive.
noun	coincidence	By coincidence, I ran into an old friend in line waiting to rent a car.
adverb	coincidentally	Coincidentally, we are offering a special discount if you are over age 65.

verb	disappoint	The service at that car rental agency always disappoints me, so next time I plan to use a different agency.
noun	disappointment	The poor condition of the car we rented was an unexpected disappointment.
adjective	disappointing	The weather during our trip was so disappointing that we came home early.

noun	intention	I have every intention of paying by cash even though I reserved the car with my credit card.
adjective	intent	Intent on avoiding an accident, Zola drove cautiously through the rush hour traffic.
adverb	intently	The tourist intently studied the road map.

noun	nervousness	I hope my nervousness did not show when I was filling out the forms.
adjective	nervous	This was Jane's first time renting a car, so she was somewhat nervous.
adverb	nervously	Mr. Lane nervously parallel parked the rental car between two others in the parking garage.

verb	tempt	Can I tempt you to rent a larger car with a special discount?
noun	temptation	The temptation to drive the sports car fast was too great for Karl to resist.
adjective	tempting	As tempting as it sounds to drive to Florida, I think I'd rather fly.

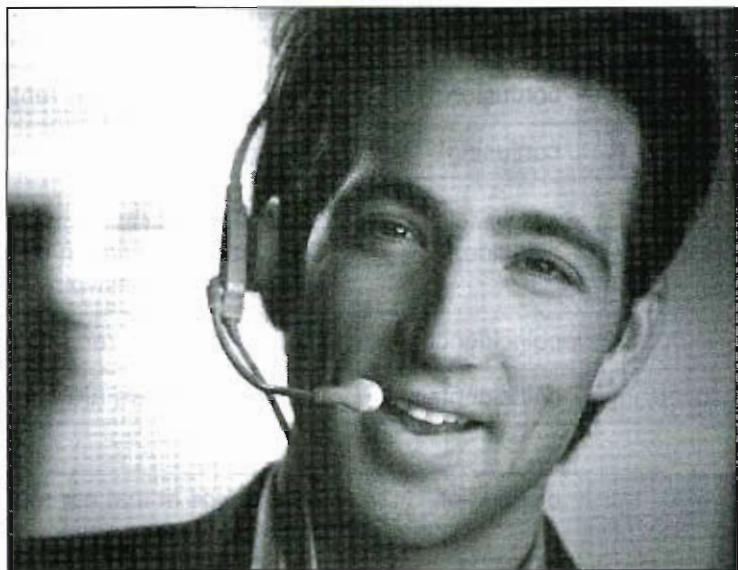
## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes  
the picture.*



1. A B C D

#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A B C      3. A B C

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 4. Who is the man speaking with?<br>(A) An insurance agent.<br>(B) A police officer.<br>(C) Another customer.<br>(D) A car rental agent. | 6. How will the man pay?<br>(A) Cash.<br>(B) Check.<br>(C) Credit card.<br>(D) Money order. |
| 5. How much does insurance cost?<br>(A) \$4.<br>(B) \$9.<br>(C) \$13.<br>(D) \$30.   |   |

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 7. Who is the audience for this talk?<br>(A) People who work in travel agencies.<br>(B) People who rent cars locally.<br>(C) People who work in car rental agencies.<br>(D) People who travel to other countries.                     | 9. What should a traveler do when picking up a rental car?<br>(A) Look for damage.<br>(B) Sign a check.<br>(C) Drive it right away.<br>(D) Make an appointment. |
| 8. When should a traveler get an international driver's license?<br>(A) After arriving in another country.<br>(B) After contacting a local rental agency.<br>(C) Before leaving on a trip.<br>(D) When signing a car rental contract. |   |

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## Part 6 Text Completion

Are you looking for a reliable rental car? Look no more.

**Riverton Rent-a-Car** offers the most reliable and economical rental cars in town.

You are sure to find the car you want at **Riverton Rent-a-Car**. We have several tiers of cars, from budget to luxury.

Our rates start at \$19.99 daily for a compact car, with several 16 available including two-door and four-door sedans and hatchbacks.

Have you always wanted to experience the 17 of driving a luxury sports car? Live your dream by renting a sports car from **Riverton Rent-a-Car**. Daily and weekly rates are available. Contact us to find out more.

Rent a car from Riverton Rent-a-Car. You won't **18**.

16. (A) optics  
(B) options  
(C) optimists  
(D) opticians

17. (A) thrill  
(B) thriller  
(C) thrilled  
(D) thrilling

18. (A) disappoint  
(B) disappointed  
(C) be disappointed  
(D) are disappointed

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following article.

Will your next trip involve a rental car? With a little careful planning, you can prevent some common headaches. If your travel plans coincide with a holiday, you need to plan well ahead of time. Car rental agencies are very busy at such times, and you won't be guaranteed a car unless you make your reservation well in advance. Contact the car rental agency and specify the kind of car you want and the dates you will need it. It's a good idea to call the agency again shortly before you begin your trip to confirm your reservation. This is the best way to avoid disappointment.

Another common problem that car renters face is extra charges. Some agencies add charges for options without letting the renter know about them. Sometimes renters aren't aware of this until they receive their credit card bill. Read the contract carefully before you sign it to make sure that you are paying only for what you requested. And don't be tempted to pay for things you don't need. It might be fun to drive a large, luxury car, but if you are traveling alone and are on a budget, it probably isn't worth paying for such a car.

19. Who is the audience for this article?  
 (A) Car rental agents.  
 (B) Travel agents.  
 (C) Car renters.  
 (D) Car owners.
20. What is a problem for holiday travelers?  
 (A) Businesses are closed.  
 (B) Rental agencies are very busy.  
 (C) Rental rates go up.  
 (D) People get headaches.
21. How can a car renter avoid paying extra charges?  
 (A) Read the contract.  
 (B) Confirm reservations.  
 (C) Pay with a credit card.  
 (D) Make a budget.
22. The word *disappointment* in the first paragraph, line 12 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) expense  
 (B) disagreement  
 (C) cancellation  
 (D) unhappiness
23. The word *options* in the second paragraph, line 3 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) features  
 (B) choices  
 (C) purchases  
 (D) customers

**Word Review #8****Lessons 36–40 Travel**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

1. When \_\_\_\_\_ your luggage, be sure to check the name on the tag.  
 (A) claim  
 (B) claimed  
 (C) claimant  
 (D) claiming
2. The plane's \_\_\_\_\_ was delayed until the wings were defrosted.  
 (A) depart  
 (B) departed  
 (C) departure  
 (D) departing
3. Many airlines \_\_\_\_\_ courtesy discounts to senior citizens.  
 (A) extend  
 (B) extending  
 (C) extension  
 (D) extensive
4. It is easier to \_\_\_\_\_ making reservations if you are specific about your requirements.  
 (A) deal in  
 (B) deal from  
 (C) deal out  
 (D) deal with
5. Trains are generally more \_\_\_\_\_ than airlines.  
 (A) punctuality  
 (B) punctually  
 (C) punctual  
 (D) punctuate
6. Some travel agencies \_\_\_\_\_ on a very tight budget.  
 (A) operating  
 (B) operation  
 (C) operates  
 (D) operate
7. Even if you pay cash, you need a credit card just to \_\_\_\_\_ to a hotel.  
 (A) check in  
 (B) checks in  
 (C) checking in  
 (D) checked in
8. Sometimes when you arrive, there is no room for you, even with a \_\_\_\_\_ reservation.  
 (A) confirm  
 (B) confirms  
 (C) confirmed  
 (D) confirmation
9. Without a reservation, renting a car could be a big \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) disappoint  
 (B) disappointed  
 (C) disappointing  
 (D) disappointment
10. No one will allow someone who doesn't have a \_\_\_\_\_ to rent a car.  
 (A) licensed  
 (B) license  
 (C) licensing  
 (D) licensee

*Choose the one word or phrase that best completes each sentence.*

Do you need to 11? Trains are a great way to save money when it comes to travel. Train fare costs considerably less than plane fare in most cases. On the other hand, if comfort is more important to you than saving money, you will be happy to know that most trains offer 12 accommodations. When you 13 your ticket, simply notify the agent that you want a first-class seat.

11. (A) economy  
 (B) economize  
 (C) economist  
 (D) economical
12. (A) deluxe  
 (B) valid  
 (C) remote  
 (D) punctual
13. (A) will reserve  
 (B) reserving  
 (C) reserved  
 (D) reserve

*Choose the one word or phrase that best completes each sentence.*

To: Margaret Berdan  
 From: Spring Flower Hotel Management  
 Subject: Your reservation

Dear Ms. Berdan,

Thank you for making a reservation at the Spring Flower Hotel for the nights of May 11–14. We suggest that you call the hotel 14 your reservation 24 hours in advance. Payment in full is required at the time you check 15, before we can give you your room key. Remember, your status as a guest at the Spring Flower Hotel 16 you to unlimited use of the hotel fitness room and swimming pool. We look forward to seeing you.

Sincerely,

The Spring Flower Hotel Management Office

14. (A) confirm  
 (B) confirming  
 (C) to confirm  
 (D) did confirm
15. (A) in  
 (B) up  
 (C) out  
 (D) through
16. (A) entitle  
 (B) entitles  
 (C) entitled  
 (D) is entitled

If you plan to pick up a rental car at the airport, it's best to reserve a car ahead of time. This is easy to do on the Internet or by phone. When you pick up your car, you will have to show a valid 17 that proves you have legal permission to drive. Read the contract carefully and make sure that the 18 it states is the same one you were originally quoted. You don't want to have to pay more than you expected. Also remember that certain features, such as stereo systems, are 19. You don't have to accept and pay for them if you don't want to.

17. (A) passport  
 (B) ticket  
 (C) itinerary  
 (D) license
18. (A) rate  
 (B) route  
 (C) riot  
 (D) runt
19. (A) opt  
 (B) option  
 (C) optional  
 (D) optionally

## Lesson 41

### WORDS TO LEARN

attainment  
combine  
continue  
description  
disperse  
entertainment  
influence  
range  
release  
representation  
separately  
successive

# Movies

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **attainment** n., achievement
  - a. The actress received a lot of attention for her many professional attainments.
  - b. The attainment of an Academy Award validates a performer's career.
2. **combine** v., to come together
  - a. The director combined two previously separate visual techniques.
  - b. The new production company combines the talents of three of Hollywood's best known teams.
3. **continue** v., to maintain without interruption
  - a. The film continues the story set out in an earlier film.
  - b. The search for a star will continue until one is found.
4. **description** n., a representation in words or pictures
  - a. The description of the film did not match what we saw on screen.
  - b. The critic's description of the film made it sound very appealing.
5. **disperse** v., to spread widely, to scatter
  - a. The reporters dispersed after the press agent cancelled the interview with the film director.
  - b. The crowd outside the movie premiere would not disperse until they had seen the movie stars.
6. **entertainment** n., a diverting performance or activity
  - a. The movie was provided for our entertainment.
  - b. There was no entertainment for children of guests at the hotel.
7. **influence** v., to alter or affect
  - a. The editor's style influenced a generation of film editors.
  - b. The producer was able to influence the town council to allow her to film in the park.
8. **range** n., the scope
  - a. The range of the director's vision is impressive.
  - b. What is the price range you are willing to pay for a ticket to the premiere?
9. **release** v., to make available to the public; to give permission for performance
  - a. The film was finally released to movie theaters after many delays.
  - b. The producers of the film are hoping to release it in time for the holidays.
10. **representation** n., exemplification; symbolization
  - a. The actor's representation of his character did not seem authentic.
  - b. The film's representation of world poverty through the character of the hungry child was quite moving.
11. **separately** adv., apart
  - a. Each scene of the movie was filmed separately from the others.
  - b. The theater was very crowded so we had to sit separately.
12. **successive** adj., following in order
  - a. The script went through successive rewrites.
  - b. Somehow the successive images were interrupted and had to be edited again.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

attain	descriptions	influence	represent
combines	disperse	range	separate
continues	entertaining	released	successive

The popularity of the movies began early in the 20th century and (1) \_\_\_\_\_ today. People of all ages find movies (2) \_\_\_\_\_. Movies are a worldwide phenomenon, as the internationalism of movie distribution has helped to (3) \_\_\_\_\_ ideas around the globe. One movie can quickly (4) \_\_\_\_\_ other movies. But why are movies so popular?

Movies are a kind of storytelling. They try to describe an idea or record an observation about our culture. These (5) \_\_\_\_\_ are recorded using moving visual images. Some movies portray the situation accurately and realistically, whereas other movies find visual symbols to (6) \_\_\_\_\_ those situations.

On the most simple level, movies are a succession of moving images. These (7) \_\_\_\_\_ images are captured on film. Directors film a wide (8) \_\_\_\_\_ of shots—long, medium, and close up—to create a visual composition. The visual images, along with plot, characterization, and sound, produce the desired narrative. The shots are joined together in any number of combinations in a process called editing.

Making a film is a massive, complex, and expensive task that (9) \_\_\_\_\_ art and business. Making a movie involves the talents of hundreds, and sometimes thousands, of artists, producers, and business people. It can take months, even years, for a film to be (10) \_\_\_\_\_ into a movie theater.

Like a novel, a movie is not just a story, but a story told a certain way. A film director may want to make a movie that tells a meaningful story or one that is primarily entertaining, and will use different filming techniques to (11) \_\_\_\_\_ that goal. It is impossible to (12) \_\_\_\_\_ what is told in a movie from how it is told. A director's artistic vision can range from improvised to carefully controlled. Think about the complexity of a movie the next time you see one.

## WORD FAMILIES

<b>verb</b>	attain	The film quickly attained a reputation as a “must-see” movie.
<b>noun</b>	attainment	The technical attainments in the movie’s special effects were impressive.
<b>adjective</b>	attainable	The director’s goal of having an unlimited budget was not attainable.

<b>verb</b>	continue	Continue giving out movie passes until I tell you to stop.
<b>noun</b>	continuation	The continuation of the film will be shown after the intermission.
<b>adjective</b>	continual	The actors’ continual demands slowed down the pace of production.

<b>verb</b>	describe	Please describe the new movie theater to me.
<b>noun</b>	description	The description of Africa in the film was not as I remembered it.
<b>adjective</b>	descriptive	The writer’s descriptive account of the war is shocking and saddening.

<b>verb</b>	entertain	The comedian worked hard to entertain the children in the hospital.
<b>noun</b>	entertainment	Movies are one of the most popular forms of entertainment.
<b>adjective</b>	entertaining	The light comedy was entertaining, if not memorable.

<b>verb</b>	represent	The actor represented the ideals of the culture.
<b>noun</b>	representation	We felt that the movie’s representation of the effects of war was very realistic.
<b>noun</b>	representative	The actress couldn’t attend the awards ceremony so she had a representative accept the award for her.

<b>verb</b>	separate	Some movie fans can’t separate fantasy from reality and confuse an actor with the character he plays.
<b>adjective</b>	separate	Moviemaking combines several separate processes.
<b>adverb</b>	separately	The actors rehearsed their lines separately before filming the scene together.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. (A) (B) (C) (D)

**Part 2 Question–Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. (A) (B) (C)      3. (A) (B) (C)

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 4. What are the speakers discussing? | 6. How many movies has the actor made this year? |
| (A) The lighting in the theater.     | (A) One.   |
| (B) The price of entertainment.      | (B) Two.   |
| (C) Shows on television.             | (C) Three.                                       |
| (D) An actor's acting style.         | (D) Ten.   |
5. What type of movie does the woman prefer?
- (A) Comedy.
  - (B) Drama.
  - (C) Mystery.
  - (D) Documentary.

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |                       |                                     |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 7. Who is Ms. Moreno? | 9. When will the movie be released? |
| (A) A director.       | (A) Next month.                     |
| (B) An actress.       | (B) In several weeks.               |
| (C) A movie producer. | (C) Next year.                      |
| (D) A movie reviewer. | (D) In several years.               |
8. What will Ms. Moreno do next week?
- (A) She will attend a performance.
  - (B) She will start a trip around the world.
  - (C) She will be interviewed.
  - (D) She will start a new career.

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## Part 6 Text Completion

The Silver Screen Movie House is a new entertainment option in the downtown area. The Silver Screen is not your typical movie house. It combines a movie theater with a coffeehouse, so that patrons can relax with coffee and snacks while they enjoy the show. In addition to a menu of delicious homemade sandwiches and tempting pastries, the Silver Screen offers a 16 of movies to suit all tastes. Everything from comedy to drama to action is on their schedule. Prices are reasonable, and frequent customers can take advantage of the ticket special. A booklet of five tickets for the price of four is available, or individual tickets can be bought 17 for each show. The place tends to fill up for the evening show, but if you like quiet, you can stay later. The crowds 18 when the last movie is over, but the café stays open until 1:00 A.M., so night owls can enjoy a quiet cup of coffee into the wee hours. We predict that the Silver Screen will soon attain the status of one of the most popular entertainment venues in the city.

16. (A) ridge  
(B) rage  
(C) rouge  
(D) range

17. (A) separate  
(B) separator  
(C) separately  
(D) separation

18. (A) remain  
(B) settle  
(C) converge  
(D) disperse

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following movie review and e-mail message.

The newly released romantic comedy, *West Wind*, opens this week at the State Street Cinema. The combination of a great script with superb acting talent results in a movie that you won't soon forget. The show is entertaining from start to finish, and you'll still be laughing when you leave the theater. If you've been bored to tears by movies recently, don't give up on the cinema yet. Give *West Wind* a try. You're sure to love it.

*West Wind* continues at the State Street Cinema through next week with shows at 5:15, 7:00, and 9:15 nightly.

To: Madeline Wrightwood  
From: Dan Green  
Subject: Let's go to the movies

Hi Maddy,

Did you see the review in today's paper of *West Wind*? I think it's worth seeing. I don't usually go for romances, but you know how I love comedies, and the description of this one sounds really good. There's also an action movie playing next door, but I know you don't like that kind of movie, and I don't really, either.

I can't leave work before 5:15, so we should go to the second show. I'd like to invite you to have dinner afterwards. I can make reservations at that restaurant you like for 9:00. We should make it there by then easily. Since we'll each be coming from work, we'll have to arrive at the theater separately. If you get there first, would you mind getting the tickets? Thanks. See you tonight.

Dan

19. What is the reviewer's opinion of the movie?  
 (A) It's sad.  
 (B) It's boring.  
 (C) It's funny.  
 (D) It's forgettable.
20. What kind of movie does Dan like?  
 (A) Action.  
 (B) Comedy.  
 (C) Romance.  
 (D) Drama.
21. What time does Dan want to go to the movies?  
 (A) 5:15.  
 (B) 7:00.  
 (C) 9:00.  
 (D) 9:15.
22. The word *entertaining* in line 5 of the movie review is closest in meaning to  
 (A) enjoyable  
 (B) educational  
 (C) lengthy  
 (D) describing
23. The word *separately* in the e-mail, second paragraph, line 6, is closest in meaning to  
 (A) connected  
 (B) jointly  
 (C) slowly  
 (D) alone

## Lesson 42

### WORDS TO LEARN

action  
approach  
audience  
creative  
dialogue  
element  
experience  
occur  
perform  
rehearse  
review  
sell out

# Theater

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **action** n., the series of events that form the plot of a story or play
  - a. The director decided that the second act needed more action and asked the playwright to review the work.
  - b. The action on stage was spellbinding.
2. **approach** v., to go near; to move toward
  - a. The performance approaches perfection.
  - b. The director approached the play from an unusual angle.
3. **audience** n., the spectators at a performance
  - a. The audience cheered the actors as they walked off the stage.
  - b. The playwright expanded his audience by writing for film as well as for stage.
4. **creative** adj., imaginative or artistic
  - a. The writer's creative representation of the Seven Deadly Sins was astounding.
  - b. There are a number of creative people writing for the theater these days.
5. **dialogue** n., a conversation between two or more persons
  - a. The actors performed the dialogue without using scripts.
  - b. The written dialogue seemed great, but was hard to perform.
6. **element** n., fundamental or essential constituent
  - a. The audience is an essential element of live theater.
  - b. By putting together all the elements of theater into one play, he overwhelmed the critics.
7. **experience** n., an event or a series of events participated in or lived through
  - a. The experience of live theater is very thrilling.
  - b. Going to the theater was not part of Claude's experience growing up.
8. **occur** v., to take place; to come about
  - a. The murder in the play occurs in the second act.
  - b. It never occurred to me that the wife whom the character referred to was imaginary.
9. **perform** v., to act before an audience, to give a public presentation of
  - a. The theater group performed a three-act play.
  - b. Juan performed the role without forgetting any lines.
10. **rehearse** v., to practice in preparation for a public performance; to direct in rehearsal
  - a. The players rehearsed for only three weeks before the show opened.
  - b. The director rehearses with the actors ten hours each day.
11. **review** n., a critical estimate of a work or performance; v., writing a criticism of a performance
  - a. The critic's influential review of the play was so negative that it sank the entire production.
  - b. The newspaper sent a rank amateur to review the play.
12. **sell out** v., to sell all the tickets
  - a. The Broadway opening sold out months in advance.
  - b. We expect that this play will be a smash and sell out quickly.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

action	created	experiences	rehearsal
approach	dialogue	occurs	reviews
audience	elements	performance	sell out

Many people find nothing as exciting as an evening of live theater.

The theater combines great works of literature written for the stage, the talents of great actors, and the efforts of hundreds of skilled artisans who work to create a mood. This mood, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ by the actors, director, and playwright with the supporting (2) \_\_\_\_\_ of sets, lighting, and costumes, is what makes a theatrical (3) \_\_\_\_\_ magical. When the curtain goes up, this magic (4) \_\_\_\_\_ right before your eyes.

The director of a play will (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the work from his or her own artistic perspective. Each director has a different vision and this shapes how he or she directs the movement or (6) \_\_\_\_\_ between the characters. Directors use not only their theatrical training, but real-life experiences to create a meaningful, realistic evening. Actors also bring their own artistic and personal (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to their work. This is why every staging of a play is unique.

Plays construct another world before your eyes. Ordinary words turn into meaningful (8) \_\_\_\_\_. Costumes and sets can be realistic or symbolic. Everything in a play looks easy, but it takes many weeks of (9) \_\_\_\_\_ to get everything in place.

Watching a play from the (10) \_\_\_\_\_ is great fun. To find out if a play is good, look for (11) \_\_\_\_\_ in the newspapers or ask friends. When plays are really popular, the available seats can fill up quickly and the play will (12) \_\_\_\_\_.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	act	Roger's dream is to act in a Broadway play.
noun	action	There isn't much action in the play, but it is captivating nonetheless.
noun	actor	There are quite a few well-known actors in the cast.

verb	approach	The actress approached me with the idea for a new play.
noun	approach	The informal approach to the play was unconventional.
adjective	approachable	Despite his great fame, the director was friendly and approachable.

verb	create	The playwright created a realistic town and townspeople with the scenery and dialogue.
noun	creation	The creation of the elaborate costumes took months.
adjective	creative	The director is one of the most creative people I know.

verb	experience	The actor experienced great self-doubt before he became famous.
noun	experience	Directors bring their experience of the world onto the stage.
adjective	experienced	The experienced make-up artist transformed Maxine into an old woman in a matter of minutes.

verb	perform	The popular actress was hired to perform Shakespeare on a world tour.
noun	performance	I booked tickets for the performance the day they went on sale.
noun	performer	The performers each had three costume changes.

verb	rehearse	The cast had to rehearse the scene over and over again until the director was finally satisfied.
noun	rehearsal	The actors spent several months in rehearsal before they performed the play.
adjective	rehearsed	Lydia's acceptance speech for her award sounded more rehearsed than natural.

**WORD PRACTICE****LISTENING COMPREHENSION****Part 1 Photo**

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D.

**Part 2 Question-Response**

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

**Part 3 Conversation**

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 4. When did the review appear in the newspaper?<br>(A) Today.<br>(B) Yesterday.<br>(C) Four weeks ago.<br>(D) Five weeks ago.  | 6. What did the woman do last Friday?<br>(A) She wrote a review.<br>(B) She won a prize.<br>(C) She saw a performance.<br>(D) She bought tickets. |
| 5. What does the woman say about the play?<br>(A) She has heard that it is funny.<br>(B) Tickets are still on sale.<br>(C) It got a bad review.<br>(D) The dialogue is hard to understand. |   |

**Part 4 Talk**

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 7. When can a performance of <i>Romeo and Juliet</i> be seen?<br>(A) Today.<br>(B) On Thursday afternoon.<br>(C) On Sunday morning.<br>(D) On Thursday evening.   | 9. Where can reviews of the play be read?<br>(A) In a newspaper.<br>(B) On a web site.<br>(C) In a magazine.<br>(D) At the theater. |
| 8. How can you get tickets to the play?<br>(A) Call the Shakespeare Organization.<br>(B) Call 656-9025.<br>(C) Write to the theater.<br>(D) Order them by e-mail. |   |

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## Part 6 Text Completion

To: Jack Sprague  
From: Sabrina Clark  
Subject: Play

Hi Jack,

I just saw that play that opened recently at the City Theater. You really ought to see it, too. I know you would enjoy the experience. The play combines 16 from both comedy and drama, so it's funny, but it also has an important message. Some people say this play is boring because there isn't a lot of action, but I think the 17 is very creative. The actors say some really funny lines. The whole performance is superb; you can tell that the actors rehearsed a long time before the play opened. You should call the theater today to get a ticket because they will probably sell 18 soon. Let me know how you like the play.

Sabrina

16. (A) elements  
(B) elemental  
(C) elementally  
(D) elementary

17. (A) analogue  
(B) prologue  
(C) dialogue  
(D) catalogue

18. (A) up  
(B) out  
(C) from  
(D) down

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following theater review.

Audiences have waited a long time for the opening of the play *Dusk to Dawn* at the City Theater. Unfortunately, the long wait only adds to the disappointment of seeing a mediocre play. It is an uncomfortable experience from start to finish. The action is slow and the dialogue boring. The performance by most of the cast is awkward and, on the night I attended at least, many of the actors forgot their lines. They obviously did not rehearse enough before opening night. The plot is trite. Theatergoers had been told to expect a fresh approach to the age-old boy-meets-girl romance story. Instead, we get a story that is dull enough to drive one to tears. Although the play is relatively short—under two hours—the performance is so tedious it seems to drag on for three or four hours. The audience made an audible sigh of relief when the final curtain dropped. Rather than the predicted sold out performances, I expect that the play will close very shortly. Unfortunately, the producers invested a lot of money in this play, which they are not likely to get back. My advice to would-be theatergoers: spend the weekend at the movies instead.

19. What is the reviewer's opinion of the play?  
 (A) It's very sad.  
 (B) It's boring.  
 (C) It's too short.  
 (D) It's romantic.
20. How long is the play?  
 (A) Less than two hours.  
 (B) Exactly two hours.  
 (C) Three hours.  
 (D) Four hours.
21. What does the reviewer predict about the play?  
 (A) The performances will be sold out.  
 (B) The producers will make a lot of money.  
 (C) The play will be made into a movie.  
 (D) The play will close in a short time.
22. The word *experience* in line 5 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) act  
 (B) wait  
 (C) event  
 (D) seat
23. The word *rehearse* in line 9 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) plan  
 (B) sleep  
 (C) memorize  
 (D) practice

# Lesson 43

## WORDS TO LEARN

available  
broaden  
category  
disparate  
divide  
favor  
instinct  
prefer  
reason  
relaxation  
taste  
urge

# Music

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **available** adj., ready for use; willing to serve
  - a. In order to understand all the words to the opera, Sue Lin kept an Italian dictionary available at all times.
  - b. I checked the list of available compact discs before ordering.
2. **broaden** v., to make wider
  - a. Dominique wants to broaden her knowledge of opera history.
  - b. You will appreciate music more if you broaden your tastes and listen to several types of music.
3. **category** n., a division in a system of classification; a general class of ideas
  - a. Jazz is one of many categories of music.
  - b. The works of Mozart are in a category by themselves.
4. **disparate** adj., fundamentally distinct or different
  - a. In the song, the disparate voices hauntingly join a blended chorus.
  - b. Religious songs cut across disparate categories of music.
5. **divide** v., to separate into parts
  - a. The music class was evenly divided between those who liked country and western music and those who do not.
  - b. The broad topic of music can be divided into manageable parts, such as themes, styles, or centuries.
6. **favor** v., to be partial to
  - a. Sam enjoys the works of several composers but he tends to favor Mozart.
  - b. I'd favor an evening at a jazz concert over an evening at the opera any time.
7. **instinct** n., an inborn pattern that is a powerful motivation
  - a. The student's ability to play the cello was so natural, it seemed an instinct.
  - b. The music lover followed his instincts and collected only music that he enjoyed.
8. **prefer** v., to like someone or something more than another or others
  - a. He preferred contemporary music to any other type.
  - b. Ms. Lanet prefers to get a seat near the aisle when she attends a concert.
9. **reason** n., the basis or motive for an action; an underlying fact or cause
  - a. We'll never understand the reason why some music is popular and some is not.
  - b. There is every reason to believe that Beethoven will still be popular in the next century.
10. **relaxation** n., the act of relaxing or the state of being relaxed; refreshment of body or mind
  - a. Listening to soothing music before bedtime provides good relaxation.
  - b. He played the piano for relaxation and pleasure.
11. **taste** n., the ability to discern what is excellent or appropriate
  - a. Ella had the taste required to select a musical program for the visiting dignitaries.
  - b. This music does not appeal to my tastes; but I'm old-fashioned.
12. **urge** v., to advocate earnestly
  - a. His mother urged him to study the piano; the rest is musical history.
  - b. Despite my reluctance, my friends urged me to attend an opera.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

available	disparate	instinctive	relax
broad	divided	prefer	taste
category	favorite	reason	urge

Everyone loves music, it seems. And there's little (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to wonder why. There is so much music (2) \_\_\_\_\_ from which to choose, and there is a (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of music to appeal to every (4) \_\_\_\_\_. The major groups of music are (5) \_\_\_\_\_ broadly into classical, popular, and jazz. Within these (6) \_\_\_\_\_ groups are many other subcategories. For example, such (7) \_\_\_\_\_ types of music as movie sound tracks, rhythm and blues, rock, and rap all fit within the category of popular music.

The (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to make and enjoy music may be (9) \_\_\_\_\_. Even small children will (10) \_\_\_\_\_ certain kinds of music.

Another reason that music is so popular is the variety of settings in which one can enjoy his or her (11) \_\_\_\_\_ kind of music. You can go to a church to hear great religious music, or to a concert hall to hear a well-known classical symphony. On another night, you might go to a small club to listen to an up-and-coming jazz group while you enjoy a drink. A few nights later, you might go with some friends to join thousands of other people in a stadium to hear your favorite rock band play in your city on a world tour. And, back at your house or apartment, you can (12) \_\_\_\_\_ while you put in a tape or CD and listen to your favorite artists again and again in your own home.

## WORD FAMILIES

<b>verb</b>	broaden	Connie would like to broaden her collection of CDs and add a few more music categories to it.
<b>adjective</b>	broad	We'll cover a broad range of music in the music appreciation class.
<b>adverb</b>	broadly	The orchestra director travels broadly in search of new musical talent.

<b>verb</b>	categorize	Some singers have a broad range of styles and are difficult to categorize.
<b>noun</b>	category	Most of Sam's compact discs fall into the category of classical music.
<b>adjective</b>	categorical	The sheet music follows the categorical system used in most libraries.

<b>verb</b>	favor	The music critic clearly favors some musicians over others.
<b>adjective</b>	favorite	The teenager had an extensive collection of music by all her favorite groups.
<b>adjective</b>	favorable	The favorable reviews of the group's new album helped to push the album up the sales charts.

<b>verb</b>	prefer	I would prefer tickets for Saturday's concert, but will accept Sunday tickets if that is all that is available.
<b>noun</b>	preference	Jazz is his preference, but he is usually happy to hear anything playing locally.
<b>adjective</b>	preferential	The stage manager gave the opera diva preferential treatment, fearing her famous temper.

<b>verb</b>	relax	After a long concert tour, the singer liked to relax by the pool.
<b>noun</b>	relaxation	Listening to music is an enduring form of relaxation.
<b>adjective</b>	relaxing	There is nothing more relaxing than listening to music.

<b>verb</b>	urge	My music teacher urged me not to give up the violin even though I was having such a hard time with it.
<b>noun</b>	urge	Richard gets the urge to play the guitar every time he passes a music store window.
<b>adjective</b>	urgent	It's urgent to order those concert tickets as soon as possible because they will sell out quickly.

## WORD PRACTICE

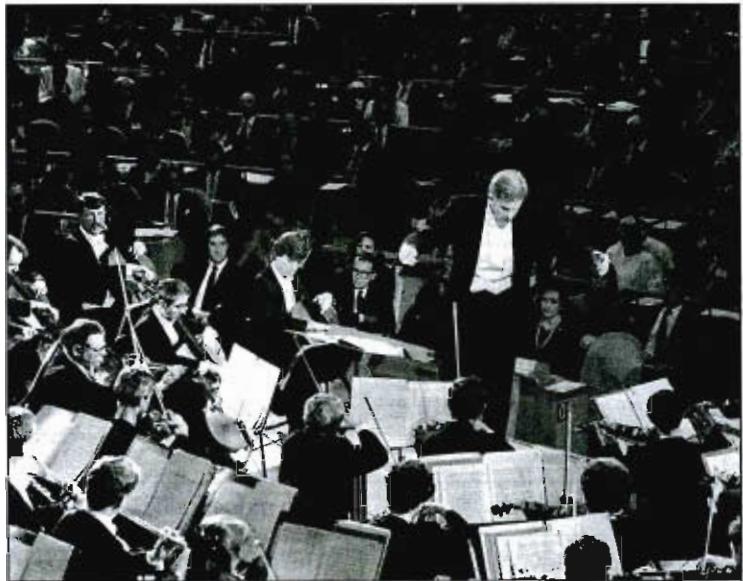
### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes  
the picture.*

1. A B C D



#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A B C      3. A B C

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>4. What does the man say about the music at the store?<br/>           (A) It matches his tastes.<br/>           (B) It is boring.<br/>           (C) It sounds pretty.<br/>           (D) It is interesting.</p> <p>5. Why does the man want to buy a CD?<br/>           (A) For relaxation.<br/>           (B) For school.<br/>           (C) For a present.<br/>           (D) For a dance party.</p> | <p>6. What does the woman suggest that the man do?<br/>           (A) Go to another store.<br/>           (B) Take a music class.<br/>           (C) Listen to the radio.<br/>           (D) Improve his taste.</p> |
|--|---|

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>7. What is the class about?<br/>           (A) The history of music.<br/>           (B) Playing musical instruments.<br/>           (C) Music appreciation.<br/>           (D) Reading music.</p> <p>8. What does the speaker urge the listeners to do?<br/>           (A) Buy the text right away.<br/>           (B) Try a musical instrument.<br/>           (C) Take a test.<br/>           (D) Start listening to music every day.</p> | <p>9. How much will students pay for concert tickets?<br/>           (A) \$3.<br/>           (B) \$13.<br/>           (C) \$25.<br/>           (D) \$30.</p> |
|--|--|

## READING

### Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

10. My friends have urged me to \_\_\_\_\_ my tastes to include more classical music.  
 (A) broad (C) broaden  
 (B) broadly (D) broadened
11. I don't know how to \_\_\_\_\_ my taste in music.  
 (A) categorize (C) categorical  
 (B) categories (D) categorically
12. The string quartet received a \_\_\_\_\_ comparison to the best of the genre.  
 (A) favor (C) favorably  
 (B) favoritism (D) favorable
13. The symphony members \_\_\_\_\_ to travel abroad only once a year.  
 (A) prefer (C) preference  
 (B) preferable (D) preferential
14. After a hard day at work, we like to \_\_\_\_\_ to soothing music.  
 (A) relaxation (C) relaxing  
 (B) relaxes (D) relax
15. Sometimes I get an \_\_\_\_\_ to learn how to play a musical instrument.  
 (A) urgent (C) urges  
 (B) urge (D) urgently

### Part 6 Text Completion

#### Music Library

#### User's Guide

The library's music collection is 16 into the following categories: classical, jazz, musicals, rock, folk, and international. The map below shows where each category is located. To find out if a particular CD is currently 17, please use the computers up front to check the catalog. If you remove a CD from the shelf, we 18 you not to attempt to replace it yourself. Please give it to a librarian who will reshelf it properly. CDs can be enjoyed in the adjacent listening room. Patrons who prefer to enjoy the CDs at home may use their library card to check out up to five CDs at a time for a period of two weeks. If you need help for any reason, please ask the librarian on duty.

16. (A) divide  
 (B) divides  
 (C) divided  
 (D) dividing
17. (A) avowal  
 (B) avuncular  
 (C) avoidable  
 (D) available
18. (A) urge  
 (B) urgent  
 (C) unguent  
 (D) urgently

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following review and e-mail message.

We were fortunate to have internationally acclaimed violinist Maria Rogoff play at Symphony Hall last Saturday night. Ms. Rogoff appears to have been born with a musical instinct. She played her violin quite naturally, as if it were an old friend. The selection of pieces she played was superb. She favored lively, interesting pieces that kept the audience enthralled during the entire performance. All in all, it was a thoroughly enjoyable and relaxing evening. Music lovers everywhere are urged to hear Ms. Rogoff play anytime there is an opportunity.

To: Polly Andrews  
From: Gus Hall  
Subject: Concert

Hi Polly,

Did you see the review of Maria Rogoff's concert in the Sunday paper? Can you believe they gave her such a good review? I didn't agree at all with what the reviewer said about her selection of pieces. In fact, I thought quite the opposite. And she made several mistakes in her playing. Did you notice? Oh, well. I prefer cello music anyhow. It is much more to my taste. Maybe that's the real reason I didn't enjoy the concert. By the way, there is another concert this Friday. A pianist will be playing at Symphony Hall. Do you want to go? I am pretty sure there are still tickets available. I think there is a performance on Thursday, too, but I have a meeting that night. Let me know if you can make it, and I'll order the tickets.

Gus

19. When was Maria Rogoff's concert?  
 (A) Thursday.  
 (B) Friday.  
 (C) Saturday.  
 (D) Sunday.
20. What is Gus's opinion of the music at the concert?  
 (A) It was lively.  
 (B) It was boring.  
 (C) It was relaxing.  
 (D) It was entralling.
21. What instrument does Gus prefer?  
 (A) Viola.  
 (B) Cello.  
 (C) Violin.  
 (D) Piano.
22. The word *instinct* in line 4 of the review is closest in meaning to  
 (A) preference  
 (B) knowledge  
 (C) parentage  
 (D) nature
23. The word *relaxing* in line 10 of the review is closest in meaning to  
 (A) fun  
 (B) exciting  
 (C) peaceful  
 (D) educational

## Lesson 44

### WORDS TO LEARN

acquire  
admire  
collection  
criticism  
express  
fashion  
leisure  
respond  
schedule  
significant  
specialize  
spectrum

# Museums

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **acquire** v., to gain possession of; to get by one's own efforts
  - a. The museum acquired a van Gogh during heavy bidding.
  - b. The sculptor acquired metalworking skills after much practice.
2. **admire** v., to regard with pleasure; to have esteem or respect for
  - a. Raisa, admiring the famous smile, stood before the Mona Lisa for hours.
  - b. I admire all the effort the museum put into organizing this wonderful exhibit.
3. **collection** n., a group of objects or works to be seen, studied, or kept together
  - a. The museum's collection contained many works donated by famous collectors.
  - b. The museum's collection kept two full-time curators busy.
4. **criticism** n., an evaluation, especially of literary or other artistic works
  - a. According to the criticism of the Victorian era, the painting was a masterpiece; now it is considered merely a minor work.
  - b. The revered artist's criticism of the piece was particularly insightful.
5. **express** v., to give an opinion or depict emotion
  - a. The sculptor was able to express his feelings better through the use of clay rather than words.
  - b. The photograph expresses a range of emotions.
6. **fashion** n., the prevailing style or custom
  - a. According to the fashion of the day, the languid pose of the sculpture was high art.
  - b. The museum's classical architecture has never gone out of fashion.
7. **leisure** n., freedom from time-consuming duties; free time
  - a. The woman took up painting in her retirement, when she had more leisure time.
  - b. We can go to the permanent collection at our leisure.
8. **respond** v., to make a reply; to react
  - a. You should respond to the invitation to attend the museum gala.
  - b. The visitors who viewed those poignant photographs responded emotionally.
9. **schedule** v., to enter in a planner or diary
  - a. We didn't schedule enough time to see all the exhibits that we were interested in.
  - b. The museum is scheduling a collection of works by Japanese masters.
10. **significant** adj., meaningful; having a major effect; important
  - a. The use of lambs to symbolize innocence is significant in Western art.
  - b. The rash of new acquisitions represented a significant change in the museum's policies.
11. **specialize** v., to concentrate on a particular activity
  - a. The art historian specialized in Navajo rugs.
  - b. The museum shop specializes in Ming vases.
12. **spectrum** n., a range of related qualities, ideas, or activities
  - a. The painting crosses the spectrum from symbolic to realistic representation.
  - b. The whole spectrum of artistic expression was represented in the exhibit.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

acquire	criticism	leisure	significant
admire	expressing	responded	specialize
collected	fashion	schedule	spectrum

Museums are places to view and (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the great works of art. All large cities, and even many small cities, have good art museums in which you will find a wide (2) \_\_\_\_\_ of paintings, sculptures, drawings, and prints.

Museums attempt to collect and display a broad range of examples of how, throughout time, men and women have (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to what they have seen, thought, and felt by (4) \_\_\_\_\_ themselves through materials like stone, clay, and paint, or ink and paper. The artist imposes an order on these materials that is (5) \_\_\_\_\_. Some styles of art or particular objects are in (6) \_\_\_\_\_ for only a while, and others earn positive (7) \_\_\_\_\_ over time and are seen as enduring classics. Museums collect the best of these works for the public to see.

When you go to a museum, be sure to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ plenty of time to see the art without feeling rushed. If you are lucky enough to live near a museum, you can come back again at your (9) \_\_\_\_\_. Some museums show a broad collection of art from different times and cultures, often (10) \_\_\_\_\_ and donated by their generous patrons. Other museums (11) \_\_\_\_\_ in displaying art from a certain period, say from the ancient world, or by a certain group or nationality of people, like by Native Americans.

The operations of many museums are paid for by the government, and these museums are often free to the public; other museums must charge each person upon entry. These fees help the museum operate and (12) \_\_\_\_\_ more works.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	admire	People from all around the world visit the museum to admire the great works of art on display.
noun	admiration	I have great admiration for anyone who can create art.
adjective	admired	Monet is one of the most admired artists of the Impressionist movement.

verb	collect	The enthusiast began to collect Shaker furniture in the 1960s.
noun	collection	My parents' collection of crystal had outgrown their dining room cupboard.
noun	collector	The avid collector spent weekends at estate sales looking for rare art objects.

verb	criticize	The sculptor was criticized for his lack of perspective.
noun	critic	The art critic gave the show a poor review, which saddened the exhibition team.
noun	criticism	The writer's elegant essays on the use of light in Flemish painting were landmarks in art criticism.

verb	respond	When Mr. Hon did not respond to the invitation to the opening, we assumed he was not able to attend.
noun	response	The response to the request for assistance was overwhelming.
adjective	responsive	The director was not responsive to any of the staff's suggestions, which made them both annoyed and anxious.

verb	schedule	The museum has scheduled a lecture series to accompany the special exhibit.
noun	schedule	Several local artists are featured on the gallery's winter schedule.
adjective	scheduled	There are several scheduled events at the museum this weekend.

verb	specialize	The art student decided to specialize in French and English paintings of the 1860s.
noun	specialist	The curator is a specialist in native Caribbean art.
adjective	specialized	The museum hired specialized personnel to adjust the humidity and light for the display of ancient books.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*

1. A B C D



#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A B C      3. A B C

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 4. What are the speakers discussing?<br>(A) A drawing.<br>(B) A sculpture.<br>(C) A painting.<br>(D) A photograph. | 6. What does the woman say about the museum?<br>(A) The admission fee is too expensive.<br>(B) They should acquire more works.<br>(C) It's not very interesting.<br>(D) The collection is varied. |
| 5. What does the man like about it?<br>(A) The size.<br>(B) The color.<br>(C) The style.<br>(D) The subject.       |   |

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 7. When does the lecture series at the museum begin?<br>(A) Next month.<br>(B) Next week.<br>(C) This month.<br>(D) This week.                          | 9. What is the topic of the print exhibit?<br>(A) Fashion.<br>(B) Sculpture.<br>(C) African art.<br>(D) Nineteenth-century art. |
| 8. How can you find out the schedule of guided tours?<br>(A) Visit the main gallery.<br>(B) Press two.<br>(C) Go online.<br>(D) Speak with an operator. |   |

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## Part 6 Text Completion

Thank you for visiting the Museum of History. This brochure has been developed to provide you with information to make your visit more enjoyable.

## **Viewing the Exhibits**

Our main exhibits are located on the first and second floors of the museum. They cover all aspects of local history up to the present and are organized in chronological order. You are invited to join one of our regular guided tours at no extra charge, or you can visit the exhibits on your own and view them at your 16.

## **Group Tours**

School groups and other groups that wish to visit the museum may 17 special group tours. Please contact the Museum Tour Office for more information.

Museum Bookstore

The Museum Bookstore is located on the first floor next to the cafeteria. This store specializes in books about local history. Gift items are also for sale. In 18 to the requests of many of our visitors, the bookstore hours have been extended. It is now open daily from 10:00 A.M. until 6:00 P.M.

16. (A) lesion  
(B) legion  
(C) ledger  
(D) leisure

17. (A) schedule  
(B) scheduling  
(C) to schedule  
(D) have schedule

18. (A) responsible  
(B) responsive  
(C) response  
(D) respond

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following brochure.

Most visitors to our city spend time visiting some of the many museums that we are famous for. The City Art Museum, Museum of History, National University Museum of Scientific Research, and the Hall of Presidents are among the most popular destinations for museumgoers. The National Transportation Museum, currently undergoing renovations, is scheduled to reopen next year with a larger number of exhibits and extended hours.

Visitors to the City Art Museum can admire the collection of paintings by local artists as well as famous art works from around the world. The museum's collection covers a wide spectrum of artists and styles, and critics have called it one of the most significant in the world. Art classes offered at the museum provide both the serious and the casual student of art with opportunities to explore the world of artistic expression. The Museum of History features rotating exhibits focusing on various aspects of our nation's history, and a permanent collection of portraits of our nation's presidents. This summer's special exhibit focuses on the history of fashion. The National University Museum of Scientific Research specializes in exhibits on research undertaken at the university. It also features a special hands-on exhibit for children.

All museums have the same entrance price: \$10 for adults and \$5 for children. A special \$35 weekly pass, available at any museum, allows the holder entrance to all city museums for a week. This pass is especially recommended to visitors from out of town as it provides the opportunity to visit all the museums at leisure.

19. Who is this brochure for?  
 (A) Museum employees.  
 (B) Historians.  
 (C) Students.  
 (D) Tourists.
20. Where can portraits of presidents be seen?  
 (A) City Art Museum.  
 (B) Museum of History.  
 (C) National University Museum.  
 (D) Hall of Presidents.
21. What is the price of a one-day museum ticket for an adult?  
 (A) \$3.50.  
 (B) \$5.  
 (C) \$10.  
 (D) \$35.
22. The word *admire* in the second paragraph, line 1 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) look at  
 (B) look to  
 (C) look up  
 (D) look for
23. The word *significant* in the second paragraph, line 4 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) large  
 (B) varied  
 (C) interesting  
 (D) important

## Lesson 45

### WORDS TO LEARN

assignment  
choose  
constantly  
constitute  
decision  
disseminate  
impact  
in-depth  
investigate  
link  
subscribe  
thorough

# Media

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **assignment** n., something, such as a task, that is assigned
  - a. This assignment has to be turned in before midnight.
  - b. When the reporter is on assignment, research piles up on her desk.
2. **choose** v., to select one thing over another
  - a. Alan chooses to read *The New York Times* over the *Wall Street Journal*.
  - b. I did not choose that candidate to be the editor of our student newspaper.
3. **constantly** adv., continually
  - a. An advantage of Internet news reports is that they can be constantly updated.
  - b. People constantly look to the news to keep up-to-date on what is going on in the world.
4. **constitute** v., to be the elements or parts of
  - a. All the different news sources constitute the media industry.
  - b. A talented staff, adequate printing facilities, and sufficient distribution points constitute a successful newspaper.
5. **decision** n., judgment or choice
  - a. The court made the decision to allow the newspaper to print the controversial story.
  - b. Newspaper editors often have to make quick decisions about which stories to publish.
6. **disseminate** v., to scatter widely; to distribute
  - a. The media disseminates news across the world.
  - b. The computer virus was disseminated through the newsroom by reporters sharing terminals.
7. **impact** n., a strong, immediate impression
  - a. The story of the presidential scandal had a huge impact on the public.
  - b. The impact of the news coverage is yet to be known.
8. **in-depth** adj., in complete detail; thorough
  - a. The newspaper gave in-depth coverage of the tragic bombing.
  - b. Ivan's in-depth story on the spread of the disease received praise from many of his colleagues.
9. **investigate** v., to uncover and report hidden information
  - a. Reporters need to thoroughly investigate the facts before publishing their stories.
  - b. Michelle's editor sent her to the capital to investigate the story behind the government scandal.
10. **link** n., an association; a relationship
  - a. The computer links will take you to today's headlines.
  - b. The father-daughter team of reporters is just one example of many family links at this newspaper.
11. **subscribe** v., to receive a periodical regularly on order
  - a. Jill subscribes to a gardening magazine.
  - b. It is convenient to subscribe to the newspaper because it is delivered to your house daily.
12. **thorough** adj., exhaustively complete
  - a. The reporters were thorough in their coverage of the event.
  - b. The story was the result of thorough research.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

assignments	constitutes	impact	links
chooses	decisions	in-depth	subscribes
constant	disseminated	investigative	thoroughly

Chen likes to get his news from the paper. Lemma turns on the television to find out what's going on in the world. Eve (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to more magazines than she can keep track of, whereas Kobi (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to listen to radio talk shows that cover issues (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to tap into what's going on in the world. All these people are touched by the media.

What is the media? What (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the media? The media consists of all the ways that news and information is (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to a mass audience. The media covers everything from hard news, which is (6) \_\_\_\_\_ reporting, to stories that are purely entertaining, such as whether your favorite movie star was on the "Best Dressed/Worst Dressed" list. Whether in print or broadcast on TV, the stories are the product of the reporting of many journalists who write the stories, and editors who give out the (7) \_\_\_\_\_, assess the quality of the writing and research, and make the (8) \_\_\_\_\_ about where and when the stories run.

The news has an immediate (9) \_\_\_\_\_. The Internet puts global news onto the personal computer on your desk. Almost all browsers have (10) \_\_\_\_\_ to up-to-the-minute news stories from various news services. You can get (11) \_\_\_\_\_ news updates from a variety of sources via your personal computer, providing you with the most up-to-date and (12) \_\_\_\_\_ coverage.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	choose	No one was surprised when the student decided to choose a career in journalism.
noun	choice	It's your choice whether we use a color or black and white photo.
adjective	choosy	The editor was famous for being choosy about whom she wanted on her staff.

noun	constancy	The reporter's constancy in writing thorough news reports earned her a loyal following of readers.
adjective	constant	The constant ringing of the telephone distracted Susan from writing her report.
adverb	constantly	The editor constantly asks the reporters to recheck their facts.

verb	decide	The editor decided not to publish the story because the facts were unreliable.
noun	decision	The decision to lay off several reporters was made for financial reasons alone.
adjective	decisive	Newspaper editors must be decisive when determining which stories go on the front page.

verb	investigate	Alban was excited about his first chance to investigate a story.
noun	investigation	The investigation into the president's past was covered by the media worldwide.
adjective	investigative	After turning up details in the crime that even the police had missed, Helen became well known as an investigative reporter.

verb	subscribe	I subscribe to the local newspaper to stay current.
noun	subscription	Buying a subscription to the magazine was much less expensive than buying individual issues.
noun	subscribers	The magazine went out of business because it did not have enough subscribers.

noun	thoroughness	A newspaper cannot survive long without a reputation for thoroughness.
adjective	thorough	Toshi is famous for her thorough and fair reporting of the issues.
adverb	thoroughly	The reporter thoroughly checked all his facts to avoid any potential embarrassment.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*

1. A B C D

#### Part 2 Question–Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses.  
Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A B C      3. A B C

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 4. According to the woman, why are newspapers better than TV news shows?<br>(A) Newspaper editors are decisive.<br>(B) Newspaper coverage is more thorough.<br>(C) Newspaper stories are more interesting.<br>(D) Newspapers cover better stories. | 6. What is the man's job?<br>(A) Investigative reporter.<br>(B) TV news reader.<br>(C) Journalism teacher.<br>(D) Journalism student. |
| 5. How long has the woman worked as a newspaper reporter?<br>(A) Four years.<br>(B) Thirteen years.<br>(C) Fourteen years.<br>(D) Thirty years.  |   |



#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 7. What is the topic of the news report?<br>(A) A speech made by the country's president.<br>(B) The state of the national economy.<br>(C) Fraud committed by a company president.<br>(D) An industry report. | 9. Why won't Mary Milo report the news tonight?<br>(A) She is sick.<br>(B) She got a new job.<br>(C) She is away on vacation.<br>(D) She has another assignment. |
| 8. At what time can this news report be heard?<br>(A) 5:00.<br>(B) 12:00.<br>(C) 6:00.<br>(D) 10:00.  |  |

# **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## Part 6 Text Completion

Stay on top of what's happening in today's world by 16 to *News Story Weekly*, the weekly news magazine that is read by politicians, corporate executives, and ordinary citizens like you.

*News Story Weekly* provides you with 17 coverage of the week's most important news, both national and international. *News Story Weekly* thoroughly investigates worldwide events that have an impact on your life and delivers this news to your mailbox every week.

*News Story Weekly* is disseminated throughout the country and is read by citizens from all walks of life. People who care about what's happening in the world 18 *News Story Weekly*. Shouldn't you be one of them?

To subscribe to *News Story Weekly*, call our offices at 888-685-9321, or visit us online at [www.nsw.com](http://www.nsw.com).

16. (A) subscribe  
(B) to subscribe  
(C) subscribing  
(D) should subscribe

17. (A) depth  
(B) in-depth  
(C) deepen  
(D) deepened

18. (A) is choosing  
(B) has chosen  
(C) chooses  
(D) choose

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following two letters.

April 12, 20—

Michelle Richards  
News Story Weekly  
346 Howard Avenue  
White River, NH

Dear Ms. Richards,

I am a journalist and an avid reader of *News Story Weekly*. It has long been my dream to write for your magazine. I graduated from National University a year ago with a degree in journalism. For the past six months I have been working as an investigative reporter for the *Bluefield Daily*, my hometown newspaper. This newspaper is disseminated throughout the state. I work on assignments involving local politics.

In my opinion, *News Story Weekly* is the top news magazine in the country. It has had a great impact on my life. I started reading it at an early age, and it inspired me to pursue a career as a reporter. If there is a position available for a reporter at *News Story Weekly*, I would be interested in applying for it. I believe that my educational background and work experience qualify me for such a position. I am enclosing several of my articles that appeared in the *Bluefield Daily* as writing samples. I have letters of reference available if you need them. I look forward to hearing from you.

Sincerely,

Mark Conway

April 19, 20—

Mark Conway  
1255 Park Place, Apt. 10  
Bluefield, MA

Dear Mr. Conway,

Thank you for your letter of April 12 inquiring about a position as a reporter. We are constantly looking for reporters to work for our magazine, and we currently have an opening for a reporter to cover regional news. You seem to be well-qualified, and we would welcome your application. I would need to see your reference letters as well as a resume. The closing date for this position is May 15. We will make our choice after that date and let you know what we decide by the first of June. Thank you for your interest in *News Story Weekly*.

Sincerely,

Michelle Richards

19. Why did Mark Conway write the letter?
  - (A) To express an opinion about the news.
  - (B) To get a subscription to *News Story Weekly*.
  - (C) To offer Ms. Richards an assignment.
  - (D) To apply for a job as a reporter.
20. What did Mark Conway enclose with his letter?
  - (A) Newspaper articles.
  - (B) A resume.
  - (C) Letters of reference.
  - (D) His university diploma.
21. When will Mark Conway know Michelle Richards's decision?
  - (A) April 12.
  - (B) April 15.
  - (C) May 15.
  - (D) June 1.

22. The word *impact* in the first letter, second paragraph, line 2 is closest in meaning to
  - (A) interest
  - (B) influence
  - (C) difference
  - (D) education
23. The word *constantly* in the second letter, line 2 is closest in meaning to
  - (A) always
  - (B) sometimes
  - (C) rarely
  - (D) infrequently

**Word Review #9****Lessons 41–45 Entertainment**

Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

1. Movies are probably the most popular form of \_\_\_\_\_ in the United States.  
(A) entertain  
(B) entertained  
(C) entertaining  
(D) entertainment
2. Television has seriously \_\_\_\_\_ society.  
(A) influence  
(B) influenced  
(C) influencing  
(D) influential
3. Actors can spend too much time \_\_\_\_\_ as well as too little.  
(A) rehearse  
(B) rehearsed  
(C) rehearsing  
(D) rehearsal
4. Even when a show is \_\_\_\_\_, it is sometimes possible to get in.  
(A) sell out  
(B) sell on  
(C) sold off  
(D) sold out
5. Orchestra music is wonderfully conducive to \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) relaxation  
(B) relaxed  
(C) relaxes  
(D) relax
6. There is no good or bad music, only that which does or does not appeal to your \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) taste  
(B) tastes  
(C) tasted  
(D) tasting
7. New \_\_\_\_\_ are one of the most exciting aspects of museum work.  
(A) acquire  
(B) acquisitions  
(C) acquires  
(D) acquisitive
8. Sometimes I look at a famous painting and wonder why it is considered more \_\_\_\_\_ than the ones on either side of it.  
(A) signify  
(B) signified  
(C) significant  
(D) significantly
9. The Internet \_\_\_\_\_ information faster than any other medium.  
(A) disseminate  
(B) disseminates  
(C) dissemination  
(D) disseminating
10. In any news medium, the only news is what the editor \_\_\_\_\_ is news.  
(A) decide  
(B) decides  
(C) decision  
(D) decisions

Choose the one word or phrase that best completes each sentence.

Because of DVD players and cable TV, it is no longer necessary to leave home in search of 11. Families can watch movies in the comfort of their own living rooms. Nevertheless, going out to the movies is still a popular way to spend a weekend evening. Many people enjoy going to movie theaters because they like to see new movies as soon as they 12. They may also 13 to spend an evening out in public rather than quietly at home.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 11. (A) entertain<br>(B) entertained<br>(C) entertaining<br>(D) entertainment | 13. (A) prefer<br>(B) defer<br>(C) refer<br>(D) infer |
| 12. (A) release<br>(B) released<br>(C) are released<br>(D) will be released   |   |

If you are looking for an activity that the whole family can enjoy, consider visiting one of our city's fine museums. It is the perfect way to 14 fun with education. Depending on your family's interests, you might 15 to visit a science, history, or art museum. If your children are older, they will want to visit exhibits that particularly interest them and take the time to give each one a 16 look. Younger children have a shorter attention span. Museums with interactive exhibits are best for them.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 14. (A) separate<br>(B) combine<br>(C) rehearse<br>(D) subscribe | 16. (A) thorough<br>(B) through<br>(C) thought<br>(D) though |
| 15. (A) chose<br>(B) choice<br>(C) choose<br>(D) choosy          |  |

The new play, *Sunflower Sunset*, opened at the Westwood Playhouse last night. A lot of effort went into this production. The actors 17 for months, and an elaborate set was constructed. Unfortunately, this effort could not save the dull dialogue. It was easy to see that the 18 was bored—snoring was heard throughout the theater, and many people left before the end of the play. The actors made a fine effort with their 19, but the best acting in the world cannot save a poorly written play.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 17. (A) rehearse<br>(B) rehearsed<br>(C) will rehearse<br>(D) are rehearsing | 19. (A) perform<br>(B) performer<br>(C) performable<br>(D) performance |
| 18. (A) audio<br>(B) audition<br>(C) audience<br>(D) audacity                |  |

## Lesson 46

### WORDS TO LEARN

annually  
appointment  
assess  
diagnose  
effective  
instrument  
manage  
prevent  
recommendation  
record  
refer  
serious

# Doctor's Office

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **annually** adv., once a year
  - a. Everyone should get a physical exam annually.
  - b. A number of tests are provided annually by my insurance plan.
2. **appointment** n., arrangements for a meeting; a position in a profession
  - a. To get the most out of your appointment, keep a log of your symptoms and concerns.
  - b. The psychiatrist holds an academic appointment at the university hospital as well as having a private practice.
3. **assess** v., to determine the value or rate of something
  - a. The physical therapist assessed the amount of mobility Ms. Crowl had lost after her stroke.
  - b. The insurance rate Mr. Victor was assessed went up this year after he admitted that he had started smoking again.
4. **diagnose** v., to recognize a disease; to analyze the nature of something
  - a. After considering the patient's symptoms and looking at his test results, the doctor diagnosed the lump as benign.
  - b. She diagnosed the problem as a failure to follow the directions for taking the medication.
5. **effective** adj., producing the desired effect; being in effect
  - a. Howard was pleased to find that the diet recommended by his doctor was quite effective.
  - b. The new policies, effective the beginning of the fiscal year, change the amount charged to see the physician.
6. **instrument** n., a tool for precise work; the means whereby something is achieved
  - a. The pediatrician tried not to frighten the children with her strange-looking instruments.
  - b. The senior physician carried his instruments in a black leather bag.
7. **manage** v., to handle; to deal with; to guide
  - a. The head nurse's ability to manage her staff through a difficult time caught the hospital administrator's attention.
  - b. By carefully managing their limited resources, the couple found the money for the elective surgery.
8. **prevent** v., to keep from happening; to hinder
  - a. By encouraging teenagers not to smoke, doctors are hoping to prevent many cases of cancer.
  - b. His full caseload prevented the doctor from taking on new patients.
9. **recommendation** n., advice; endorsement
  - a. It is important to follow the doctor's recommendations if you want to improve your health.
  - b. The professor gave her former student a recommendation when he applied for a job at the hospital.
10. **record** n., an official copy of documents
  - a. Ms. Han typed a written request for her medical records.
  - b. The official records kept in the city archives showed that an unusually high number of babies are born in the summer months.
11. **refer** v., to direct for treatment or information; to mention
  - a. I was referred to this specialist by the family practice nurse.
  - b. As soon as Agnes referred to the failed treatment, everyone's mood soured.
12. **serious** adj., weighty
  - a. The impact of the serious news could be read on everyone's face.
  - b. For her dissertation, she made a serious study of women's health care needs in developing nations.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

annually	diagnosing	manage	record
appointment	effective	preventing	refer
assessment	instruments	recommend	serious

Sooner or later, everyone needs to go to the doctor's office. In fact, it's in your best interest to see your doctor at least (1) \_\_\_\_\_.

The better he or she knows you and your health, the more (2) \_\_\_\_\_ your doctor can be. Most people need help in (3) \_\_\_\_\_ routine medical problems they are experiencing, such as symptoms of colds and the flu, allergies, rashes, and earaches. Other times, people visit a doctor for help in (4) \_\_\_\_\_ health problems from ever occurring, through lowering their risk of heart attack or stroke by dieting or exercising.

When you arrive for your (5) \_\_\_\_\_, the doctor's office staff will have ready a (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of all your visits, so that the doctor has a complete reference of your health. The visit will begin with an (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of your general health and a discussion of any problems that concern you.

The doctors may use a variety of (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to get a closer look at you. The doctor will (9) \_\_\_\_\_ your problem and (10) \_\_\_\_\_ a treatment plan. The doctor may prescribe medication, (11) \_\_\_\_\_ you to a specialist more experienced in treating your condition, or order tests to gain more information. In (12) \_\_\_\_\_ cases, he or she may send you to the hospital for care.

## WORD FAMILIES

<b>verb</b>	assess	He was able to assess her health problems with the help of her detailed medical history.
<b>noun</b>	assessment	The specialist's assessment of the patient's condition was consistent with the general practitioner's.
<b>adjective</b>	assessable	That medical condition is not assessable by this laboratory test.

<b>verb</b>	diagnose	Her symptoms are overlapping, making it difficult to diagnose the exact cause of her chest pain.
<b>noun</b>	diagnosis	Phil did a much better job of taking care of himself once his father had a diagnosis of lung cancer.
<b>adjective</b>	diagnostic	The new X-ray suite has all the latest diagnostic equipment.

<b>verb</b>	prevent	By stopping smoking now, you may be able to prevent lung cancer.
<b>noun</b>	prevention	He made a career of disease prevention through mass vaccinations.
<b>adjective</b>	preventive	Eloise took preventive steps against gum disease by more thorough toothbrushing.

<b>verb</b>	recommend	I recommend that you have this test annually starting at age 40.
<b>noun</b>	recommendation	Against my doctor's recommendation, I decided to purchase the generic brand of medication.
<b>adjective</b>	recommendable	There is nothing particularly recommendable about this therapy over the other therapy I mentioned.

<b>verb</b>	record	The doctor records the patient's description of her symptoms in the patient's medical chart.
<b>noun</b>	record	When you apply for health insurance, the insurance company will probably want to look at your medical records.
<b>adjective</b>	recorded	After office hours there is a recorded message on the doctor's answering machine that gives an emergency telephone number.

<b>noun</b>	seriousness	Martha's doctor tried to make her understand the seriousness of her condition.
<b>adjective</b>	serious	Mr. Kim was relieved to find out that his disease was not serious.
<b>adverb</b>	seriously	The doctor spoke seriously with Arthur about the need to lose weight.

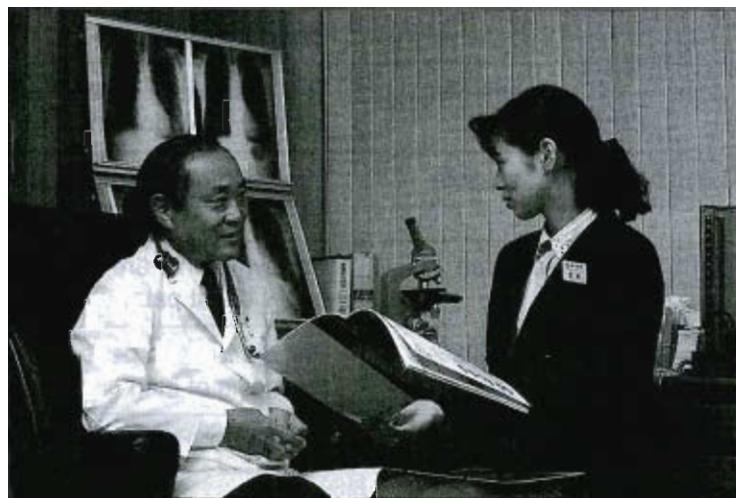
## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes  
the picture.*



1. (A) (B) (C) (D)

---

#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. (A) (B) (C)      3. (A) (B) (C)
- 

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. What does the doctor recommend that the man do? | 6. What does the man ask the doctor to give him? |
| (A) Research diagnostic methods.                   | (A) An appointment.                              |
| (B) Visit patients.                                | (B) A new diagnosis.                             |
| (C) See a specialist.                              | (C) A special treatment.                         |
| (D) Check into the best hospital.                  | (D) A copy of his record.                        |
5. When does the doctor say that the man should do this?
- (A) This afternoon.  
(B) Before 10:00.  
(C) This month.  
(D) In ten months.
- 

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 7. What kind of job is being advertised? | 9. What is a benefit of the job?    |
| (A) Doctor.                              | (A) An annual doctor's appointment. |
| (B) Office manager.                      | (B) Three weeks of vacation a year. |
| (C) Director.                            | (C) A yearly salary raise.          |
| (D) Office assistant.                    | (D) Health insurance.               |
8. How can someone apply for this job?
- (A) Send in a résumé.  
(B) Make an appointment.  
(C) Telephone the office.  
(D) Submit records.

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## Part 6 Text Completion

Welcome to the office of Dr. Shaw. The following office policies are in effect.

- Please check in with the receptionist when you arrive. If you were given a referral, please tell the receptionist the name of the doctor who 16 you.
  - We recognize that sometimes you must cancel your appointment. Cancellations must be made 24 hours ahead of time or you will 17 a missed appointment fee.
  - Please don't call us to find out the results of 18 tests. We will call you when the results are ready.
  - Effective January 1, all bills must be paid in full at the time of your visit. We accept all major credit cards.

16. (A) will refer  
(B) did refer  
(C) referred  
(D) refers

17. (A) assess  
(B) assessed  
(C) be assessed  
(D) be assessing

18. (A) diagnostically  
(B) diagnostic  
(C) diagnosed  
(D) diagnose

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following article.

### Caring for Your Health

Your health is one of your most valuable assets, so caring for it properly is very important. Regular visits to the doctor can help prevent any health problems from becoming serious. You should visit your doctor annually if you are in good health. If you have certain health conditions or if your doctor recommends it, you may need more frequent appointments.

It is important to have a doctor you can trust. The best way to find one is to get a recommendation from a trustworthy person such as a friend or relative. Call to make an appointment several weeks or even a month ahead of time. When you call, you can also ask a few questions about the doctor's background, such as which university he got his degree from and how long he has been practicing in the area. You will also want to find out which hospital the doctor is affiliated with. When you arrive for your appointment, make sure you bring a copy of your medical records with you.

When you meet with the doctor, you will want to ask him what his approach to treatment is and what diagnostic tools he uses. This way you can find out something about his skills, as well as whether or not he is a person you can talk to and feel comfortable with. Also, take a look around the office. Is it comfortable and organized? Do the instruments look clean and well-maintained?

If your appointment goes well and you feel comfortable with the doctor, then don't forget to make an appointment for your next physical before you leave the office. If you have any doubts, look around for another doctor. Having a good doctor is an essential part of your health care plan.

19. Who is this article for?  
 (A) Patients.  
 (B) Doctors.  
 (C) Hospital staff.  
 (D) Medical equipment salespeople.
20. How often should a healthy person visit the doctor?  
 (A) Once a month.  
 (B) Twice a month.  
 (C) Once a year.  
 (D) Twice a year.
21. What is the best way to find a good doctor?  
 (A) Look in the phone book.  
 (B) Call the hospital.  
 (C) Go to a university.  
 (D) Ask a friend.
22. The word *records* in the second paragraph, line 6 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) plans  
 (B) documents  
 (C) descriptions  
 (D) instructions
23. The word *instruments* in the third paragraph, line 4 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) equipment  
 (B) furniture  
 (C) environment  
 (D) clothing

## Lesson 47

### WORDS TO LEARN

aware  
catch up  
distraction  
encouragement  
evident  
habit  
illuminate  
irritate  
overview  
position  
regularly  
restore

# Dentist's Office

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **aware** adj., having knowledge
  - a. I was not aware that flossing my teeth could prevent a buildup of plaque.
  - b. My dentist made me aware that I should have an appointment twice a year.
2. **catch up** v., to bring up to date
  - a. My dentist likes to take time to catch up before she starts the examination.
  - b. The dental assistant caught up on her paperwork in between patients.
3. **distraction** n., the act of being turned away from the focus
  - a. To provide a distraction from the noise, Luisa's dentist offered her a pair of earphones.
  - b. My dentist is kind enough to provide distractions like television, which take my mind off the procedure.
4. **encouragement** n., inspiration or support
  - a. The perfect checkup was certainly encouragement to keep up my good dental hygiene.
  - b. Let me offer you some encouragement about your crooked teeth.
5. **evident** adj., easily seen or understood; obvious
  - a. The presence of a wisdom tooth was not evident until the dentist started to examine the patient.
  - b. Unfortunately, his poor dental hygiene is evident from a distance.
6. **habit** n., a customary manner or practice
  - a. The toddler's father stressed the importance of toothbrushing in hopes of establishing a good habit.
  - b. The patient had a habit of grinding his teeth during his sleep.
7. **illuminate** v., to provide or brighten with light
  - a. The dark recesses of the mouth can only be seen clearly when illuminated with a lamp.
  - b. Let me turn on more lights to properly illuminate the back teeth.
8. **irritate** v., to chafe or inflame, to bother
  - a. The broken tooth rubbed against my tongue, irritating it.
  - b. Hannah's gums are irritated by foods that are very cold or very hot.
9. **overview** n., a summary; a survey; a quick look
  - a. I did a quick overview of your teeth and they look in good shape.
  - b. An overview of your dental records shows a history of problems.
10. **position** n., the right or appropriate place
  - a. Let me tilt your head to a more comfortable position for you.
  - b. The position of the chair can be adjusted to a range of heights.
11. **regularly** adv., occurring at fixed intervals
  - a. She brushes regularly after every meal.
  - b. I have to remind my son regularly to brush his teeth.
12. **restore** v., to bring back to an original condition
  - a. The cleaning restored the whiteness of my teeth.
  - b. I will talk to my dentist about whether she knows any procedure to restore the parts of my teeth that I have ground away.

### Words in Context

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

aware	encourage	illuminates	position
catch up	evident	irritates	regularly
distraction	habit	overview	restores

At least twice a year, Toshiro makes an appointment with his dentist. He's (1) \_\_\_\_\_ that taking good care of his teeth and seeing a dentist can help prevent the buildup of tartar and plaque that could cause serious problems later.

The dentist starts the appointment by looking over Toshiro's chart, which details all the work that has been done on his teeth, as a way to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ on Toshiro's dental health. Toshiro brushes (3) \_\_\_\_\_, but is not so regular about daily flossing. His dentist is trying to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ a better flossing (5) \_\_\_\_\_, by demonstrating some easy-to-use techniques.

When the dentist is ready to look into Toshiro's mouth, she adjusts the height and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of the chair to make sure she can see all of Toshiro's teeth. A bright light (7) \_\_\_\_\_ Toshiro's eyes, but (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the dark places in the back of his mouth. The dentist does a quick (9) \_\_\_\_\_ of Toshiro's mouth, looking for any obvious problems, such as a cavity or a broken tooth. The dentist asks if Toshiro has been having any problems, like tooth pain, bleeding, or soreness.

Sometimes, problems in the mouth are quite (10) \_\_\_\_\_ and can be seen by the dentist's trained eye. But other times, the dentist will take X-rays to make certain there are no problems in areas she cannot see, such as under the gum line or inside a tooth.

The dentist then goes to work, repairing any damage. She then (11) \_\_\_\_\_ the natural color to his teeth with a thorough cleaning. The noise of the drills and cleaners can upset some patients, so Toshiro's dentist is kind enough to supply earphones to provide a (12) \_\_\_\_\_.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	distract	The child is frightened by the instruments. Try to distract his attention while I get ready.
noun	distraction	The soothing background music was a pleasant distraction from the drilling sounds at the dentist's office.
adjective	distracted	The distracted patient left the office without paying her bill.

verb	encourage	My dentist has been encouraging me to see a specialist about my gum problem.
noun	encouragement	Although the cleaning routine recommended by the dentist was tedious, with some encouragement, Richard was able to follow it regularly.
adjective	encouraging	It was encouraging to find out that I had no serious problems at my last dental checkup.

noun	evidence	The dentist found evidence of decay on my wisdom tooth.
adjective	evident	My lack of dental hygiene was evident without a checkup.
adverb	evidently	Proper flossing evidently worked, since my gums are now in good health.

noun	habit	I'm trying to start the habit of flossing at least once a day.
adjective	habitual	His habitual coffee drinking stained his teeth.
adverb	habitually	Jack is habitually late for his appointments, which forced the receptionist to scold him.

verb	irritate	My dentist was late for my appointment, which irritated me, especially since he did not apologize.
noun	irritation	I have an irritation on the inside of my mouth that won't heal.
adjective	irritating	Matthew decided to visit the dentist because of an irritating gum problem.

verb	regulate	We cannot regulate the temperature in the waiting room today because the thermostat is broken.
adjective	regular	Many dental problems can be avoided by following a regular cleaning routine.
adverb	regularly	I haven't been visiting the dentist regularly.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D.

#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <p>4. What does the dentist recommend that the patient do?</p> <p>(A) Visit her office more regularly.<br/>         (B) Shop at a certain store.<br/>         (C) Review his records.<br/>         (D) Talk about his concerns.</p> | <p>5. What does the patient want?</p> <p>(A) Shinier teeth.<br/>         (B) A cup of coffee.<br/>         (C) A copy of his records.<br/>         (D) Fillings in his cavities.</p> | <p>6. When does the patient want an appointment?</p> <p>(A) This afternoon.<br/>         (B) Tonight.<br/>         (C) Next week.<br/>         (D) Next month.</p> |
|---|--|--|

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <p>7. What product is advertised?</p> <p>(A) False teeth.<br/>         (B) A tooth whitener.<br/>         (C) Chewing gum.<br/>         (D) A toothbrush.</p> | <p>8. What are the customers asked to do?</p> <p>(A) Use the product for just two days.<br/>         (B) Change their cleaning habits.<br/>         (C) Use the product every night.<br/>         (D) Visit the dentist.</p> | <p>9. Where can the product be bought?</p> <p>(A) At a store.<br/>         (B) At the dentist's office.<br/>         (C) From a sales representative.<br/>         (D) Online.</p> |
|---|--|--|

## **READING**

## Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

10. I don't want to \_\_\_\_\_ you, but there is a phone call waiting for you at the front desk.  
(A) distractedly                    (C) distraction  
(B) distractible                    (D) distract

11. My dentist always \_\_\_\_\_ me to floss more regularly.  
(A) encouraging                    (C) encourages  
(B) encouragement                (D) encourage

12. It was \_\_\_\_\_ from the X-rays that I needed dental work.  
(A) evident                        (C) evidence  
(B) evidently                      (D) evidential

13. Knowing his \_\_\_\_\_ tidiness, I'm not surprised to learn that David flosses three times a day.  
(A) habit                            (C) habitually  
(B) habitual                        (D) habitualness

14. An \_\_\_\_\_ at the gum line can be nothing serious or the symptom of a larger problem.  
(A) irritate                        (C) irritation  
(B) irritable                        (D) irritability

15. \_\_\_\_\_ visits to the dentist are necessary for maintaining good dental health.  
(A) Regularly                      (C) Regulate  
(B) Regular                         (D) Regulates

## Part 6 Text Completion

The state of dental health in our nation is a cause for concern according to Dr. James Hibbard, president of the National Society of Dentists. Dr. Hibbard expressed his concerns in an article appearing this week in *Our Dental Health* magazine, which is distributed among dentists and other health care workers throughout the country. "Most people don't have good dental 16," he says. When people aren't careful about keeping their teeth clean, Dr. Hibbard warns, the result is 17 gums, cavities, and even tooth loss. "Dentists should be firmer about 18 their patients to maintain their dental health. Dentists need to do more education with their patients, and patients need to follow their dentists' advice," recommends Dr. Hibbard.

16. (A) habit  
(B) habits  
(C) habitual  
(D) habitually

17. (A) irritate  
(B) irritant  
(C) irritated  
(D) irritation

18. (A) encourage  
(B) encourages  
(C) encouraging  
(D) to encourage

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following advertisement and e-mail message.

**Attention dentists!**

You know how important it is to have the best equipment for your office. So why settle for less? Evidence shows that outdated, under-functioning equipment can reduce a dentist's efficiency by 50 percent or more. The Acme Dental Supply Company offers state-of-the-art dental equipment at affordable rates.

- Our special lighted dental mirrors illuminate all tooth surfaces better than any other light on the market. These mirrors are on sale this week at just \$150 per set of three. That's 25 percent off the usual price.
- Our automated patient chairs automatically adjust their positions so that you can always work comfortably, without back or shoulder strain. Available in several models and colors.
- Our Dental Office Systems computer software streamlines record keeping so that you will never fall behind with your paperwork. Full version available at \$500. Upgrade is \$175.
- Our special edition Dental Office CD set provides hours of soothing music that will keep your patients relaxed. You can focus on your work without being distracted by patient anxiety. Choose from String Quartet, Contemporary Jazz, or Sounds of Nature. \$35 per boxed set.

To: pdaly@dentaloffice.com  
 From: drbarb@dentaloffice.com  
 Subject: office equipment  
 attach: Acme Dental Supply

Peter,

Take a look at the attached ad. I think we should order a few things. I like the lighted mirrors and probably could use five or six sets, but maybe it's better to spend no more than \$300 on them for now, so I can see how well they work first. We probably need the upgrade for the record keeping software, too. It will help you stay caught up with the patient records. I think we could do without those CDs, though, don't you? We do better with the radio. You might as well go ahead and order paper, envelopes, and anything else you need for the front office at the same time.

Thanks,

Barbara

Barbara Hendricks, DDS

19. Who is Peter Daly?  
 (A) A dentist.  
 (B) A dental equipment salesman.  
 (C) A dental patient.  
 (D) A dentist's office manager.
20. How many sets of mirrors does Dr. Hendricks want to order?  
 (A) Two.  
 (B) Three.  
 (C) Five.  
 (D) Six.
21. Which Acme product is sold to relax patients?  
 (A) Computer games.  
 (B) Automated chairs.  
 (C) Special lights.  
 (D) CD sets.
22. The word *illuminate* in the first letter, second paragraph, line 1 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) smooth  
 (B) light  
 (C) clean  
 (D) repair
23. The word *distracted* in the first letter, fifth paragraph, line 3 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) interested  
 (B) entertained  
 (C) bothered  
 (D) introduced

## Lesson 48

### WORDS TO LEARN

allow  
alternative  
aspect  
concern  
emphasize  
incur  
personnel  
policy  
portion  
regardless  
salary  
suit

# Health Insurance

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **allow** *v.*, to let do or happen; to permit
  - a. My insurance does not allow me to choose my own hospital.
  - b. The health plan made an exception by allowing me to go directly to a dermatologist.
2. **alternative** *adj.*, allowing a choice; other
  - a. To lower the cost of health insurance, my employer chose an alternative method of insuring us.
  - b. I'd like to discuss alternative treatments before I agree to anything.
3. **aspect** *n.*, a feature element; an appearance
  - a. The right to choose their own doctor is an important aspect of health coverage for many people.
  - b. The aspect of HMOs that people most dislike is the lack of personal service.
4. **concern** *n.*, anxiety; worry
  - a. Whenever I have health concerns, I call my doctor.
  - b. The rising cost of health care is of great concern to many people.
5. **emphasize** *v.*, to stress
  - a. The nurse emphasized the importance of eating a balanced diet.
  - b. The new insurance plan emphasizes wellness by providing reimbursement for health club memberships.
6. **incur** *v.*, to become subject to
  - a. I incurred substantial expenses that my health plan does not cover.
  - b. Dominic incurs the cost of a co-payment at each doctor's visit.
7. **personnel** *n.*, a group of employees or workers
  - a. The office manager insisted that she needed more personnel to finish the project on time.
  - b. The employee went to see the director of personnel about taking an extended leave of absence.
8. **policy** *n.*, a set of rules and regulations
  - a. Company policy did not provide for overtime pay.
  - b. The company's insurance policy did not cover cosmetic surgery.
9. **portion** *n.*, a section or quantity within a larger thing; a part of a whole
  - a. A portion of my benefits is my health care coverage.
  - b. I am keeping a record of the portion of my income I spend on health care.
10. **regardless** *adv.*, in spite of
  - a. Regardless of the cost, we all need health insurance.
  - b. I keep going to the same doctor, regardless of the fact that she does not take my pain seriously.
11. **salary** *n.*, a fixed compensation paid regularly for work done; one's pay
  - a. The receptionist believed that he worked too hard for such a small salary.
  - b. The technician was pleased to have a raise in salary after only six months on the job.
12. **suit** *v.*, to be appropriate; to satisfy
  - a. This insurance plan doesn't suit our family as it doesn't cover well-baby care.
  - b. I have finally found a health plan that suits my needs.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

allow	concerns	personnel	regardless
alternatives	emphasize	policy	salary
aspect	incurs	portion	suitable

The cost and availability of health insurance is one of the greatest  
 (1) \_\_\_\_\_ of company (2) \_\_\_\_\_. A  
 covered employee should be familiar with the terms and conditions of  
 the insurance (3) \_\_\_\_\_. Although the insured pays a  
 (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of the cost of his or her coverage through  
 (5) \_\_\_\_\_ deductions, the employer generally covers  
 most of the cost.

Self-employed persons can arrange for their own insurance or join  
 an association of those performing similar work in order to get lower  
 premiums. Traditionally, the insurance carrier will (6) \_\_\_\_\_  
 most of the charges related to medical care, although the insured  
 might be responsible for a small portion.

Although the company or association negotiates the most  
 (7) \_\_\_\_\_ terms they can, most experts (8) \_\_\_\_\_  
 that employees should be on the lookout for (9) \_\_\_\_\_  
 that might better suit their needs. (10) \_\_\_\_\_ of the cost  
 of premiums, the most important (11) \_\_\_\_\_ of good  
 health insurance is that it meets the needs of the insured and  
 (12) \_\_\_\_\_ the least possible cost for necessary  
 procedures.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	allow	The insurance policy did not allow multiple prescription refills.
noun	allowance	The policy is liberal in its allowance for optometry services.
adjective	allowable	A maximum of two dental visits is allowable under the plan.

verb	alternate	We alternate turns in taking the kids to the doctor.
noun	alternative	Our medical insurance was too expensive, so we sought a cheaper alternative.
adjective	alternative	We need to find an alternative health plan as this one is too expensive.

verb	concern	It concerns me that we haven't been able to find a suitable health insurance plan.
noun	concern	A good doctor will pay attention to any and all concerns the patient expresses about his or her health.
adjective	concerned	I am concerned about the limited benefits this insurance plan offers.

verb	emphasize	The plan representative emphasized the need for a second medical opinion.
noun	emphasis	The emphasis of the health plan is on staying well.
adjective	emphatic	Hassan made an emphatic appeal to the medical insurance director.

verb	regard	We regard this health insurance plan as one of the best options available.
adjective	regardful	The company was not regardful of the needs of most of the employees when it chose this health insurance plan.
adverb	regardless	I took the job regardless of the poor health benefits the company offers.

verb	suit	I'm dropping my health plan because it does not suit my needs.
adjective	suitable	Not every kind of health insurance is suitable for every family.
adverb	suitably	The errors on my insurance statement were caught and suitably fixed.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. A. B. C. D.

#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| <p>4. What will happen if the man sees a specialist without a referral?</p> <p>(A) He will be dropped from his health plan.<br/>         (B) He will see only a portion of the bill.<br/>         (C) He won't be provided with good care.<br/>         (D) He will pay a higher percentage of the cost.</p> | <p>5. When can the man get an appointment with his primary care provider?</p> <p>(A) In three days.<br/>         (B) In ten days.<br/>         (C) In two weeks.<br/>         (D) In three weeks.</p> | <p>6. What does the woman recommend to the man?</p> <p>(A) See a specialist soon.<br/>         (B) See his primary care provider first.<br/>         (C) Get a treatment for his headache.<br/>         (D) Get a special procedure.</p> |
|--|---|--|

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <p>7. Why has a new health plan been chosen?</p> <p>(A) To help people save money.<br/>         (B) Because the old plan is no longer available.<br/>         (C) To get more benefits.<br/>         (D) Because people are interested in alternative medicine.</p> | <p>8. Who will the new plan be available to?</p> <p>(A) Only people who earn a low salary.<br/>         (B) Anyone who is interested.<br/>         (C) Only people who have special health concerns.<br/>         (D) Just those who have worked at the company for a long time.</p> | <p>9. When will the new health plan be in effect?</p> <p>(A) Today.<br/>         (B) In two weeks.<br/>         (C) In several months.<br/>         (D) Next year.</p> |
|---|--|--|

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

10. Office policy does not \_\_\_\_\_ employees to leave the office for medical appointments.  
(A) allow (C) allowable  
(B) allowing (D) allowance

11. You should investigate to see if there are any \_\_\_\_\_ to costly hospital stays.  
(A) alternate (C) alternatives  
(B) alternatively (D) alternating

12. It \_\_\_\_\_ me that our company is not willing to look for an alternative to our current health insurance plan.  
(A) concern (C) concerns  
(B) concerned (D) concerning

13. I'm really pleased that my health plan provider is paying for my gym membership as a way to \_\_\_\_\_ its concern for my health.  
(A) emphasis (C) emphatic  
(B) emphasize (D) emphasizing

14. I \_\_\_\_\_ health insurance as an indispensable job benefit.  
(A) regardless (C) regarding  
(B) regardful (D) regard

15. The employee's goal is to find her family \_\_\_\_\_ health coverage.  
(A) suit (C) suitably  
(B) suitable (D) suitability

## Part 6 Text Completion

## Memo

To: All personnel  
From: Human Resources Office  
Re: Health Insurance

Many of you have expressed an interest in certain 16 health care treatments such as acupuncture and massage. In response to this, we have negotiated a new health insurance 17 with our provider, and benefits now include a discount on visits to acupuncturists, massage therapists, and naturopaths. In order to take advantage of this discount, you need only to present your insurance card on your first visit to an approved provider. Please be advised that this discount 18 only on visits to providers from the approved list. Please notify this office if you would like a copy of the list of approved alternative health care providers.

16. (A) alter  
(B) alternate  
(C) alternative  
(D) alternatively

17. (A) policy  
(B) police  
(C) politic  
(D) polite

18. (A) allow  
(B) allows  
(C) is allowed  
(D) are allowed

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following notice.

**Workshop**

Did you know that full medical coverage is available to all company employees and their families, regardless of position or salary? If you need to know more, attend the workshop that will be held in Conference Room 3 next Friday at 11:00. All aspects of our health care policy will be explained. This workshop will be particularly useful to new personnel, although all are welcome. However, you must register to attend. Please contact the Human Resources Office before 5:00 Thursday.

We will go over the various alternative plans available to company employees and discuss what criteria you need to consider in selecting the plan that best suits your needs. We will explain exactly what is covered and what is not under each alternative, and what portion of each doctor's visit or treatment that you must pay out of pocket. We will leave time at the end for a question-and-answer session to make sure that all your concerns are addressed. This workshop will last two hours.

19. What is the workshop about?  
 (A) Choosing a doctor.  
 (B) Health insurance.  
 (C) Alternative medicine.  
 (D) Planning a medical treatment.
20. Who can attend the workshop?  
 (A) Anyone.  
 (B) New personnel only.  
 (C) The Human Resources staff.  
 (D) Only employees with families.
21. What time will the workshop end?  
 (A) 11:00.  
 (B) 1:00.  
 (C) 2:00.  
 (D) 5:00.
22. The word *suits* in the second paragraph, line 4 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) depends  
 (B) satisfies  
 (C) expresses  
 (D) emphasizes
23. The word *concerns* in the second paragraph, line 9 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) assignments  
 (B) answers  
 (C) benefits  
 (D) worries

## Lesson 49

### WORDS TO LEARN

admit  
authorize  
designate  
escort  
identify  
mission  
permit  
pertinent  
procedure  
result  
statement  
usually

# Hospitals

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **admit** v., to permit to enter
  - a. The injured patient was admitted to the unit directly from the emergency room.
  - b. The staff refused to admit the patient until he had proof of insurance.
2. **authorize** v., to approve
  - a. The doctor suggested that she check with her insurance company to make sure it would authorize a lengthened hospital stay.
  - b. We cannot share the test results with you until we have been authorized to do so by your doctor.
3. **designate** v., to indicate or specify
  - a. The labels on the bags designated the type of blood they contained.
  - b. On her admittance form, Grandmother designated Aunt Tessa as her chief decision-maker.
4. **escort** n., a person accompanying another to guide or protect
  - a. Let's see if there is an escort available to take you to the parking garage.
  - b. You cannot leave the unit on your own; you'll have to wait for an escort.
5. **identify** v., to ascertain the name or belongings of
  - a. The tiny bracelets identified each baby in the nursery.
  - b. Your medical records are all marked with your patient number to identify them in case of a mix-up.
6. **mission** n., an inner calling to pursue an activity or perform a service
  - a. The hospital chaplain took as his mission to visit every patient admitted each day.
  - b. The nurse explained that the mission of everyone in the unit was to make sure the patients got well as soon as possible.
7. **permit** v., to allow
  - a. Smoking is not permitted anywhere inside the hospital.
  - b. Would you check with the nurse to see if I am permitted to eat before surgery?
8. **pertinent** adj., having relevance to the matter at hand
  - a. You should mention any pertinent health issues to the staff before you are admitted for surgery.
  - b. The patient's health record contained pertinent information, like the dates of all his inoculations.
9. **procedure** n., a series of steps taken to accomplish an end
  - a. The surgical procedure can now be done in half the amount of time it took even five years ago.
  - b. Call the hospital to schedule this procedure for tomorrow.
10. **result** n., an outcome
  - a. Your lab results won't be ready for hours.
  - b. The scientific results prove that the new procedure is not significantly safer than the traditional one.
11. **statement** n., an accounting showing an amount due; a bill
  - a. The billing statement was filed with the insurance company last month.
  - b. Check with your doctor's office for an original statement; we cannot process a faxed copy.
12. **usually** adv., customarily
  - a. That kind of surgery is usually performed on an outpatient basis.
  - b. The insurance company does not usually pay for procedures that are considered elective or optional.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.

admitting	escort	permitted	results
authorization	identification	pertinent	statement
designated	mission	procedures	usually

Hospitals have a (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to provide patients with high-quality medical care. Everyone on staff will make sure that you get the best possible treatment for your condition.

When you arrive at the hospital, you should have with you all the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ information needed to be admitted, like your insurance information and copies of X-rays and other test (3) \_\_\_\_\_, even if they were taken at another facility.

Bring your insurance card and any referral or (4) \_\_\_\_\_ form from your doctor. You should also have some form of (5) \_\_\_\_\_ with a photo. You will also need to sign an agreement regarding treatment consent. Once you arrive, there is usually a concierge who will assist you with the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ process.

Many elective surgeries and other (7) \_\_\_\_\_ are (8) \_\_\_\_\_ done on the same day. Usually a hospital staff member will (9) \_\_\_\_\_ you to the exit and make sure you get into the car safely. After you leave the hospital, you will receive a (10) \_\_\_\_\_ from the hospital for the charges your insurer does not cover. Your insurance policy will outline any amount for which you may be responsible.

You will find that smoking is not (11) \_\_\_\_\_ in any hospital building. Often, hospitals have (12) \_\_\_\_\_ smoking areas outside for patients, families, and staff who wish to smoke.

## WORD FAMILIES

verb	admit	The patients lined the hospital corridors waiting to be admitted.
noun	admittance	Your admittance to the hospital is dependent on your showing proof that you can pay the bills.
noun	admission	Take these records down to Admissions and have them duplicate the files for you.

verb	authorize	Your doctor has to authorize these tests before we can proceed with them.
noun	authority	Before major surgery, it is a good idea to give decision-making authority to a close relative in case something happens to you.
noun	authorization	The nurse could not submit an authorization over the phone; it had to be done in writing.

verb	designate	The hospital administrator designated a team to create an emergency preparedness plan.
noun	designation	The designation of the hospital as one of the best in the region certainly helped its marketing efforts.
noun	designator	The national health service is the sole designator of which hospitals will get the grants.

verb	identify	If you will identify your valuables, the nurse will give them back to you.
noun	identification	Please remember to bring some form of identification with you when you check in at the hospital.
adjective	identifiable	The red cross on the hospital's helicopter landing pad was identifiable from the air.

verb	permit	I can't permit more than one visitor at a time in the intensive care unit.
noun	permission	Mohammed got his insurance company's permission to stay another day in the hospital.
adjective	permissible	It is not permissible to smoke inside the hospital.

adjective	usual	It is usual for health insurance companies to require patients to make co-payments for hospital stays.
adjective	unusual	Because of her unusual condition, Martha's doctor sent her to a specialist for treatment.
adverb	usually	These days, patients usually stay in the hospital for only a few days at a time.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences.  
Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*



1. (A) (B) (C) (D)

#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. (A) (B) (C)      3. (A) (B) (C)

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. What is the woman's complaint?<br>(A) The records weren't delivered on time.<br>(B) Her husband didn't get an identification card.<br>(C) The computer system broke down.<br>(D) Her husband's records got mixed up. | 6. Why was the woman's husband in the hospital?<br>(A) For a surgical procedure.<br>(B) To change his medications.<br>(C) For tests.<br>(D) To visit a friend. |
| 5. Who is the man?<br>(A) A hospital administrator.<br>(B) A hospital patient.<br>(C) A doctor.<br>(D) A nurse.   |  |

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 7. Who is the speaker?<br>(A) A doctor.<br>(B) A lab technician.<br>(C) A nurse.<br>(D) An insurance agent.         | 9. What will the listener do with the paperwork?<br>(A) Prepare it.<br>(B) Give it to the nurse.<br>(C) Take it to the lab.<br>(D) Submit it to the insurance company. |
| 8. When will the surgery take place?<br>(A) In eight days.<br>(B) In a week.<br>(C) In ten days.<br>(D) In 23 days. |  |

## **READING**

## **Part 5 Incomplete Sentences**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## Part 6 Text Completion

## **City Hospital**

## **Admissions Procedures**

- When you arrive, check in with the nurse on duty at the front desk.
  - All patients must have signed 16 from a doctor before entering the hospital. Please give the signed form to the nurse.
  - The nurse will also need to see a form of identification and proof of insurance. We cannot 17 anyone to the hospital without these. There will be no exceptions.
  - The nurse will complete the pertinent paperwork and assign you to a room.
  - Please wait in the designated area. A hospital staff member 18 you to your room.
  - Family members are not permitted to accompany patients to their rooms. They must wait until the usual visiting hours to see their loved ones. A schedule of visiting hours is posted in the main lobby.

16. (A) author  
(B) authorize  
(C) authority  
(D) authorization

17. (A) submit  
(B) admit  
(C) remit  
(D) omit

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following two e-mail messages.

To: Annabelle Pope  
 From: Henry Rice  
 Subject: Surgery

Hi Annabelle,

I was wondering if you could help me out with something. My doctor has recommended that I get knee replacement surgery. I am trying to identify the best hospital for this sort of procedure. My doctor says she usually recommends City Hospital, but I have heard that Upstate Hospital specializes in this kind of surgery. You had a similar procedure last year, didn't you? I think you broke your knee, or was it your elbow? Which hospital did you go to? Were you satisfied with the results of your treatment, and were you well cared for by the staff? I would appreciate the benefit of your advice. I need to make a decision soon since my doctor thinks this should be done before another month goes by. Thanks.

Henry

To: Henry Rice  
 From: Annabelle Pope  
 Subject: Re: Surgery

Hi Henry,

I am sorry you need surgery, but I am sure you will feel it is worth it. I had my procedure done at Upstate Hospital, and I would recommend that place to anyone. The procedure I had was similar to yours, except it was my hip, not my knee. My surgeon was excellent, and I received good care from all the staff. The mission of the hospital is to provide the highest level of care possible, and the entire staff works hard to fulfill that mission. I was originally told that I would need to be in the hospital for a week, but when it became clear that I wouldn't be recovered enough by that time, the doctor didn't hesitate to keep me there for an extra three days. They wouldn't permit me to go home until they were sure I was ready. I really think Upstate is the best hospital for your surgery. Let me know when it is scheduled, and I will visit you there.

Annabelle

19. What does Henry ask Annabelle to do?  
 (A) Recommend a hospital.  
 (B) Perform surgery.  
 (C) Visit him in the hospital.  
 (D) Talk to his doctor.
20. Why was Annabelle in the hospital last year?  
 (A) For a broken knee.  
 (B) For a broken elbow.  
 (C) For a hip replacement.  
 (D) For a knee replacement.
21. How long was Annabelle in the hospital?  
 (A) Three days.  
 (B) A week.  
 (C) Ten days.  
 (D) A month.
22. The word *results* in the first e-mail, line 10 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) outcome  
 (B) process  
 (C) nature  
 (D) price
23. The word *mission* in the second e-mail, line 7 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) rule  
 (B) goal  
 (C) demand  
 (D) requirement

## Lesson 50

### WORDS TO LEARN

consult  
control  
convenient  
detect  
factor  
interaction  
limit  
monitor  
potential  
sample  
sense  
volunteer

# Pharmacy

*Study the following definitions and examples.*

1. **consult** v., to seek advice or information of
  - a. The doctor consulted with a specialist before writing a new prescription.
  - b. May I consult with you about a drug interaction case I have?
2. **control** v., to exercise authoritative or dominating influence over
  - a. To control the cost of this medication, you may get the generic version.
  - b. Please take your medication every day to control your high blood pressure.
3. **convenient** adj., suited or favorable to one's purpose; easy to reach
  - a. Is this a convenient location for you to pick up your prescription?
  - b. It is convenient to have a pharmacy right across the street from my doctor's office.
4. **detect** v., to discover or ascertain
  - a. My doctor put me through some simple tests to detect if I have asthma.
  - b. I have to keep track of my sleep patterns to detect how many times I get up in the night.
5. **factor** n., a contribution to an accomplishment, a result, or a process
  - a. Taking medications as directed is an important factor in getting well.
  - b. Could my cat be a factor contributing to my asthma?
6. **interaction** n., a mutual activity
  - a. My pharmacist was concerned about the interaction of the two medications I was prescribed.
  - b. The interaction between the patient and the doctor showed a high level of trust.
7. **limit** n., the point beyond which something cannot proceed
  - a. My prescription has a limit of three refills.
  - b. My health plan authorization sets a limit on which health care providers I can see without their permission.
8. **monitor** v., to keep track of
  - a. The nurse practitioner carefully monitors the number of medications her patients are taking.
  - b. The patient had weekly appointments so that the doctor could monitor her progress.
9. **potential** adj., capable of being but not yet in existence; possible
  - a. To avoid any potential side effects from the medication, be sure to tell your doctor all the drugs you are currently taking.
  - b. Given the potential delay in getting reimbursed by the health plan, why don't we just fill one prescription today?
10. **sample** n., a portion, piece, or segment that is representative of a whole
  - a. The pharmacist gave Myra a few free samples of the allergy medication.
  - b. A sample of the population taking the new medicine was surveyed to determine whether it caused side effects.
11. **sense** n., a judgment; an intellectual interpretation
  - a. The doctor had a good sense about what the problem was but wanted to get a second opinion.
  - b. I got the sense it would be better to get my prescription filled right away.
12. **volunteer** v., to perform as a volunteer
  - a. My doctor volunteered to call the drugstore, so my medication would be waiting for me.
  - b. Since Tom was feeling so unwell, his son volunteered to pick up his prescription at the pharmacy for him.

## WORDS IN CONTEXT

*Read the following passage and write the words in the blanks below.*

consulting	detection	limit	samples
control	factors	monitor	sense
convenient	interactions	potential	volunteers

Yoko is having trouble with seasonal allergies this fall. After (1) \_\_\_\_\_ with her doctor, they decide she should take medication on a regular basis to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ her symptoms. Her doctor recommends the medication he thinks will work best and offers her a handful of (3) \_\_\_\_\_ at no charge. For her long-term needs, Yoko will need to have a prescription filled. Her doctor (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to call the pharmacy Yoko uses to order a supply, which will (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the time she spends waiting for the prescription to be filled.

Yoko is new in town and does not know which pharmacy she wants to use. She knows that there is a drugstore near her apartment and one near where she works, but does not remember the operating hours for either. Yoko knows that (6) \_\_\_\_\_ hours and location are important (7) \_\_\_\_\_ in selecting a pharmacy. Although she can fill different prescriptions at different drugstores, it makes more (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to Yoko to fill all of her medications at one location.

Occasionally, some drugs will have harmful (9) \_\_\_\_\_. Usually, your doctor will prevent a drug interaction problem before it starts. But, if you see more than one doctor, it is hard to (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the various medications you are taking. Having all your prescriptions filled at one location increases the chances that the pharmacist will detect a (11) \_\_\_\_\_ drug interaction problem. This timely (12) \_\_\_\_\_ can save your life.

## WORD FAMILIES

<b>verb</b>	consult	Beatrice consulted her pharmacist about the number of different medications she is taking.
<b>noun</b>	consultation	Let me arrange a consultation with a specialist to discuss your heart problem and some possible medications.
<b>adjective</b>	consultative	This is a consultative process and you probably won't have a definitive answer immediately.

<b>noun</b>	convenience	The convenience of a 24-hour neighborhood pharmacy is not to be underestimated.
<b>adjective</b>	convenient	Many people shop there because of its convenient location.
<b>adverb</b>	conveniently	The pharmacy is conveniently located on my way home from work.

<b>verb</b>	detect	The laboratory test detected the presence of medication in his blood.
<b>noun</b>	detection	Early detection of diseases usually means that medications can be more effective.
<b>adjective</b>	detectable	After he took his medication faithfully for a few months and exercised more, Jack's disease was no longer detectable.

<b>verb</b>	limit	My health insurance company has severely limited the amount of money it will pay out for prescription medicine.
<b>noun</b>	limit	Even though that headache medicine does not require a prescription, there is a limit to how many times a day you should take it.
<b>adjective</b>	limited	The new drugstore on the corner really isn't convenient because of its limited hours of operation.

<b>noun</b>	potential	Be careful when taking this medication because it has the potential to make you feel sleepy.
<b>adjective</b>	potential	Margaret decided not to take the medicine the doctor had prescribed because of its potential side effects.
<b>adverb</b>	potentially	Many medications are potentially dangerous so it is important to take them exactly as prescribed by the doctor.

<b>verb</b>	volunteer	The pharmacist volunteers his services monthly at the free clinic for homeless people.
<b>noun</b>	volunteer	Volunteers bring filled prescriptions from the pharmacy to the homes of shut-ins.
<b>adjective</b>	voluntary	Your compliance with this new policy is completely voluntary, but we think it is in the public interest that you do so.

## WORD PRACTICE

### LISTENING COMPREHENSION



#### Part 1 Photo

*Look at the picture and listen to the sentences. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.*

1. A. B. C. D.



#### Part 2 Question-Response

*Listen to the question and the three responses. Choose the response that best answers the question.*

2. A. B. C.      3. A. B. C.

#### Part 3 Conversation

*Listen to the dialogue. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. Who is the man talking to?  | 6. When will the man fill the prescription?  |
| (A) A doctor.<br>(B) A pharmacist.<br>(C) His wife.<br>(D) His friend. | (A) Today.<br>(B) Within two days.<br>(C) On the way to work.<br>(D) After trying the samples. |
| 5. What is the man's problem?  |  |
| (A) Headache.<br>(B) Backache.<br>(C) Broken hand.<br>(D) Broken nose. |  |

#### Part 4 Talk

*Listen to the talk. Then read each question and choose the best answer.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 7. What is a possible side effect of the medication?                                       | 9. Why should the patient call the doctor in a few days?  |
| (A) Sleepiness.<br>(B) Stomachaches.<br>(C) Fatigue.<br>(D) Headaches.                     | (A) To request more days off work.<br>(B) To report how the medication is working.<br>(C) To get pills for his headaches.<br>(D) To ask for more samples. |
| 8. How often should the patient take the medication?                                       |   |
| (A) Once a day.<br>(B) Two times a day.<br>(C) Three times a day.<br>(D) Four times a day. |   |

## **READING**

## Part 5 Incomplete Sentences

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*



## Part 6 Text Completion

**Cloverdale Pharmacy**

The neighborhood pharmacy that you can rely on!

Cloverdale is open 24 hours a day, seven days a week. Unlike other pharmacies with limited schedules, we're open all the time. You can rely on us in an emergency at any time of day. And, our schedule makes it 16 for busy working people to fill prescriptions after work or on weekends.

You're always safe with us! When you fill a prescription at Cloverdale, we keep a careful record. This way, we can easily 17 the medications you are taking and inform you of any potentially harmful interactions.

Do you need help selecting over-the-counter medications? Our pharmacists are available to 18 with you and help you choose the medications that suit your needs.

Cloverdale Pharmacy. We're here to serve you.

16. (A) convenient  
(B) convenience  
(C) conveniently  
(D) convention

17. (A) are monitored  
(B) be monitored  
(C) to monitor  
(D) monitor

18. (A) conduct  
(B) consult  
(C) construct  
(D) conjunct

**Part 7 Reading Comprehension**

Questions 19–23 refer to the following article.

Many people don't realize that their pharmacist is an important member of their health care team. If you always fill your prescriptions at the same pharmacy, then you will have a pharmacist who is familiar with your medical issues and can detect any possible problems with your medications. In fact, it is a good idea to volunteer information about medications you are already taking when you visit a new pharmacist. Then, she can add this information to your records and have a complete file of information. She can monitor the drugs you are taking and let you know of any potential interactions or harmful side effects.

If cost is an issue for you, your pharmacist can help. Ask her if there are any less expensive brands of your medication available. Or, you can request that she fill only half the prescription, to give you a chance to try out the medication before paying for the entire amount. You can also ask your doctor for a few free samples. Once you have ascertained that the prescribed medication is working for you, you can go ahead and ask your pharmacist to fill the prescription for you. When you pick up your prescription, don't forget to ask the pharmacist to explain to you how to take it if you have any doubts. She can also supply you with written instructions.

Your pharmacist can provide you with important support, but there is a limit to what she can do. If you suspect that you have a problem that requires medical attention, you should always consult your doctor right away.

19. What is the purpose of this article?  
 (A) To explain the role of a pharmacist.  
 (B) To help select medications.  
 (C) To give instructions on taking medications.  
 (D) To advertise a particular pharmacy.
20. What can you ask your pharmacist to do?  
 (A) Recommend a good doctor.  
 (B) Suggest different brands.  
 (C) Write a prescription.  
 (D) Give you medical attention.
21. What should you ask for when you pick up your prescription?  
 (A) A cheaper brand.  
 (B) Some free samples.  
 (C) Instructions.  
 (D) A discount.
22. The word *detect* in line 4 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) repair  
 (B) create  
 (C) inform  
 (D) discover
23. The word *potential* in line 8 is closest in meaning to  
 (A) common  
 (B) interesting  
 (C) dangerous  
 (D) possible

**Word Review #10****Lessons 46–50 Health**

*Choose the word that best completes the sentence.*

1. Your doctor's \_\_\_\_\_ are as important as his prescriptions.  
 (A) recommend  
 (B) recommended  
 (C) recommending  
 (D) recommendations
2. Dentists are as concerned with your dental \_\_\_\_\_ as with the condition of your teeth.  
 (A) habits  
 (B) habitual  
 (C) habitually  
 (D) habituated
3. To avoid \_\_\_\_\_ any additional charges, you should ask to be discharged from the hospital.  
 (A) incur  
 (B) incurs  
 (C) incurred  
 (D) incurring
4. It is as fast and efficient to \_\_\_\_\_ with your pharmacist as with your physician.  
 (A) consult  
 (B) consulting  
 (C) consulted  
 (D) consultation
5. Although an annual checkup is important, you should also make an \_\_\_\_\_ whenever you have a health concern.  
 (A) appoint  
 (B) appointed  
 (C) appointment  
 (D) appointments
6. A dentist can perform dental \_\_\_\_\_ as well as routine maintenance.  
 (A) restore  
 (B) restored  
 (C) restoring  
 (D) restoration
7. A good medical insurance will \_\_\_\_\_ preventive health programs as well as treatment.  
 (A) emphasize  
 (B) emphasis  
 (C) emphasizing  
 (D) emphasized
8. The most difficult part of hospitalization is being \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) admit  
 (B) admitted  
 (C) admissions  
 (D) admitting
9. A pharmacist will \_\_\_\_\_ the customer's medications.  
 (A) monitor  
 (B) monitors  
 (C) monitoring  
 (D) monitored
10. I don't understand most of what I read in a hospital's billing \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) state  
 (B) stated  
 (C) stating  
 (D) statement

*Choose the one word or phrase that best completes each sentence.*

The most important part of your health care is the 11 visit to your doctor. By visiting your doctor once a year, you can feel sure that any changes in your health will be detected. Your doctor might 12 lifestyle changes, such as diet and exercise, that you will need to make in order to maintain your health. The best way to 13 serious disease, after all, is to maintain a healthy lifestyle.

11. (A) daily  
 (B) monthly  
 (C) annual  
 (D) perennial
12. (A) recommend  
 (B) recommends  
 (C) to recommend  
 (D) recommending
13. (A) prevent  
 (B) prevention  
 (C) preventive  
 (D) preventively

**Memo**

To: All company staff  
 From: Human Resources Office  
 Re: Dental insurance

Dental insurance is now available to all company 14. We can offer you a policy that covers all the 15 dental procedures, such as cleanings and fillings. Unfortunately, surgery and other complicated procedures will not be covered. If you are interested in applying for this insurance, please notify our office before the end of this month. We 16 you to take advantage of this opportunity to obtain affordable dental care for yourself and your family.

14. (A) person  
 (B) personal  
 (C) personify  
 (D) personnel
15. (A) usually  
 (B) usual  
 (C) unusual  
 (D) unusually
16. (A) are encouraged  
 (B) encouraging  
 (C) encouraged  
 (D) encourage

Your doctor has prescribed this medication to treat your symptoms. Take it as instructed by your doctor. It is most 17 when taken with meals. Consult with your doctor before taking any additional medications to avoid 18 harmful interactions. Possible side effects of this medication include sleepiness and 19 of the stomach.

17. (A) effect  
 (B) effective  
 (C) effectively  
 (D) effectiveness
18. (A) potent  
 (B) potion  
 (C) potential  
 (D) potentially
19. (A) irritate  
 (B) irritant  
 (C) irritation  
 (D) irritating

# Answer Key

## Lessons 1–5 General Business

### Lesson 1 Contracts

**Words in Context:** 1. agreement 2. parties 3. specifies  
4. obligates 5. assurance 6. establishment 7. determine  
8. provide 9. resolve 10. engaging 11. abide by 12. cancel  
**Word Practice:** 1. B 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. D 7. A 8. A  
9. B 10. A 11. A 12. B 13. D 14. B 15. D 16. D 17. B  
18. D 19. A 20. B 21. C 22. A 23. D

### Lesson 2 Marketing

**Words in Context:** 1. product 2. market 3. persuaded  
4. consumers 5. attract 6. satisfied 7. current 8. inspire  
9. convince 10. compared 11. competes 12. fad  
**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. D 6. A 7. D 8. C  
9. B 10. C 11. A 12. C 13. A 14. D 15. B 16. C 17. A  
18. D 19. B 20. A 21. C 22. D 23. B

### Lesson 3 Warranties

**Words in Context:** 1. promise 2. required 3. frequently  
4. consider 5. characteristics 6. vary 7. coverage 8. implies  
9. expire 10. protect 11. reputations 12. consequences  
**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. A  
9. D 10. D 11. B 12. D 13. C 14. A 15. D 16. A 17. B  
18. C 19. A 20. D 21. D 22. B 23. A

### Lesson 4 Business Planning

**Words in Context:** 1. develop 2. primary 3. avoid  
4. strength 5. substitute 6. strategy 7. evaluation 8. offered  
9. risks 10. gathering 11. demonstrate 12. address  
**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. B 7. B 8. A  
9. B 10. A 11. A 12. C 13. D 14. C 15. A 16. D 17. A  
18. C 19. C 20. A 21. B 22. A 23. D

### Lesson 5 Conferences

**Words in Context:** 1. associations 2. get in touch 3. take  
part in 4. sessions 5. attending 6. select 7. arrangements  
8. accommodate 9. hold 10. overcrowded 21. location  
22. register  
**Word Practice:** 1. D 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. D  
9. A 10. B 11. C 12. B 13. A 14. A 15. D 16. A 17. D  
18. C 19. B 20. B 21. C 22. D 23. A

**Word Review #1:** 1. C 2. D 3. D 4. D 5. A 6. B 7. A 8. B  
9. A 10. A 11. D 12. B 13. C 14. B 15. A 16. C 17. B  
18. D 19. C

## Lessons 6–10 Office Issues

### Lesson 6 Computers

**Words in Context:** 1. shut down 2. warning 3. figure out  
4. access 5. search 6. deleted 7. duplicate 8. ignore  
9. display 10. failed 21. allocate 22. compatible

**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. A 3. A 4. D 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. C  
9. D 10. A 11. B 12. B 13. B 14. B 15. C 16. B 17. A  
18. D 19. C 20. C 21. D 22. B 23. D

### Lesson 7 Office Technology

**Words in Context:** 1. is in charge of 2. durable  
3. affordable 4. reduce 5. capacity 6. physical 7. initiates  
8. stays on top of 9. recurring 10. provider 11. as needed  
12. stock

**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. B 6. A 7. D 8. B  
9. C 10. D 11. C 12. A 13. B 14. D 15. B 16. A 17. C  
18. D 19. A 20. C 21. D 22. B 23. A

### Lesson 8 Office Procedures

**Words in Context:** 1. appreciation 2. made of 3. reinforced  
4. casually 5. code 6. out of 7. verbalize 8. practices  
9. outdated 10. been exposed to 11. brought in 12. glimpse  
**Word Practice:** 1. B 2. C 3. C 4. B 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. A  
11. B 12. B 13. D 14. A 15. B 16. C 17. C 18. B 19. B  
20. C 21. B 22. C 23. A

### Lesson 9 Electronics

**Words in Context:** 1. sharply 2. networks 3. facilitated  
4. processing 5. disks 6. technical 7. storage 8. software  
9. replace 10. popular 11. revolutionize 12. skills  
**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. D 7. A 8. C  
9. D 10. C 11. D 12. B 13. A 14. C 15. A 16. B 17. C  
18. C 19. B 20. D 21. B 22. A 23. B

### Lesson 10 Correspondence

**Words in Context:** 1. proofed 2. revision 3. beforehand  
4. assemble 5. folding 6. courier 7. express 8. registered  
9. layout 10. mention 11. complicated 12. petition

**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. A 8. B  
9. D 10. A 11. B 12. A 13. A 14. B 15. C 16. D 17. A  
18. D 19. D 20. C 21. A 22. B 23. C

**Word Review #2:** 1. C 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. B  
9. C 10. B 11. D 12. B 13. D 14. A 15. C 16. B 17. D  
18. A 19. B

## Lessons 11–15 Personnel

### Lesson 11 Job Advertising and Recruiting

**Words in Context:** 1. time-consuming 2. match 3. recruit  
4. accomplishments 5. bring together 6. abundant  
7. candidates 8. qualifications 9. coming up with 10. profile  
11. commensurate 12. submit

**Word Practice:** 1. D 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. D 8. A  
9. A 10. C 11. A 12. A 13. B 14. D 15. A 16. B 17. D  
18. A 19. B 20. C 21. A 22. D 23. C

**Lesson 12 Applying and Interviewing**

**Words in Context:** 1. experts 2. confidence 3. weaknesses  
 4. constantly 5. follow up 6. abilities 7. apply  
 8. backgrounds 9. called in 10. are ready for 11. present  
 12. hesitant

**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. D 6. A 7. D 8. B  
 9. B 10. D 11. C 12. A 13. D 14. B 15. A 16. B 17. C  
 18. D 19. C 20. C 21. D 22. A 23. D

**Lesson 13 Hiring and Training**

**Words in Context:** 1. conducted 2. rejected 3. successfully  
 4. generate 5. hires 6. training 7. update 8. keep up with  
 9. set up 10. mentor 11. look up to 12. on track

**Word Practice:** 1. B 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. B 7. D 8. B  
 9. D 10. B 11. B 12. C 13. A 14. D 15. B 16. A 17. D  
 18. D 19. B 20. D 21. A 22. D 23. C

**Lesson 14 Salaries and Benefits**

**Words in Context:** 1. negotiated 2. benefits  
 3. compensated 4. delicate 5. be aware of 6. wage  
 7. flexibility 8. basis 9. raise 10. retirement 11. eligible  
 12. vested

**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. A  
 9. B 10. A 11. D 12. B 13. B 14. C 15. D 16. A 17. C  
 18. C 19. C 20. B 21. A 22. D 23. A

**Lesson 15 Promotions, Pensions, and Awards**

**Words in Context:** 1. recognizes 2. contributions  
 3. achievements/merits 4. promotions  
 5. merits/achievements 6. loyalty 7. obvious 8. look to  
 9. productivity 10. value 11. look forward 12. dedicate  
**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. C  
 9. C 10. C 11. C 12. C 13. C 14. B 15. A 16. D 17. B  
 18. A 19. C 20. D 21. B 22. A 23. B

**Word Review # 3:** 1. A 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. D 6. C 7. B 8. B  
 9. D 10. A 11. A 12. B 13. D 14. D 15. A 16. D 17. C  
 18. B 19. C

**Lessons 16–20 Purchasing****Lesson 16 Shopping**

**Words in Context:** 1. bear 2. behavior 3. mandatory  
 4. strictly 5. items 6. expand 7. exploring 8. comforting  
 9. merchandise 10. bargains 11. checkout 12. trend  
**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. B 8. C  
 9. D 10. C 11. A 12. D 13. A 14. C 15. C 16. C 17. C  
 18. D 19. C 20. B 21. A 22. D 23. A

**Lesson 17 Ordering Supplies**

**Words in Context:** 1. everyday 2. stationery 3. obtained  
 4. diverse 5. maintaining 6. essential 7. prerequisite  
 8. smooth 9. functioning 10. enterprise 11. source  
 12. quality

**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. D 6. D 7. B 8. A  
 9. B 10. C 11. C 12. C 13. C 14. B 15. A 16. B 17. D  
 18. B 19. A 20. C 21. D 22. A 23. D

**Lesson 18 Shipping**

**Words in Context:** 1. integral 2. catalog 3. shipping  
 4. minimize 5. accurate 6. carrier 7. inventory 8. sufficient  
 9. fulfill 10. on hand 11. remember 12. supplies

**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. D 8. D  
 9. A 10. A 11. C 12. A 13. A 14. C 15. B 16. B 17. D  
 18. A 19. D 20. A 21. C 22. B 23. C

**Lesson 19 Invoices**

**Words in Context:** 1. efficient 2. order 3. compiled  
 4. charges 5. customer 6. estimated 7. terms 8. imposed  
 9. discount 10. mistake 11. rectified 12. promptly

**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. C 6. C 7. D 8. D  
 9. C 10. B 11. B 12. C 13. A 14. C 15. B 16. A 17. D  
 18. C 19. C 20. D 21. B 22. A 23. C

**Lesson 20 Inventory**

**Words in Context:** 1. verifies 2. crucial 3. liability  
 4. running 5. subtracts 6. adjusted 7. automatically  
 8. scanning 9. reflect 10. tedious 11. discrepancies  
 12. disturbances

**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. B 6. D 7. D 8. D  
 9. B 10. B 11. A 12. A 13. D 14. D 15. A 16. A 17. A  
 18. B 19. B 20. C 21. B 22. C 23. A

**Word Review # 4:** 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. C 6. C 7. B 8. A  
 9. D 10. B 11. D 12. B 13. A 14. C 15. D 16. B 17. A  
 18. C 19. D

**Lessons 21–25 Financing and Budgeting****Lesson 21 Banking**

**Words in Context:** 1. transact 2. borrow 3. mortgages  
 4. cautious 5. down payment 6. dividends 7. restrict 8. take  
 out 9. balance 10. deductions 11. accept 12. signature

**Word Practice:** 1. D 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. A 6. A 7. D 8. A  
 9. C 10. A 11. D 12. B 13. B 14. C 15. D 16. C 17. B  
 18. A 19. C 20. B 21. D 22. A 23. C

**Lesson 22 Accounting**

**Words in Context:** 1. accumulated 2. budget 3. clients  
 4. outstanding 5. profitable 6. audited 7. accounting  
 8. building up 9. turnover 10. reconcile 11. debt 12. assets

**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. B  
 9. A 10. D 11. A 12. B 13. B 14. C 15. C 16. B 17. D  
 18. D 19. B 20. B 21. C 22. D 23. B

**Lesson 23 Investments**

**Words in Context:** 1. invest 2. resources 3. wise  
 4. portfolio 5. pull out 6. return 7. committed 8. long-term  
 9. fund 10. attitude 11. conservative (or aggressive)  
 12. aggressive (or conservative)

**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. A 6. D 7. D 8. B  
 9. A 10. C 11. B 12. A 13. A 14. C 15. D 16. C 17. D  
 18. C 19. B 20. C 21. B 22. A 23. D

**Lesson 24 Taxes**

**Words in Context:** 1. prepares 2. deadline 3. fill out  
 4. filed 5. spouse 6. joint 7. refund 8. calculated 9. owe  
 10. gave up 11. withhold 12. penalized

**Word Practice:** 1. D 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. D 6. D 7. A 8. D  
 9. A 10. A 11. B 12. B 13. D 14. B 15. C 16. C 17. C  
 18. B 19. B 20. C 21. D 22. A 23. D

**Lesson 25 Financial Statements**

**Words In Context:** 1. level 2. target 3. forecasts 4. overall 5. projected 6. desired 7. yield 8. translate 9. realistic 10. perspective 11. detailed 12. typical

**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. C 11. C 12. B 13. A 14. D 15. A 16. D 17. A 18. B 19. A 20. C 21. A 22. B 23. D

**Word Review #5:** 1. A 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. D 10. D 11. B 12. D 13. C 14. D 15. B 16. C 17. A 18. B 19. A

**Lessons 26–30 Management Issues****Lesson 26 Property and Departments**

**Words In Context:** 1. disruptive 2. adjacent 3. lobby 4. inconsiderate 5. collaboration 6. hampered 7. move up 8. scrutinized 9. opting 10. conducive 11. concentrate 12. open to

**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. D 8. C 9. A 10. B 11. B 12. A 13. C 14. A 15. C 16. B 17. C 18. D 19. A 20. C 21. D 22. B 23. C

**Lesson 27 Board Meetings and Committees**

**Words In Context:** 1. waste 2. agenda 3. matters 4. goals 5. lengthy 6. adhered to 7. brought up 8. priority 9. go ahead 10. periodically 11. progress 12. concluded

**Word Practice:** 1. D 2. C 3. C 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. A 8. D 9. A 10. A 11. A 12. B 13. C 14. B 15. B 16. D 17. C 18. B 19. C 20. D 21. B 22. A 23. C

**Lesson 28 Quality Control**

**Words In Context:** 1. conform 2. defects 3. garment 4. inspect 5. throws out 6. enhance 7. repel 8. take back 9. brand 10. uniform 11. wrinkle 12. perceive

**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. B 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. B 7. D 8. B 9. D 10. C 11. C 12. A 13. C 14. C 15. A 16. A 17. C 18. D 19. B 20. D 21. C 22. A 23. B

**Lesson 29 Product Development**

**Words In Context:** 1. anxious 2. decade 3. supervisor 4. responsible 5. logical 6. systematic 7. ascertain 8. solve 9. researched 10. examining 11. experiments 12. assume

**Word Practice:** 1. B 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. A 11. A 12. C 13. B 14. B 15. B 16. C 17. D 18. B 19. A 20. D 21. C 22. D 23. A

**Lesson 30 Renting and Leasing**

**Words In Context:** 1. apprehensive 2. lease 3. Occupancy 4. indicator 5. fluctuations 6. due to 7. condition 8. lock themselves into 9. get out of 10. circumstances 11. options 12. subject to

**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. D 6. B 7. D 8. B 9. B 10. B 11. A 12. D 13. C 14. B 15. C 16. A 17. C 18. D 19. A 20. D 21. B 22. C 23. A

**Word Review #6:** 1. C 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C 6. D 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. D 11. A 12. B 13. C 14. B 15. D 16. C 17. A 18. C 19. D

**Lessons 31–35 Restaurants and Events****Lesson 31 Selecting a Restaurant**

**Words In Context:** 1. secure 2. relies 3. guidance 4. suggestion 5. subjective 6. daring 7. appeal 8. majority 9. compromise 10. mix 11. familiar 12. arrive

**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. B 11. C 12. D 13. D 14. C 15. A 16. B 17. C 18. D 19. B 20. D 21. A 22. B 23. C

**Lesson 32 Eating Out**

**Words In Context:** 1. randomly 2. patrons 3. predict 4. forget 5. remind 6. mix up 7. complete 8. judged 9. excite 10. basic 11. flavor 12. ingredients

**Word Practice:** 1. B 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. D 8. C 9. C 10. A 11. C 12. D 13. C 14. A 15. D 16. B 17. B 18. A 19. D 20. A 21. C 22. B 23. B

**Lesson 33 Ordering Lunch**

**Words In Context:** 1. falls to 2. burdensome 3. multiple 4. narrow 5. common 6. individual 7. settled 8. list 9. delivered 10. pick up 11. impress 12. elegant

**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. C 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. D 11. C 12. B 13. A 14. B 15. C 16. A 17. D 18. D 19. B 20. A 21. D 22. A 23. C

**Lesson 34 Cooking as a Career**

**Words In Context:** 1. outlet 2. drawn 3. profession 4. demanding 5. influx 6. incorporate 7. methods 8. themes 9. accustomed 10. relinquish 11. culinary

12. apprenticeship

**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. D 9. D 10. D 11. D 12. C 13. B 14. B 15. A 16. B 17. D 18. B 19. A 20. D 21. C 22. A 23. D

**Lesson 35 Events**

**Words In Context:** 1. coordinated 2. planning 3. site 4. stage 5. exact 6. dimensions 7. regulations 8. lead time 9. ideally 10. assist 11. proximity 12. general

**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. D 8. B 9. A 10. C 11. A 12. B 13. A 14. C 15. B 16. D 17. A 18. C 19. D 20. A 21. D 22. B 23. C

**Word Review #7:** 1. C 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. C 8. C 9. D 10. B 11. C 12. A 13. D 14. B 15. D 16. B 17. C 18. D 19. A

**Lessons 36–40 Travel****Lesson 36 General Travel**

**Words In Context:** 1. agent 2. valid 3. itinerary 4. delayed 5. prohibited 6. embarkation 7. board 8. depart

9. beverage 10. blanket 11. announcements 12. claims

**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. D 11. C 12. B 13. A 14. B 15. A 16. A 17. C 18. B 19. C 20. B 21. B 22. D 23. D

**Lesson 37 Airlines**

**Words In Context:** 1. deal with 2. expensive 3. substantial 4. economical 5. destination 6. system 7. prospective

8. situation 9. excursion 10. equivalent 11. extending

12. distinguishable

**Word Practice:** 1. D 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. D 11. A 12. C 13. D 14. D 15. B 16. B 17. C 18. B 19. D 20. B 21. D 22. A 23. C

### Lesson 38 Trains

**Words in Context:** 1. relatively 2. punctual 3. fares 4. directories 5. comprehensive 6. remote 7. operate 8. remainder 9. duration 10. deluxe 11. offset 12. entitle  
**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. A 10. C 11. A 12. A 13. B 14. C 15. B 16. D 17. A 18. A 19. C 20. B 21. D 22. A 23. D

### Lesson 39 Hotels

**Words in Context:** 1. preclude 2. rates 3. reservations 4. advance 5. notify 6. confirm 7. quoted 8. service 9. expect 10. housekeeper 11. chains 12. check in  
**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. C 11. B 12. D 13. C 14. A 15. B 16. A 17. C 18. D 19. D 20. B 21. A 22. C 23. C

### Lesson 40 Car Rentals

**Words in Context:** 1. tempted 2. nervous 3. coincided 4. disappointment 5. busy 6. contacted 7. license 8. confusing 9. intended 10. optional 11. tier 12. thrill  
**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. B 3. B 4. D 5. D 6. C 7. D 8. C 9. A 10. D 11. C 12. A 13. C 14. D 15. A 16. B 17. A 18. C 19. C 20. B 21. A 22. D 23. B

---

**Word Review #8:** 1. D 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. D 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. B 11. B 12. A 13. D 14. C 15. A 16. B 17. D 18. A 19. C

## Lessons 41–45 Entertainment

### Lesson 41 Movies

**Words in Context:** 1. continues 2. entertaining 3. disperse 4. influence 5. descriptions 6. represent 7. successive 8. range 9. combines 10. released 11. attain 12. separate  
**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. A 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. A 11. C 12. A 13. B 14. D 15. B 16. D 17. C 18. D 19. C 20. B 21. B 22. A 23. D

### Lesson 42 Theater

**Words in Context:** 1. created 2. elements 3. performance 4. occurs 5. approach 6. action 7. experiences 8. dialogue 9. rehearsal 10. audience 11. reviews 12. sell out  
**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. A 6. D 7. D 8. D 9. B 10. B 11. A 12. D 13. C 14. A 15. B 16. A 17. C 18. B 19. B 20. A 21. D 22. C 23. D

### Lesson 43 Music

**Words in Context:** 1. reason 2. available 3. category 4. taste 5. divided 6. broad 7. disparate 8. urge 9. instinctive 10. prefer 11. favorite 12. relax  
**Word Practice:** 1. D 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. C 11. A 12. D 13. A 14. D 15. B 16. C 17. D 18. A 19. C 20. B 21. B 22. D 23. C

### Lesson 44 Museums

**Words in Context:** 1. admire 2. spectrum 3. responded 4. expressing 5. significant 6. fashion 7. criticism 8. schedule 9. leisure 10. collected 11. specialize 12. acquire

**Word Practice:** 1. B 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. C 11. C 12. A 13. C 14. D 15. B 16. D 17. A 18. C 19. D 20. B 21. C 22. A 23. D

### Lesson 45 Media

**Words in Context:** 1. subscribes 2. chooses 3. thoroughly 4. constitutes 5. disseminated 6. investigative 7. assignments 8. decisions 9. impact 10. links 11. constant 12. in-depth  
**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B 6. D 7. C 8. C 9. D 10. C 11. D 12. B 13. B 14. B 15. A 16. C 17. B 18. D 19. D 20. A 21. D 22. B 23. A

---

**Word Review #9:** 1. D 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. A 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. B 11. D 12. C 13. A 14. B 15. C 16. A 17. B 18. C 19. D

## Lessons 46–50 Health

### Lesson 46 Doctor's Office

**Words in Context:** 1. annually 2. effective 3. diagnosing 4. preventing 5. appointment 6. record 7. assessment 8. instruments 9. manage 10. recommend 11. refer 12. serious

**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. C 6. D 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. D 11. A 12. D 13. A 14. B 15. A 16. C 17. C 18. D 19. A 20. C 21. D 22. B 23. A

### Lesson 47 Dentist's Office

**Words in Context:** 1. aware 2. catch up 3. regularly 4. encourage 5. habit 6. position 7. irritates 8. illuminates 9. overview 10. evident 11. restores 12. distraction

**Word Practice:** 1. B 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. C 9. D 10. D 11. C 12. A 13. B 14. C 15. B 16. B 17. C 18. C 19. D 20. A 21. D 22. B 23. C

### Lesson 48 Health Insurance

**Words in Context:** 1. concerns 2. personnel 3. policy 4. portion 5. salary 6. allow 7. suitable 8. emphasize 9. alternatives 10. regardless 11. aspect 12. incurs

**Word Practice:** 1. A 2. C 3. C 4. D 5. D 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. A 11. C 12. C 13. B 14. D 15. B 16. C 17. A 18. C 19. B 20. A 21. B 22. B 23. D

### Lesson 49 Hospitals

**Words in Context:** 1. mission 2. pertinent 3. results 4. authorization 5. identification 6. admitting 7. procedures 8. usually 9. escort 10. statement 11. permitted 12. designated

**Word Practice:** 1. D 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. A 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. B 11. A 12. B 13. D 14. C 15. A 16. D 17. B 18. B 19. A 20. C 21. C 22. A 23. B

### Lesson 50 Pharmacy

**Words in Context:** 1. consulting 2. control 3. samples 4. volunteers 5. limit 6. convenient 7. factors 8. sense 9. interactions 10. monitor 11. potential 12. detection

**Word Practice:** 1. C 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. B 11. D 12. A 13. A 14. B 15. C 16. A 17. D 18. B 19. A 20. B 21. C 22. D 23. D

---

**Word Review #10:** 1. D 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. C 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. D 11. C 12. A 13. A 14. D 15. B 16. D 17. B 18. D 19. C

# Word Index

The number indicates the lesson in which the word is taught.

abide by 1	assume 29	category 43	contribute 15	disruption 26
ability 12	assurance 1	cautiously 21	control 50	disseminate 45
abundant 11	attainment 41	chain 39	convenient 50	distinguish 37
accept 21	attend 5	characteristic 3	convince 2	distraction 47
access 6	attitude 23	charge 19	coordinate 35	disturb 20
accommodate 5	attract 2	check in 39	courier 10	diversity 17
accomplishment 11	audience 42	checkout 16	cover 3	divide 43
accounting 22	audit 22	choose 45	creative 42	dividend 21
accumulate 22	authorize 49	circumstance 30	criticism 44	down payment 21
accurately 18	automatically 20	claim 36	crucial 20	draw 34
accustom to 34	available 43	client 22	culinary 34	due to 30
achievement 15	avoid 4	code 8	currently 2	duplicate 6
acquire 44	aware 47	coincide 40	customer 19	durable 7
action 42	background 12	collaboration 26		duration 38
address 4	balance 21	collection 44	daringly 31	economize 37
adhere to 27	bargain 16	combine 41	deadline 24	effective 46
adjacent 26	basic 32	come up with 11	deal with 37	efficient 19
adjustment 20	basis 14	comfort 16	debt 22	elegance 33
admire 44	be aware of 14	commensurate 11	decade 29	element 42
admit 49	be in charge of 7	commit 23	decision 45	eligible 14
advanced 39	be made of 8	commonly 33	dedication 15	embarkation 36
affordable 7	be ready for 12	compare 2	deduct 21	emphasize 48
agent 36	bear 16	compatible 6	defect 28	encouragement 47
agenda 27	beforehand 10	compensate 14	delay 36	engage 1
aggressively 23	behavior 16	competition 2	delete 6	enhance 28
agreement 1	benefit 14	compile 19	delicately 14	enterprise 17
allocate 6	beverage 36	complete 32	delivery 33	entertainment 41
allow 48	blanket 36	complication 10	deluxe 38	entitle 38
alternative 48	board 36	comprehensive 38	demand 34	equivalent 37
announcement 36	borrow 21	compromise 31	demonstrate 4	escort 49
annually 46	brand 28	concentrate 26	depart 36	essentially 17
anxious 29	bring in 8	concern 48	description 41	establish 1
appeal 31	bring together 11	conclude 27	designate 49	estimate 19
apply 12	bring up 27	condition 30	desire 25	evaluate 4
appointment 46	broaden 43	conducive 26	destination 37	everyday 17
appreciation 8	budget 22	confidence 12	detail 25	evident 47
apprehensive 30	build up 22	confirm 39	detect 50	exact 35
apprentice 34	burden 33	conform 28	determine 1	examine 29
approach 42	busy 40	confusion 40	develop 4	excite 32
arrangement 5	calculation 24	consequence 3	diagnose 46	excursion 37
arrive 31	call in 12	conservative 23	dialogue 42	expand 16
as needed 7	cancellation 1	consider 3	dimension 35	expect 39
ascertain 29	candidate 11	constantly 45	directory 38	expense 37
aspect 48	capacity 7	constantly 12	disappoint 40	experience 42
assemble 10	carrier 18	constitute 45	discount 19	experiment 29
assess 46	casually 8	consult 50	discrepancy 20	expert 12
asset 22	catalog 18	consume 2	disk 9	expiration 3
assignment 45	catch up 47	contact 40	disparate 43	explore 16
assist 35		continue 41	disperse 41	expose 8

express (adj.) 10	influx 34	mortgage 21	prevent 46	repel 28
express (v.) 44	ingredient 32	move up 26	primarily 4	replace 9
extend 37	initiative 7	multiple 33	priority 27	representation 41
facilitate 9	inspect 28	narrow 33	procedure 49	reputation 3
factor 50	inspiration 2	negotiate 14	process 9	require 3
fad 2	instinct 43	nervously 40	productive 2	research 29
failure 6	instrument 46	network 9	profession 34	reservation 39
fall to 33	integral 18	notify 39	profile 11	resolve 1
familiar 31	intend 40	obligate 1	profitably 22	resource 23
fare 38	interaction 50	obtain 17	progress 27	respond 44
fashion 44	inventory 18	obviously 15	prohibit 36	responsibility 29
favor 43	investigate 45	occupy 30	project 25	restore 47
figure out 6	irritate 47	occur 42	promise 3	restricted 21
file 24	item 16	offer 4	promote 15	result 49
fill out 24	itinerary 36	offset 38	promptly 19	retire 14
flavor 32	joint 24	on hand 18	proof 10	return 23
flexibly 14	judge 32	on track 13	prospective 37	review 42
fluctuate 30	keep up with 13	open to 26	protect 3	revise 10
fold 10	layout 10	operate 38	provider 7	revolution 9
follow up 12	lead time 35	opt 26	provision 1	risk 4
forecast 25	lease 30	option 30	proximity 35	run 20
forget 32	leisure 44	optional 40	pull out 23	salary 48
frequently 3	lengthy 27	order 19	punctually 38	sample 50
fulfill 18	level 25	out of 8	qualifications 11	satisfaction 2
function 17	liability 20	outdated 8	quality 17	scan 20
fund 23	license 40	outlet 34	quote 39	schedule 44
garment 28	limit 50	outstanding 22	raise 14	scrutiny 26
gather 4	link 45	overall 25	randomly 32	search 6
general 35	list 33	overcrowded 5	range 41	secure 31
generate 13	lobby 26	overview 47	rate 39	select 5
get in touch 5	location 5	owe 24	realistic 25	sell out 42
get out of 30	lock into 30	party 1	reason 43	sense 50
give up 24	logical 29	patron 32	recognition 15	separately 41
glimpse 8	long term 23	penalty 24	recommendation 46	serious 46
go ahead 27	look forward to 15	perceptive 28	reconcile 22	service 39
goal 27	look up to 13	perform 42	record 46	session 5
guide 31	look to 15	periodically 27	recruit 11	set up 13
habit 47	loyal 15	permit 49	rectify 19	settle 33
hamper 26	made of 8	personnel 48	recur 7	sharp 9
hesitant 12	maintain 17	perspective 25	reduction 7	ship 18
hire 13	majority 31	persuasion 2	refer 46	shut down 6
hold 5	manage 46	pertinent 49	reflection 20	signature 21
housekeeper 39	mandatory 16	petition 10	refund 24	significant 44
ideally 35	market 2	physically 7	regardless 48	site 35
identify 49	match 11	pick up 33	register 5	situation 37
ignore 6	matter 27	plan 35	registered 10	skill 9
illuminate 47	mention 10	policy 48	regularly 47	smooth 17
impact 45	mentor 13	popularity 9	regulate 35	software 9
imply 3	merchandise 16	portfolio 23	rehearse 42	solve 29
impose 19	merit 15	portion 48	reinforce 8	source 17
impress 33	method 34	position 47	reject 13	specialize 44
in depth 45	minimize 18	potential 50	relatively 38	specific 1
inconsiderately 26	mission 49	practice 8	relaxation 43	spectrum 44
incorporate 34	mistake 19	preclude 39	release 41	spouse 24
incur 48	mix 31	predict 32	relinquish 34	stage 35
indicator 30	mix-up 32	prefer 43	rely 31	statement 49
individual 33	monitor 50	preparation 24	remainder 38	stationery 17
influence 41		prerequisite 17	remember 18	stay on top of 7
		present 12	remind 32	stock 7
			remote 38	store 9
				strategy 4

strictly 16	suit 48	tempt 40	turnover 22	vested 14
strong 4	supervisor 29	terms 19	typically 25	volunteer 50
subject to 30	supply 18	thème 34		
subjective 31	system 37	thorough 45	uniformly 28	wage 14
submit 11	systematically 29	thrill 40	update 13	warning 6
subscribe 45		throw out 28	urge 43	waste 27
substantially 37	take back 28	tier 40	usually 49	weakly 12
substitution 4	take out 21	time-consuming 11	valid 36	wisely 23
subtract 20	take part in 5	training 13	value 15	withhold 24
success 13	target 25	transaction 21	variety 3	wrinkle 28
successive 41	taste 43	translation 25	verbally 8	
sufficiently 18	technically 9	trend 16	verify 20	yield 25
suggestion 31	tedious 20			

# Appendix

Tapescript for the Listening Comprehension Exercises

## LESSON 1

### Part 1: Photo

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) The signers are having a party.
- (B) The men are signing an agreement.
- (C) The provisions are in the cabinet.
- (D) The cancelled flight is on the tarmac.

### Part 2: Question–Response

**Number 2.**

You were engaged when you bought the car, right?

- (A) Yes, it's in the cage by the cart.
- (B) No, my fiancé can't drive.
- (C) We bought the car in March.

**Number 3.**

Haven't you resolved that problem yet?

- (A) We're working on it.
- (B) We have both letters.
- (C) You have my assurance.

### Part 3: Conversation

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] Do you think we will ever resolve our difficulties with the computer company? They keep charging us for extra services that they haven't provided.

[W] They've assured me several times that they will correct our bills, but they haven't done it yet.

[M] Last month they charged us for repair services that we never ordered. Maybe we should cancel their services now and find another provider.

[W] No, we signed an agreement to use their services for only a year. There's just two months left on that contract, then we can sign with a different company.

### Part 4: Talk

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

The last provision in the contract states that if either party determines it is in his best interest to cancel the contract, he is obligated to inform the other immediately of his intention. If you both agree, we can specify that the canceling party must communicate his intent at least thirty days prior to cancellation. All the rest seems to be in order. I can have my assistant write up the agreement and have it ready for the two of you to sign at the end of the week.

## LESSON 2

### Part 1: Photo

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) The clerk is competing with others.
- (B) The shoppers are comparing prices.
- (C) The man is not attracting a crowd.
- (D) The consumer is convincing the sales person.

### Part 2: Question–Response

**Number 2.**

Aren't pop-up ads on the Internet just a fad?

- (A) No, they're here to stay.
- (B) I put up with a lot.
- (C) She's not fat.

**Number 3.**

Was the customer satisfied with our work?

- (A) Satisfaction is guaranteed.
- (B) Very.
- (C) I found a new customer today.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[W] With a new store opening across the street, we'll have to work harder to compete in our market. We need to attract more customers to our store and our products.

[M] Perhaps our ads could show some of our satisfied customers and have them talk about their experiences shopping with us. Ads like that are often persuasive.

[W] What an inspired idea. Let's get to work on it right away. I'll call a photographer to come over and shoot pictures of people shopping in our store.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

To attract new customers, we must first convince them that we offer something worthwhile. We need to inspire them to try our services, just once, so that they can make their own comparison. Their experience will persuade them that we are better than the competition. But what is it that we offer that makes us unique? What do you think we offer that the competition does not? We will discuss these questions during our workshop this afternoon, but our task doesn't stop there. When you go home tonight, I want each of you to think about how you can best promote our company's products, so that when you meet with our store clients you give us the best representation possible.

**LESSON 3****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) They're considering purchasing the bag.
- (B) They're protecting their dog.
- (C) They're covering the carpet.
- (D) They're checking the expiration date.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

When does the warranty expire?

- (A) I always check the warranty.
- (B) Three years from date of purchase.
- (C) That's the implication.

**Number 3.**

What are the consequences of not registering your purchase?

- (A) If you don't register, you won't receive any recall notices.
- (B) Consequently, we quit the company.
- (C) Our company purchased more this year than last.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] Your car comes with a basic one-year, thirty-thousand-mile warranty, but you might want to consider purchasing a two-year, sixty-thousand-mile extended warranty. Both guarantee full protection as long as you have the car serviced by an approved mechanic.

[W] What are the consequences if I choose not to use an approved mechanic?

[M] The terms of the warranty require you to choose a mechanic from our approved list in order to be covered.

[W] Then I'll use an approved mechanic for now, but I won't purchase the extended warranty. Then I can use my own mechanic when the basic warranty expires.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

We frequently receive items that are still under warranty, but we don't automatically repair them. Don't forget: a warranty is only valid if the product has been used according to the manufacturer's directions. Oftentimes a buyer will drop a machine or use it for something other than what it's intended for. Consequently, they're not covered. A common characteristic of this type of return is that it's cracked or smashed, or shows an unusual pattern of wear. Remember, we promise our customers that all our products will operate smoothly every time when handled according to the directions enclosed in each package. All defective products returned within thirty days of purchase will get a complete refund. Products returned after that time are sent to us for repair.

**LESSON 4****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) The managers are planning a strategy.
- (B) The president is dressing for dinner.
- (C) The primary shape is round.
- (D) The demonstrators are avoiding the meeting.

**Part 2: Question–Response**

**Number 2.**

Have you addressed the cost of infrastructure in your business plan?

- (A) Those costs are all factored in.
- (B) No, we can't dress so casually.
- (C) These structures are higher than we had planned.

**Number 3.**

In what ways has the restaurant grown or developed?

- (A) Its own vegetables in the back gardens.
- (B) It's now a national chain.
- (C) It is taller and stronger.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[W] Alexa is developing a business plan. I told her you might be able to help her with the market research.

[M] I'd be happy to offer to help with that. I'm very proud of her. Going into business for yourself can be risky but very rewarding.

[W] I know she is very serious about careful planning to avoid making obvious mistakes.

[M] Yes, she has the right approach. The most important strategy for success is to start with a sound business plan.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Now let's turn to page seventeen of the business plan. This section addresses our strategy for long-term development of the company. In order to minimize risk over the long haul, we hope to grow only as quickly as the company can support. In other words, we want to avoid more borrowing so that the primary funding for growth comes from profits. We believe that this is the best way to develop a strong company that will not be seriously harmed by temporary downturns in the market. On page eighteen you will see our evaluation method outlined. The first phase of the evaluation of our business plan is set to begin early next year.

**LESSON 5****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) The attendees are registering at the desk.
- (B) The organizers are selecting a podium.
- (C) The banquet room is overcrowded.
- (D) The participants are attending a session.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

How many will attend the conference?

- (A) On Thursday.
- (B) At least one hundred folks.
- (C) We've made the arrangements.

**Number 3.**

Was the room overcrowded?

- (A) No, the crowd waited.
- (B) That, and hot, too.
- (C) The room was number two hundred twelve.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] Has the committee selected a site for our conference next year?

[W] Not yet. It's difficult to find a site that can accommodate a group of our size. We don't want our sessions to be overcrowded.

[M] That's true. And if our projections are correct, we can expect around 500 people to attend. But we need to have a site selected by the end of next month.

[W] We have some possibilities in mind. We'll know soon if any of them will work out.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

All conference facilities need to provide reasonable accommodation for people with disabilities. Disabled individuals need to be able to take part in every session that is being offered. In case a session is held in an off-site location, we are not responsible for providing accommodation. But for any event held at our facility, we need to make the necessary arrangements for disabled participants. Most areas of our facility are handicapped accessible, but in some situations we need to make further accommodations. For example, conference planners are asked to get in touch with us ahead of time if any attendees will require special interpreters for the hearing impaired. To facilitate this, conference planners usually ask attendees to request interpreters at the time that they register for the conference.

**LESSON 6****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) The computers are in the display window.
- (B) The duplicate photos are on the table.
- (C) The computers are shut down.
- (D) The programs are deleted.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Have you shut down your computer yet?

- (A) It's still on.
- (B) I just got my computer last week.
- (C) Here's the showdown.

**Number 3.**

Do you want to duplicate it, or delete it?

- (A) Oh, I definitely need a copy.
- (B) I'll do it double time.
- (C) Deleted files go into the recycle bin.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] I can't figure this out. When I tried to access my e-mail program, the monitor went black.

[W] It sounds like there's a problem with the display.

[M] Let me shut down the computer and then try one more time.

[W] If that fails to work, you should call in a repairperson right away. You shouldn't ignore a problem like this.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

I strongly urge you to read the manual before attempting to run this software program. You may be tempted to ignore this advice. But I'm warning you all: it is not likely that you will be able to figure out this program on your own. This is especially important for owners of our competitors' products that aren't compatible with this program. Your computer could crash or shut down without warning. In fact, when you start working with this program, make sure you have duplicate files so, in case of system failure, you will not lose your work. Remember, if your system fails, all your files could be deleted. But if you have duplicated the files onto a CD, you will have no trouble accessing them when you need them.

**LESSON 7****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) He's using the computer keyboard.
- (B) He's reducing the size of his office.
- (C) He's stocking the supplies.
- (D) He's signing his initials on his desk.

**Part 2: Question-Response**

**Number 2.**

Do you think we can afford the additional support?

- (A) Office morale seems fine.
- (B) It's already in the budget.
- (C) They're in stock.

**Number 3.**

Who's in charge of the fax machine?

- (A) It has twice the capacity.
- (B) The warranty has expired.
- (C) The office manager stays on top of it.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] As part of the company's cost-saving initiative, we must have approval on all new purchases.

[W] Who will be in charge of approvals?

[M] Each of the department heads has been asked to stay on top of purchases. All purchase orders will have to be signed by one of them.

[W] Well, that's annoying. I just can't see it as a good idea. It adds one more step to the ordering process and could cause delays.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

We have had a few problems with ordering these units on an as-needed basis. The first problem is that nobody seems to take the initiative to place the order with the provider. That's because when they're ordering just one recorder, they feel it isn't worth their time. So even though their need is recurring, they don't feel that the effort is justified. Here's where a more aggressive provider could help us out, by anticipating our needs and staying on top of them. In fact, I have looked into the matter and discovered a provider that could meet this need. It's the John Able and Sons Company. I don't know if any of you are familiar with them. Their products are quite affordable. I suggest we look into making our orders from this company in the future.

**LESSON 8****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) The crew is cleaning the glass.
- (B) The workers are not dressed casually.
- (C) The golfers are practicing their game.
- (D) The waiters are bringing in food.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Can young workers really appreciate what it meant to publish a book before computers were around?

- (A) They are thankful.
- (B) Our youngest employee is a published author.
- (C) Of course they can't.

**Number 3.**

What is silicon made of?

- (A) The sale is still on.
- (B) We're out of intercoms.
- (C) Sand.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] I appreciate the fact that you have taken time out of your schedule to come and talk to me.

[W] I want to make sure that you understand the practices of the company.

[M] It seems difficult for other employees to give me a verbal explanation of the practices, although they definitely are familiar with them.

[W] Everything is outlined in writing in the Employee Handbook. You can look through that later to reinforce what we will talk about today.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

This training is designed to reinforce and strengthen your current computer skills. We really don't have the time to introduce these programs from the start, and we'll only have limited time for practice today. What we want to do is verbally cover the main functions of the program and make sure that you're all exposed to some of the features of the newer version. So, at least you'll get a glimpse of what the newer version of the program has to offer. OK, let's get started. I promised to finish before noon, when lunch will be served for everyone in the board room.

**LESSON 9****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) The calculators are stored in the closet.
- (B) The computers are linked by a network.
- (C) The technician is replacing a part.
- (D) The worker is reading the software manual.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

How long will it take to replace the hard drive?

- (A) Hard drives are expensive.
- (B) Our technicians have the skills, don't worry.
- (C) A few hours.

**Number 3.**

Can you understand the technical section?

- (A) That's good advice, thanks.
- (B) I hope so—I'm the technician.
- (C) On page thirteen.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[W] Unfortunately, I don't have the skills to retrieve this file, and I really need it. I was counting on using it to complete my project proposal.

[M] Maybe I can help you out. I'm new at this too, but I do know a few things. Are your files stored on the network?

[W] No, they're stored on the company ftp site.

[M] Yes, there's a special process you have to use, but I'm not sure I can figure it out. You'd better ask someone in the IT department to help you.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Downloading software is a simple process. You can download a file from a remote server, or you can simply download it from the company network. Once you've done it, you'll see how easy the process is. It really takes no technical skills and, indeed, everyday folks do it every day. Today we are going to practice downloading software from a web site. To facilitate the process, I have outlined the steps here on this chart. If you get lost, just look up here and follow the steps. Technically speaking, this is a very simple process. Now, you all have your computers turned on and connected to the Internet, right? Then the next thing you'll do is type in the following web address.

**LESSON 10****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) He's assembling a car.
- (B) He's folding the newspaper in half.
- (C) He's reviewing his correspondence.
- (D) He's petitioning for a raise.

**Part 2: Question–Response**

**Number 2.**

Did you send the letter by registered mail?

- (A) Registration fees are paid in advance.
- (B) Yes, and I sent it express.
- (C) Nobody revised it.

**Number 3.**

Have you ever worked in assembly before?

- (A) The workers assembled outside.
- (B) I worked in layout and design.
- (C) I used to assemble electronic cards.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] I have the documents for tomorrow's meeting all ready. I proofed them last night and copied them this morning. Now all I need is your help in assembling them.

[W] You should have asked me beforehand. I'm too busy to do it now.

[M] I mentioned to you that I would need your help today. These have to be finished before the end of the afternoon.

[W] I'm sorry, but I don't remember your mentioning it. Why don't you ask my assistant to help you with the folding and stapling?

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Tired of waiting in line? Try our new express, self-service Courier Center. You can purchase stamps, weigh parcels, look up ZIP codes, even send registered mail. The Courier Center is located in the lobby at the Fourth Street entrance. It's open from six A.M. until eight P.M. daily. Closed Sunday. Postal staff are always on hand to show you how to use the services. Mention this announcement to them and receive a free city-wide ZIP code directory.

**LESSON 11****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) The job profile is posted on the board.
- (B) The qualifications are listed on the wall.
- (C) The harvest this season is abundant.
- (D) The candidate is checking the job listings in the newspaper.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Which candidate mentioned her father's fish boat?

- (A) The first one.
- (B) She fishes for a living.
- (C) Her father sells oats.

**Number 3.**

What recent accomplishment are you most proud of?

- (A) I need to resend this package.
- (B) I won the employee-of-the-month award in May.
- (C) I found it most time-consuming.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] Have you come up with any ideas for finishing your job search?

[W] It's been very time-consuming and draining, but I think it's finally coming to an end. And it's about time, too. I've been at this for five months now.

[M] Does this mean that you've found the job that's the perfect match?

[W] Maybe. I'm very hopeful about a position I interviewed for yesterday. I know I have all the qualifications.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Candidates are asked to submit a current résumé and letter of interest. Your résumé should list your qualifications for the job you are applying for. It should also list specific accomplishments in past jobs or in school. Your letter of interest should also outline your long-term career goals. If you bring together a picture of your past, your current goals, and your future, your profile will be more cohesive to our hirers. We are currently recruiting for entry-level positions in our accounting department. Salaries are competitive and commensurate with experience.

**LESSON 12****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) The applicant is called in for an interview.
- (B) The expert is putting on his coat.
- (C) The sick cat is hiding its weakness.
- (D) The room is ready for a party.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Can I mail in this application?

- (A) Yes, the address is on the last page.
- (B) It's not applicable.
- (C) It doesn't apply here.

**Number 3.**

Are you ready for the written test?

- (A) The test is administered by computer.
- (B) My score was sent in the mail.
- (C) Not quite, I don't have a pencil.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[W] Do you remember the first time I applied for a job? I had absolutely no confidence in myself.

[M] And look where you are now—a widely respected expert in the field of computer networks.

[W] Isn't it interesting how we change and grow. I was hesitant to go on my first job interview because I didn't think I could present myself well. I was sure no one would hire me.

[M] And now you're asked to speak at conferences all over the country. In fact, I'd like to ask you to help me out with planning a workshop I have to give next week.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Thank you for calling the Salvo Human Resources Department Job Hotline.

Salvo is currently looking to hire people with a background in Asian Languages as well as software design. To hear about this special opportunity, press one. To listen to job descriptions for all of our current job openings, press two. To request an application, press three. To follow up on your application status, press four. To learn the location of a Salvo Employment Presentation in a city near you, press five. Please have a pen and paper by the phone and be ready to record the relevant information.

**LESSON 13****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) The conductor is signaling the train.
- (B) The trainer is conducting a session.
- (C) The applicant is setting up an interview.
- (D) The employees are rejecting the contract.

**Part 2: Question-Response**

**Number 2.**

You don't think this will generate a lot of extra paperwork, do you?

- (A) No. In fact, I think it will reduce paperwork.
- (B) Yes, the papers have arrived.
- (C) I already turned on the generator.

**Number 3.**

Do you think that Lena looks up to Virginia?

- (A) Lena's application was rejected.
- (B) Virginia was her mentor, so it's natural that she would.
- (C) The team will update us on Thursday.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] How has the week of training gone so far? I've been concerned that the group is too big.

[W] We do have a large group of trainees, but we've been able to stay on track and get a lot accomplished.

[M] Everyone is commenting on the amount of excitement that your program has generated.

[W] Yes, we're quite pleased with our success so far. Well, I have to get going. I need to set up the meeting room for this afternoon's session. See you later.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Welcome to our first annual mentors training program. You have been selected by your coworkers for this program because they look up to you. And that's an honor. So congratulations to all of you for being here. Today we're going to start by generating a list of characteristics that make a successful mentor. I'd like you all to take a few minutes to think back to a mentor you've known or worked with. What made that person a good mentor? In order to stay on track with our schedule, we'll take no more than five minutes for this first activity. So, please begin listing your ideas now, and when I say stop it will be time to share with the group.

**LESSON 14****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) The woman is raising her salary.
- (B) The workers are negotiating their pay.
- (C) The retiree is being honored.
- (D) The lunch hour is flexible.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Who is eligible to participate in the retirement plan?

- (A) She has already retired.
- (B) Employees who've been with us for at least three months.
- (C) You need to be aware of these benefits.

**Number 3.**

When will I get a raise?

- (A) Your first salary review will be in six months.
- (B) Lift it a little bit higher, please.
- (C) Usually four to six percent of your current salary.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] We can't seem to make ends meet with my hourly wage.

[W] I think it's time for you to ask for a raise.

[M] I don't want to ask for too much compensation. I'm getting health insurance, after all, and I've only been working there for six months.

[W] But, you've been working hard. You should get regular wage increases. You deserve it. You deserve paid vacation and life insurance, too.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Please open your Employee Handbook to page seven. This section deals with your salary and salary increases. You will have an annual salary review. The average raise is 4.2 percent a year, just above the cost of living. Also, be aware that not all employees get a raise. Compensation is based solely on performance and your contribution to the company, and, sure enough, each year we find that some employees are not eligible for a raise. We have a clearly outlined review process in place, which your supervisor will go over with you. Let's take a look at benefits. Each employee gets ten days of paid vacation a year in addition to major national holidays. You also get five days of sick leave annually.

**LESSON 15****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) The librarian is dedicating her novel to her boss.
- (B) The promoter is putting away a book.
- (C) The employee is receiving a book as an award.
- (D) The manager is recognizing his old workers.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Has she proven her loyalty?

- (A) She's been with us for forty-seven years.
- (B) Loyalty deserves praise.
- (C) No, she hasn't completed it.

**Number 3.**

Where is the dedication ceremony going to be held?

- (A) The ceremony was full of fanfare.
- (B) Nobody questions her dedication.
- (C) At the flag pole, in the parking lot.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] I'm looking forward to the awards ceremony tonight.

[W] So am I. I hope Darrell finally gets some recognition for all the work that he has done.

[M] He certainly has been very productive in the last few months.

[W] He has always been a hard worker. His dedication to his job is impressive, and he is certainly one of the company's most loyal employees.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Everyone enjoys receiving recognition for the work that they do. Today, we will honor two employees who have been working for the company ever since we opened our doors in 1985. Their loyalty to the company is an honor for us. No value can be placed on these employees; they are priceless to us. Since they began working with us, they have been promoted to ever higher positions, not because of their connections or degrees, but because of the contributions they have made to the company. In other words, they have been promoted for their merit. These high achievers are a credit to our company, and I am very pleased to be able to honor them here tonight. Mr. Louis Boitano and Ms. Gina Minot, please come up to the front to receive your awards.

**LESSON 16****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) They're putting the merchandise on the shelves.
- (B) They're pushing their cart to the check-out.
- (C) They're examining the items for sale.
- (D) They're behaving in an unusual way.

**Part 2: Question-Response**

**Number 2.**

I'll go wait in the checkout line.

- (A) Check this out, it's really fancy.
- (B) I'll be there in a minute.
- (C) You always find good bargains.

**Number 3.**

Which items are you returning?

- (A) The computer itemizes them.
- (B) All of them.
- (C) I'll come back.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

*[M]* In my psychology class we're studying consumer behavior. I've just spent three weeks watching what people buy.

*[W]* I'm sure you found that people hunt for bargains to save money. Economics is what drives people.

*[M]* Actually, shoppers report that they buy the brands they know best and feel most comfortable with, regardless of price.

*[W]* Well, now, that's interesting. I suppose all that marketing of brand names is really worthwhile for the manufacturers.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Attention shoppers. If you're looking for a true bargain, visit aisle seven for our sale on winter boots. All footwear is marked ten to forty percent off, this week only. At these prices, items won't last long, so hurry and save now. While you're at it, why not explore our other winter merchandise? We have coats scarves, hats, and lots of other items to keep you toasty warm and comfortable during the chilly winter weather. When you're in the checkout aisle, don't forget to ask for a frequent shopper card. Every time you visit the store and make a purchase, your card is marked. After ten visits, you will be eligible for a free gift! This is our way of saying, "Thank you for shopping with us."

**LESSON 17****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) She's obtaining supplies from the cabinet.
- (B) She's polishing her desk smoothly.
- (C) She's using office stationery for her correspondence.
- (D) She's buying quality toys.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Is an order form essential?

- (A) The essence is in there.
- (B) You can order twenty-four hours a day.
- (C) It's a prerequisite for all orders.

**Number 3.**

What is the function of this stamp?

- (A) You need to obtain a signature.
- (B) We need a one-dollar stamp.
- (C) It shows that the order has been received.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

*[M]* Do you know of a wholesale source for glassware?

*[W]* As a matter of fact, I know of a supplier who sells better-quality wine glasses. It's a new enterprise called Crystal Company.

*[M]* I'm actually looking for a diverse range of glassware, but I can check their web site to find out about their product line.

*[W]* That's a good idea. Phone me to let me know what you find out. I'll be out the rest of today, but we can talk over the weekend.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

As you all know, we had a little slip up in our order with Margatel last week. Now, Margatel is one of our biggest clients. They order more than fifty thousand dollars worth of stationery alone each year. It is essential that we maintain a smooth relationship with Margatel, or some of us may end up out on the street. So let's see if we can find the source of this mix-up, and then we'll go about setting it straight. First, according to our records, Carla, you took the order on January nineteenth for forty boxes of business envelopes and thirty boxes of manila envelopes. Is this correct? And the order was supposed to be shipped out on the twenty-first.

**LESSON 18****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) The goods are scanned in the catalog.
- (B) The supplies are being counted by hand.
- (C) The trucks are loading at the shipping dock.
- (D) The carriers are using bicycles for deliveries.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Are these numbers accurate?

- (A) They've been checked and double-checked.
- (B) The numbers were written down.
- (C) The spillage was minimal.

**Number 3.**

How many items are listed in the catalog?

- (A) About three hundred fifty.
- (B) It is sufficiently clear.
- (C) To fulfill customer's wishes.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

*[M]* We are completely out of packing supplies and cannot prepare anymore boxes today.

*[W]* It's your job to make certain that you have enough packing materials to fulfill orders. Remember, those boxes have to be addressed and shipped out before the end of the week.

*[M]* I thought we had enough boxes on hand, but I was wrong. Anyhow, I can pick up some more tomorrow.

*[W]* As long as they're ready to send by Friday.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

A quick review of our catalog shows the variety and quality of the merchandise we carry, but it does nothing to draw attention to our competitive pricing. Competitive pricing is integral to our success. Customers want to minimize costs and maximize value. Remember our motto: we supply the best, you pay the least. In the future, our catalogs will reflect this motto by comparing our prices with those of our competitors. For selected items throughout the catalog, we will show the prices charged by competitors for the same or similar items. Some people may question this information, but it is guaranteed to be as accurate as possible. We will rely on careful research to obtain the pricing information we publish. Remember, honesty is the best policy. This information on competitors' pricing will first appear in next winter's catalog, available in January.

**LESSON 19****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) She's looking over the orders.
- (B) She's talking to the customers.
- (C) She's ordering more paper by phone.
- (D) She's asking a clerk for a discount.

**Part 2: Question–Response**

**Number 2.**

Why were there so many mistakes in yesterday's orders?

- (A) We had two temps working here.
- (B) Seven mistakes.
- (C) Because we improved our system.

**Number 3.**

How much was the discount?

- (A) I've compiled the data.
- (B) They placed the order.
- (C) Fifteen percent.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] I've compiled a list of office supplies we need to order immediately. The order should go out as soon as possible as these are essential items.

[W] Don't worry. I'll deal with it promptly.

[M] Please check the supply room before you send out the order, just to be sure I didn't make any mistakes. And when you receive the invoice, check it over carefully to make sure all the charges are accurate.

[W] Relax. I'll take care of everything efficiently. I'll check the supply closet today and send the order out first thing tomorrow, and I'll make sure all the charges on the invoice are right.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

According to the terms of payment, a customer is eligible for a discount only if the entire invoice is paid upon completion of service. Up-front payment is much more efficient because we don't have to bill the customer. Also, as soon as we receive payment, it becomes capital. We estimate that up-front payments save us about fifteen percent for each project. This is a significant amount of money for the company. Therefore, it is greatly to our advantage to encourage up-front payment as much as we possibly can.

**LESSON 20****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) He's verifying the number of items in stock.
- (B) He's adjusting the height of the ladder.
- (C) He's disturbing the order of the shelves.
- (D) He's scanning the goods by computer.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Shall we set it to be done automatically, or shall we do them all by hand?

- (A) Automatically.
- (B) They were hand delivered.
- (C) Set it on the counter, please.

**Number 3.**

Would you be able to verify these facts?

- (A) It's a fair price.
- (B) No, the fax was only three pages.
- (C) I got them all from the newspaper article.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] Even though the computer says we have five of these bedspreads left, I'd like you to go to the stockroom and verify that for me.

[W] If the computer says we have five, why would there be any discrepancy?

[M] Sometimes there are adjustments to the inventory. I don't want to tell this customer that we have a bedspread if we are out of stock.

[W] All right. I'll check the stockroom myself and let you know right away.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

We verify the computer's count with a physical inventory every year in January. It's a tedious process, but it's crucial to keeping our records straight. Even the physical counting leaves us with some discrepancies, but we feel that it more closely reflects our numbers. The physical count also puts us two steps closer to figuring out any huge discrepancies. Remember, in the long run any discrepancy is a liability. So, although we have to close everything down and stop running the business for the three days that it takes to complete the inventory, it is well worth the effort that it takes.

**LESSON 21****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) She's balancing a cup on his head.
- (B) She's accepting a gift from him.
- (C) She's borrowing money from a friend.
- (D) She's going to make a transaction at an ATM.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

How much money did you take out of your bank account?

- (A) I took out only 100 dollars.
- (B) That accountant charges a lot for his services.
- (C) Yes, I took the money to the bank.

**Number 3.**

What do you want to borrow so much money for?

- (A) It didn't cost so much money.
- (B) I earned all that money myself.
- (C) I want to buy a car.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[W] Since you have an account with this bank, all we require in order to cash your check is a photo ID. Your driver's license would do.

[M] I've lost my driver's license, but my signature is on file. Is that enough?

[W] I'm sorry, but we have to be cautious. We can only accept a photo ID for transactions like this. You could, however, deposit the check in your account. It would take just seven business days to clear, then the funds would be available to you.

[M] All right, then, I'll do that. Then I'll go downtown and get a new driver's license.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

To qualify for a mortgage, you have to be able to make a down payment of ten percent. You also have to show that you have been at your current job for at least one year and at your current address for three or more years. It's also a good idea to have some extra money in a savings account. Your account balance should be equivalent to about three months of your normal take-home salary. All these things assure the lender that you will be able to make your monthly mortgage payments.

**LESSON 22****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The auditor is looking over the books.
- (B) Snow is accumulating on the ground.
- (C) The employee turnover is high.
- (D) She is meeting her clients in her office.

**Part 2: Question-Response**

**Number 2.**

Do you have any outstanding debts?

- (A) Yes, I understand all about debts.
- (B) Yes, I still owe money on my car.
- (C) Yes, he's a very upstanding citizen.

**Number 3.**

What assets do you have?

- (A) I own my house and I have some money in the bank.
- (B) I felt quite upset by the news.
- (C) I don't have an assistant.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[W] I have a one o'clock appointment with a client today. I should be back at the office before five.

[M] Is this the client you are trying to save from all his debt?

[W] That's the one! How he accumulated so much debt, I'll never understand. I've worked out a budget for him for the coming year and plan to present it to him this afternoon.

[M] Good luck! I know you've put a good deal of work into that, and I hope your client finds it acceptable.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

The most important factor in making your accounting firm profitable is to build up a solid list of clients. You want your clients to continue bringing their accounting business to you year after year and to avoid the problem of client turnover. Also, keep in mind that charging higher fees does not mean that you will make more money. If your clients feel that your fees are fair, they will recommend your services to their friends and colleagues. Finally, never forget what your most valuable asset is. It's easy to spend money on office equipment and rental fees for your space, but these are not the things that attract clients. It is important to make sure you have a team of excellent accountants on your staff. A qualified staff is the most valuable asset any accounting firm can have.

**LESSON 23****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked Number 1.

- (A) The brokers are bidding aggressively.
- (B) He's returning the products to the storeroom.
- (C) The supplies are out of stock.
- (D) He's making a phone call.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Who can give me advice about my portfolio?

- (A) My stockbroker can help you with your investments.
- (B) It's a very nice portfolio.
- (C) I think you made a wise choice.

**Number 3.**

Will I get a good return on this investment?

- (A) Please return it to me when you've finished.
- (B) I'm sorry, we don't accept returns.
- (C) You should earn at least a fifteen percent return.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] In order to minimize risk, investors should maintain a diverse portfolio by putting their money in various industry investments.

[W] You mean we should invest in natural resources as well as in manufacturing industries?

[M] Perhaps. Unless you are very aggressive, you don't want to put all your eggs in one basket. In fact, I have made close to a million dollars in the past ten years by following the strategy of maintaining a diverse portfolio.

[W] That's quite impressive. You know, I was thinking of pulling all my money out of the stock market, but now I think I'll stay in and follow your advice.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Have you thought about how you will fund your children's college education? Don't wait until they are in high school. The time to begin saving is when your children are still small. A good way to start is by investing some of your income in the stock market. You will get a good return on your money there. The best strategy is to commit a certain amount of your monthly income to your stock investments. Even after just two or three years, you should start to see your investment grow. By the time your children are ready for college, you'll be ready to pay for it.

**LESSON 24****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) She's filling out a form.
- (B) She's preparing dinner.
- (C) She's filing her nails.
- (D) She's calculating the total.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

How much do I owe?

- (A) About 125 dollars.
- (B) I own two cars.
- (C) I paid what I owed.

**Number 3.**

When do I have to file my income taxes?

- (A) It's only about a mile from here.
- (B) We received an incoming fax.
- (C) The deadline is April 15th.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] I'm no good with numbers, so my spouse usually files our taxes. She does all the calculations and fills out the forms.

[W] You're lucky, then. I usually have to pay an accountant to prepare my taxes, and even then I sometimes miss the deadline.

[M] I did that once. Last year was the one time I filed our taxes, but I did it two months after the deadline and had to pay a huge penalty.

[W] Yes, the penalty is ten percent of what you owe, isn't it? I guess that's why your spouse is the one who usually files your taxes.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

You will be getting a refund check of four hundred sixty dollars, and you can expect to receive it in eight to ten weeks. While I know that it's nice to get a refund check, I always tell my clients that it's better for your finances to avoid overpaying taxes in the first place. If you'd like, I can do some calculations which will show exactly how much you should ask your employer to withhold from your check in the future, and I'd only charge a small fee for this service.

**LESSON 25****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) This orchard yields a lot of fruit.
- (B) The weather reporter is making a forecast.
- (C) The crew is making the drive level.
- (D) The arrow hit its target.

**Part 2: Question–Response**

**Number 2.**

What is our projected income for next year?

- (A) We expect several projects to come in.
- (B) It can't be protected.
- (C) It'll probably be slightly higher than this year.

**Number 3.**

Is this an accurate translation of the statement?

- (A) Yes, the translator did an excellent job.
- (B) No, we don't need eight translators.
- (C) The transportation in this area is not adequate.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[W] I'm developing a projected financial statement for my business. I'll use it to see what kind of profits I can expect to yield this year.

[M] That's great. It'll also help you forecast periods where you might have financial problems.

[W] Yes. I'm sure it will be worth the effort for several reasons. I hope to have it finished soon—by the end of this week, in fact.

[M] I'm sure you'll have no problem with that. If you like, I can look over the details when it's finished and check your calculations and make any necessary corrections.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Many small businesses fail because of poor financial advice. Remember, a small business is no different from a large company in that financial planning is the key to success. Therefore, creating a projected financial statement is the first and most important step one should take when starting up a small business. It is realistic to expect your small business to become profitable during its first five years, but typically not during the first year. With this in mind, you can set reasonable targets and project expenses for the first year or two of your business. This will help you know what funds you need to raise in order to get and keep your business going.

**LESSON 26****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) They're scrutinizing the drawings.
- (B) They're moving up the ladder.
- (C) They're concentrating on the pathway.
- (D) They're working in the street.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Where is your new office?

- (A) It's adjacent to the lobby.
- (B) I moved up to a new position.
- (C) I'm open to it.

**Number 3.**

Is your boss open to new ideas?

- (A) Yes, I like to keep the window open.
- (B) Yes, it opens early every day.
- (C) Yes, she always listens to my proposals.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

*[M]* I hear the remodeling of the office lobby will start soon. I hope the new lobby ends up more conducive to conversation than our current lobby is.

*[W]* I've spent a lot of time scrutinizing the plans for the new lobby, and I'm quite pleased. I think it will be everything you hope for.

*[M]* Good. And I hope the remodeling work doesn't take too long. I am afraid it will be disruptive to our business.

*[W]* It shouldn't take more than a few weeks. It will be finished by the middle of next month.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

The design of an office can contribute a great deal to employee productivity. It is important to plan your office space so that it is conducive to collaboration, yet at the same time allows staff members to concentrate on their work. Many companies opt for a design that includes several smaller offices adjacent to a lobby rather than one large one, as they find the level of activity in an open office is often disruptive to work. At the same time, it is also important to include at least one larger work room so that staff members can work collaboratively. Such spaces would be used for meetings, team work on projects, and the like.

**LESSON 27****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The periodicals are on the stand.
- (B) The cars are going ahead.
- (C) The waste basket is under the table.
- (D) The meeting is adhering to an agenda.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Do your staff members meet periodically?

- (A) They read several newspapers and magazines.
- (B) I haven't seen him for quite a long period.
- (C) We have a meeting every Friday.

**Number 3.**

How did the meeting go?

- (A) It was right after lunch.
- (B) It was in the boardroom.
- (C) It was a real waste of time.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

*[M]* That meeting was such a waste of time.

*[W]* You're right. It was too lengthy, and we didn't accomplish anything.

*[M]* We were in there for three hours, and no one even brought up the most important matters on the agenda. Next time there's one of these meetings, remind me not to attend it.

*[W]* I'm with you. I don't plan to go to another one of these meetings, either.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

In order to keep everyone from feeling that this meeting is a waste of time, I've developed the following guidelines. Please adhere to them. One: Please discuss only the items on the agenda. This is not the time to bring up irrelevant or personal matters. Two: Please do not make unnecessarily lengthy speeches. Make your point as quickly and clearly as possible. Three: My goal is to conclude this meeting by four thirty. We will be able to do this if we all follow the guidelines. Thank you for your cooperation.

**LESSON 28****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) She's trying on a new garment.
- (B) She's taking back damaged goods to the store.
- (C) She's inspecting the products for defects.
- (D) She's throwing out her uniform.

**Part 2: Question-Response**

**Number 2.**

Which brand is better?

- (A) I love the music that band plays.
- (B) Most of our customers prefer this one.
- (C) No, I don't understand this letter.

**Number 3.**

Is this coat water repellent?

- (A) Yes, this water tastes excellent.
- (B) Yes, it will keep you very dry.
- (C) Yes, you can wash it with soap and water.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] What does the company do with garments that have defects in them?

[W] If the defects aren't too bad, we change the brand name and sell them in discount stores. You can find our skirts all over the country under different names.

[M] That's certainly more profitable than throwing them away. Do many of your garments end up that way?

[W] We find that about fifteen percent of them end up with defects. We sell our skirts at all the better women's clothing stores, so they have to conform to high standards.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

We assure you that all our products go through strict quality control. All defective products are thrown out before they leave the factory. You can be sure that all our products that reach the store have been thoroughly inspected to make sure they conform to our high quality standards. If for any reason, however, you perceive a defect in one of our products or are not completely satisfied with it for any reason at all, you can take it back to the store for a one hundred percent refund, no questions asked.

**LESSON 29****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) She's ascertaining the time of the flight.
- (B) She's examining the contents of the test tube.
- (C) She's experimenting with a new way home.
- (D) She's solving a crossword puzzle.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

How long have you worked as a supervisor?

- (A) I like it very much.
- (B) He doesn't have an advisor.
- (C) For almost a decade.

**Number 3.**

What kind of responsibilities does Jim have at his new job?

- (A) He supervises the entire department.
- (B) He's a fairly responsive person.
- (C) He's responding very well.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[W] We need to examine the data for our Binky doll sales before we decide how to modify it.

[M] Several companies have successfully experimented with modifications such as bright colors and noisemakers.

[W] Consumers today are anxious about inflation so our next modification should be to make the doll cheaper. I think if we lower the price by fifteen percent, we can increase sales by thirty percent or more.

[M] Maybe so, but you can't just assume those figures. You need to do some systematic price and sales research first.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

This product has been on the market for over two decades, and it continues to sell well. Researchers aren't sure of the reason for this. They have examined hundreds of pages of market data but haven't ascertained an exact reason for the product's popularity. Is it the low price or the wide availability? Perhaps it is the consumers' familiarity with it. Researchers don't know which factors are responsible, but consumers continue to buy the product as it enters its twenty-second year on the market. In fact, it is the most popular product of its kind for teenagers, and far outsells similar products aimed at men, women, and children.

**LESSON 30****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The woman is apprehensive about signing the lease.
- (B) The couple is due to arrive any minute.
- (C) The man is trying to get out of the building.
- (D) The occupancy rate for this room is 450.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Who are the occupants on the second floor?

- (A) They'll take occupancy next week.
- (B) Two lawyer's offices.
- (C) No, we only occupy the first floor.

**Number 3.**

Is the building in good condition?

- (A) Yes, the landlord keeps it in good repair.
- (B) Yes, it's near all the bus routes.
- (C) Yes, all the tenants are very nice.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] I understand that we may be able to get out of this unfortunate circumstance.

[W] Yes, under certain conditions a clause in your contract may not be valid.

[M] I'll pay you whatever it takes to get us out of this legally. I don't want to be subjected to any lawsuit.

[W] You don't need to be apprehensive about that. Due to the poorly written clause, you have the option to get out of the contract if you decide to do so by the end of the month.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Before you sign a lease on a space for your business, make sure you have chosen the best location. Look for the indicators of a neighborhood that is good for business. Are there other, successful businesses occupying spaces nearby? Is there access to public transportation? Is the area attractive to customers and clients? If the conditions don't look right for your business, look into other options. Don't lock yourself into a long-term lease on a space that isn't right for you. Once you have found the best space for your business, then you can look at signing a long-term lease. Rental rates often fluctuate. If you sign a lease for five years, then you are guaranteed a rent you can afford.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[W] The woman who writes the weekly restaurant reviews for the local newspaper has published a guide to local restaurants.

[M] That won't be too helpful. I don't think the same food appeals to her as appeals to me.

[W] I know what you mean. There's a lot of subjectivity in reviewing restaurants.

[M] Yes, I usually don't bother reading the reviews. I often eat out on weekends, but I rely on my coworkers to suggest good places to eat. They're familiar with a lot of the restaurants in the city.

**LESSON 31****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) They're relying on the waiter's suggestions.
- (B) They're guiding the man through the mall.
- (C) They're arriving at an empty restaurant.
- (D) They're securing the cloth to the table.

**Part 2: Question–Response**

**Number 2.**

How can I secure reservations at such a popular restaurant?

- (A) Call early in the day.
- (B) You can feel secure at that restaurant.
- (C) I can recommend a popular restaurant.

**Number 3.**

How can I choose a good restaurant?

- (A) Look in the restaurant guide.
- (B) I never refuse food at a restaurant.
- (C) Yes, it's a very good restaurant.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Good afternoon. I am calling from the Patio Terrace Restaurant about your request for a reservation. I have secured a reservation for you at 8:30 P.M. tomorrow evening. Please arrive on time. We have a bar where you can enjoy appetizers and mixed drinks before dinner. If that idea appeals to you, I suggest arriving at seven thirty or eight o'clock. We have a parking lot in back for the exclusive use of our customers. Are you familiar with our location, or will you need directions?

**LESSON 32****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The chef is adding ingredients to his list.
- (B) The patron is waiting to be served.
- (C) The forecaster is making a prediction.
- (D) The judge is consulting with the lawyers.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

What kinds of flavors does the chef use?

- (A) I don't like this kind of food.
- (B) She uses a blend of Asian spices.
- (C) Yes, the food is very flavorful.

**Number 3.**

Can you judge a restaurant just by looking at the menu?

- (A) No, the judge didn't like that restaurant.
- (B) No, I haven't looked at the menu yet.
- (C) No, I think you have to eat there first.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

*[M]* This restaurant reminds me of the one we visited on vacation last year. I think they use many of the same ingredients in the dishes.

*[W]* You're right. The flavor of the dishes is similar. The food here is really quite tasty.

*[M]* It's fantastic. Let's not forget where this restaurant is so we can come back again and try some more dishes.

*[W]* This place just opened up last week, I think, but the food is so delicious I predict that it will have a lot of patrons very soon.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

I'm sorry for the delay. I'm sure you thought I'd forgotten your order. The problem is, we have a new assistant chef, and he's mixed up everything in the kitchen. It will take a while longer for your meal to be ready, but we want to keep all our patrons happy so I'd be happy to bring you some free appetizers while you wait. It won't be too much longer. Your food should be on the table in about fifteen minutes or so. And I predict that when you finally get your meal, you'll judge that our chef's cooking is worth the wait.

**LESSON 33****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The customer is settling the bill.
- (B) The waiter is picking up the glass.
- (C) The individual is ordering his lunch.
- (D) The patron is making a list.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Does your restaurant have free delivery?

- (A) Yes, deliveries are free on orders of ten dollars or more.
- (B) Yes, we charge a fee for that service.
- (C) Yes, we make deliveries after three.

**Number 3.**

Would you like that order delivered, or will you pick it up?

- (A) Yes, please pick it up.
- (B) I'll pick it up in half an hour.
- (C) Pick up after yourself.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

*[M]* Will you please arrange for an elegant lunch to be delivered to the office during the regional manager's visit?

*[W]* That's such an annoying burden. It always falls to me to arrange these things. Why don't you just go to a restaurant?

*[M]* I need to show our impressive sales data during lunch and can't show slides at a restaurant.

*[W]* All right, then. I'll call the restaurant soon, and I'll ask for the lunch to be delivered by one o'clock. I suppose you'll want it served in the conference room.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Don't settle for uninteresting food and slow service. Order your next lunch from the Parkside Café, where speedy service is guaranteed. We're here to meet the needs of busy business people like you, and ordering from us is so easy. Simply make your selection from our list of made-to-order sandwiches and salads, then call in your order, and it will be ready to be picked up in ten minutes, guaranteed. Or have your meal delivered directly to your office. Our delivery fee is just fifteen percent of the price of your order. We handle both individual and group orders.

**LESSON 34****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The chef is instructing the apprentices.
- (B) The professionals are chopping the food.
- (C) The customers are demanding menus.
- (D) The designers are incorporating fish motifs into the décor.

**Part 2: Question–Response**

**Number 2.**

How did you decide to enter the cooking profession?

- (A) Yes, I'm still looking for a profession.
- (B) The kitchen door is to your right.
- (C) I've always wanted to work in a restaurant.

**Number 3.**

How do you plan to draw new customers to the restaurant?

- (A) Yes, I'm accustomed to eating here.
- (B) We will expand the menu and offer new specials.
- (C) We saw several new customers there.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

*[W]* There's been a large influx of new chefs recently. And they're all demanding high salaries.

*[M]* Good chefs manage to draw customers into restaurants, so they're worth the salaries they're paid.

*[W]* Yes, the good ones are. For a skilled, professional chef, cooking can be quite a profitable career.

*[M]* I suppose you're right, though I can't see becoming a chef myself. I have no interest in practicing the culinary arts. But I do enjoy the results of a good chef's work. Let's plan to eat out more often.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Are you trying to decide on a profession? Don't forget to consider a career in the culinary arts. Many people find professional cooking to be an excellent outlet for their creativity. It's a demanding but exciting career with numerous opportunities. It is important to become well-trained in this profession. Don't be fooled into thinking that an apprenticeship is enough. People who plan to become chefs should enroll in an accredited culinary school. There they will learn the methods used by the best restaurants all around the world. Graduates of culinary schools become chefs, caterers, cooking instructors, and more. Join the many creative people who have been drawn to the cooking profession. You'll never be bored!

**LESSON 35****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The exact number of guests is ten.
- (B) The location is ideal for a playground.
- (C) The regulations limit parking at night.
- (D) The banquet is staged in the ballroom.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Can you give me a general idea of the number of guests you expect?

- (A) That's the ideal number.
- (B) About 150 people will attend.
- (C) Generally, I have good expectations.

**Number 3.**

How much lead time will we need?

- (A) The event should last about three or four hours.
- (B) I was the leader last time.
- (C) The hall has to be reserved a month in advance.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] I've found the ideal site for our wedding reception. The dimensions are just right, and the manager will assist us with coordinating all the details.

[W] But you didn't tell me where it is.

[M] It's at the Berkshire Country Club. It's exactly what we wanted, and there's plenty of parking. I want you to see it right away because we have to sign the contract before the end of the week.

[W] That won't be hard. I'm free all day. Let's go look at it now.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

I am coordinating the plans for our next big event, the year-end office party. Tom is assisting me, and we have already had several meetings. The event isn't until next month, so we've given ourselves plenty of lead time. Right now we're looking for a site that is in close proximity to the office and isn't too small to stage our event. You all know that the event is informal and that there won't be any ceremony or speeches. However, we will need to have more than just a general idea of how many will attend. We'll need an exact count by the end of the week, so please let us know soon if you plan to attend.

**LESSON 36****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The passengers are waiting for an announcement.
- (B) The travel agents are issuing the tickets.
- (C) The travelers are claiming their bags.
- (D) The flight crew is boarding the plane.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

When does the train depart?

- (A) In fifteen minutes.
- (B) From Gate fifteen.
- (C) In another part of the station.

**Number 3.**

Will a meal be served during the flight?

- (A) Yes, I reserved your flight.
- (B) No, just beverages and a snack.
- (C) Their service is all right.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[W] Would you care for another beverage?

[M] Is there time? According to my itinerary, we should be landing soon.

[W] You must have missed the announcement. We've been delayed and won't be landing for another hour.

[M] An hour? But I was supposed to be ready to board my connecting flight by three o'clock. I'll never make it on time. Now I'll have to change my whole itinerary.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Welcome to flight one fifteen. We will begin embarkation in five minutes. Please have a valid passport and ticket ready to show the flight attendant as you board. The itinerary for our trip today includes a thirty-minute stop in Chicago before we continue on to Los Angeles. We are scheduled for takeoff in twenty minutes, and since the captain has announced that he expects no delays in our trip, we should be departing on time. Please remember that once you are on board the plane, use of cell phones is prohibited until after we have taken off. We will begin our beverage service soon after takeoff, and lunch will be served later on. Have a pleasant flight.

**LESSON 37****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The airline system is on strike.
- (B) The tourists are looking for an excursion ticket.
- (C) The passengers are arriving at their destination.
- (D) The expensive business class section is not crowded.

**Part 2: Question–Response**

**Number 2.**

How can we keep expenses down?

- (A) You're right, it's too expensive to keep.
- (B) We can use the elevator.
- (C) We can fly in economy class.

**Number 3.**

How long can you extend your stay?

- (A) It's a long way away.
- (B) I can't spend any more money.
- (C) I can stay three more days.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] The airfares to Australia are quite expensive, and I know you need to economize. Let me see what I can do to get you a better airfare.

[W] I'll really need a substantial discount to make my trip possible.

[M] I understand your situation. Now, if you are willing to change your destination and fly into Melbourne rather than Sydney, that would save you some money. And if you extend your trip by just two days, I think I can work out a really good fare for you.

[W] Fine, fine. The only important thing is that I need to arrive by next Sunday.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Thank you for calling Travel Time Travel Agency, your place for economically-priced airline tickets. If your destination is within this country, press one. If your destination is in another country, press two. If you would like to make hotel reservations or travel arrangements other than purchasing airline tickets, press three. We're sorry, information on special excursion rates is not currently available because our computer system is down. Please call back later to find out if the situation has changed.

**LESSON 38****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) They're checking the directory.
- (B) They're paying their fare.
- (C) They're promptly boarding the train.
- (D) They're using the remainder of their ticket.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Why is the fare to London so high?

- (A) Because this is a deluxe train.
- (B) The weather in London is unusually fair.
- (C) We already said good-bye.

**Number 3.**

Do you think the train will be punctual?

- (A) Yes, it's always fun to ride the train.
- (B) No, it will be several minutes late.
- (C) Everything functions well.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[W] According to the directory, the next train to New York leaves at ten. Do you think it'll leave punctually?

[M] I think so. The trains have to operate on time or people won't want to ride them. I see here that the ten o'clock train arrives in New York at 1:30. That's a relatively short trip.

[W] But it's long enough for me to get hungry. Let's buy some snacks now so we'll have something to eat on the trip.

[M] There's no time. It's almost ten now, and we have to buy our tickets before we get on the train, or we'll pay a higher fare on board.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

People often ask if the higher fares charged on the new high-speed trains are offset by the savings in time. The answer is yes. In fact, the duration of a high-speed train trip in some cases is not much more than a plane trip, and the fare is always cheaper than a plane ticket.

Unfortunately, these trains operate out of far fewer cities than do planes and the traditional slower trains. On the other hand, all tickets on high-speed trains are first class. This means that your fare entitles you to a deluxe ride in a comfortable seat from which you can enjoy the scenery as it moves past your window. Unlike first-class plane tickets, however, meals are not usually included in the price of your train ticket. You have to pay extra for food.

**LESSON 39****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The guests are checking into the hotel.
- (B) The housekeeper is cleaning the room.
- (C) This room has been serviced and is ready for occupancy.
- (D) The reservations agent is quoting a high rate.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

What rate do you charge for a double room?

- (A) Yes, you could change to a double room.
- (B) It costs eighty-five dollars a night.
- (C) This hotel has great rooms.

**Number 3.**

What time should we check in?

- (A) Before nine o'clock.
- (B) We only take credit cards.
- (C) At the registration desk.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[W] What is our hotel chain's policy on canceling reservations?

[M] If we are notified of a cancellation at least twenty-four hours in advance of check-in time, we refund the deposit.

[W] That's good news because I just talked to a customer who wants to cancel and expects to have his deposit returned.

[M] That should be no problem. Just call the customer back and tell him we will remove the charge from his credit card.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Welcome to the Palm Garden Hotel chain. As a hotel employee, many opportunities await you. You may be starting out as housekeepers, but any one of you could advance to manager as you gain experience. Our goal at the Palm Garden Hotels is to provide the highest level of service possible. Our customers pay high rates to stay at our hotels, and they expect an advanced level of service in return. This goal, quite naturally, precludes anything but a professional attitude on the part of our employees. We expect the highest level of service from all of you. Now, we are ready to start our tour of the hotel. We'll begin right next door in the dining room, then move on to the kitchen. This way, please.

**LESSON 40****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) He's disappointed in the movie.
- (B) He's showing his driver's license.
- (C) He's contacting the agency to rent a car.
- (D) He's tempted to have more cake.

**Part 2: Question-Response**

**Number 2.**

Is collision insurance optional with a rental car?

- (A) No, we haven't yet made a decision.
- (B) Yes, but we recommend you get it.
- (C) We hope to rent a luxury car.

**Number 3.**

How many car rental agencies have you contacted?

- (A) We asked for a compact car.
- (B) I've only called two or three.
- (C) Each agency has its own contract.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[W] Would you like collision insurance on your rental car? It's optional, though we do recommend it.

[M] I doubt that we'll have an accident, but I'd feel less nervous with the insurance.

[W] No one ever intends to have an accident, of course, but most customers opt for the insurance when they rent from us. Let me just check the price . . . OK, the cost of insurance for this car is just thirty dollars.

[M] Fine. Here's my credit card. You can charge everything on that.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

If you are traveling to another country and intend to rent a car while there, there are several things to do before you leave. First, get an international driver's license. Then contact your local car rental agency to find out if they have offices abroad. If so, you can arrange to rent your car through them and avoid the confusion of signing a contract in a foreign language. This way, when you arrive and pick up your car, you won't be disappointed. It is tempting when you pick up your rental car to jump right in and drive away. Don't do this. First, check the car carefully for signs of damage. If you see any, point them out to the agent. You don't want to have to pay for damage that you didn't cause.

**LESSON 41****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) There are four separate movie posters on the wall.
- (B) The film description is read to the moviegoers.
- (C) The pedestrians are being entertained.
- (D) The fans are continuing to buy tickets.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

When will the movie be released?

- (A) It'll be reviewed in next Friday's paper.
- (B) It'll be over in about 30 minutes.
- (C) It'll be in theaters next month.

**Number 3.**

How would you describe that movie?

- (A) It was the most romantic film I've ever seen.
- (B) I'd move it over here.
- (C) We decided it together.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

*[W]* Sam Peterson is one of my favorite actors. I thought his latest movie was even more entertaining than his previous ones. It's easy to see how he's been influenced by situation comedies on television.

*[M]* He certainly has developed a broader range of styles over the past two years.

*[W]* Yes, though I prefer him in his recent comedies more than in his earlier movies. I guess I just like comedy movies more than dramas or mysteries. I like to laugh.

*[M]* I think he's brilliant in all his movies, and I have no doubt that his success will continue. He's already made three movies this year, and another will be released before the end of this month.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

On next week's show we'll interview a big name in the entertainment industry, Maria Moreno. Ms. Moreno's combined beauty and talent have made her popular everywhere. She's attained worldwide fame over the last several years through her outstanding performances in several hit movies. Her impressive acting abilities range from the comedic to the dramatic. Ms. Moreno will describe for us her latest movie, which has recently finished production and will be released next month. We'll also talk about the directors and fellow actors who have influenced her career.

**LESSON 42****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The dancer is rehearsing for a performance.
- (B) The audience is entering the theater.
- (C) The reviewer is watching the action.
- (D) The actor is approaching the musician.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Do you think tickets will sell out quickly?

- (A) Yes, they'll sell them at the box office.
- (B) Yes, it's a very popular play.
- (C) Yes, I'll tell them about the tickets.

**Number 3.**

How long did the performance last?

- (A) No, it was first.
- (B) It was very well-done.
- (C) About an hour and a half.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

*[M]* Did you read the review of the new musical comedy in yesterday's paper?

*[W]* Yes, it sounds great, doesn't it? They say the charming dialogue among the characters is very funny. Would you like to see it?

*[M]* Yes, but I've heard the tickets are sold out for the entire five-week run. I can't believe it.

*[W]* Well, that often occurs when a play is really great. And, I have a surprise for you. I already got tickets. I called the theater last Friday and got them. We're going to see the Sunday afternoon performance.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Audiences can't stop talking about the Shakespeare Theater's production of *Romeo and Juliet*. Reviewers have praised the director's creative new approach to this timeless story. Shouldn't you see it for yourself? Performances are at eight o'clock Thursday through Sunday evenings and at two o'clock on Saturday and Sunday afternoons. Order your tickets by e-mail: [tickets@shakespeare.org](mailto:tickets@shakespeare.org). Call 656-9025 for prices and other information, or visit our web site at [www.shakespeare.org](http://www.shakespeare.org) to read play reviews. Tickets are expected to sell out quickly, so order yours today. See *Romeo and Juliet* and experience the magic of live theater.

**LESSON 43****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The critic is tasting the new dish.
- (B) The fans are urging the team to win.
- (C) The nurse is recommending relaxation.
- (D) The orchestra is playing the conductor's favorite music.

**Part 2: Question–Response**

**Number 2.**

Is there a reason that you don't like opera?

- (A) Yes, I find it really boring.
- (B) The opera season begins in December.
- (C) No, I don't.

**Number 3.**

What are your musical preferences?

- (A) The musical instruments are in the next room.
- (B) The library has a good reference collection.
- (C) I like jazz and classical music.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[M] I looked for the music I favor at the store, but they were out of stock. Everything available was pretty uninteresting. With all the disparate music out there, I can't believe that all they had was the same old boring stuff.

[W] I guess your tastes just don't match those of the majority of the people. That must be why you never listen to the radio.

[M] You're right. But, look, I really need to get a CD today. It's for a birthday present for a classmate and the party's tonight.

[W] Relax. I know another music store downtown that you can go to. They have a broad range of music there.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Welcome to the Music Appreciation class. I know you are all here to broaden your tastes in music and to discover which types of music you prefer most. We'll do that by looking at several categories of music and disparate composers' styles. We'll also look at the development of musical instruments throughout history. The textbook for this class is available at the college bookstore, and I urge you to buy it and start reading it right away. At the end of the semester, we'll have the opportunity to attend a concert of the City Symphony Orchestra. Unfortunately, I am not able to obtain free tickets for you, but I can get them at a twenty-five percent discount so you'll only have to pay thirty dollars each. Please let me know before you leave class today whether or not you are interested in this opportunity.

**LESSON 44****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The secretary is keeping a schedule.
- (B) The artist is expressing himself by drawing.
- (C) The carpenter is working leisurely.
- (D) The critic is admiring her collection.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Which artist do you admire most?

- (A) Painting is the hardest to do.
- (B) We hired a photographer.
- (C) Picasso is my favorite.

**Number 3.**

Have you seen the museum's sculpture collection?

- (A) Yes, your coats are over there.
- (B) Yes, I can give you directions to the museum.
- (C) Yes, they have some amazing pieces of sculpture.

**Part 3: Conversation****Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

*[M]* Art historians say that this painting is a significant contribution to the field. Do you like it?

*[W]* I have to admit that art history was never my strong subject, so I'm not sure what my opinion's worth. I can say that I'm drawn to the painting, but I'm never sure I can tell what abstract art is trying to express.

*[M]* Neither can I, but I still think it's a beautiful painting. I admire the use of color.

*[W]* Well, yes. Fortunately, the museum's collection covers a wide spectrum of styles. They've acquired some really interesting pieces. It's certainly worth the price of admission.

**Part 4: Talk****Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Thank you for calling the National Museum of Art. Our collection of newly acquired paintings is on view this month in the main gallery. Also opening this month is a special exhibit of prints entitled "Clothing Fashions of the Early Twentieth Century." Next month begins our winter lecture series. The series this year includes specialists in African sculpture, nineteenth-century painting, and several well-known art critics. To hear the lecture series schedule, press one. To hear the schedule of guided tours, press two. To speak with an operator, please stay on the line.

**LESSON 45****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The magazine reader is subscribing to a journal.
- (B) The newspaper journalist is choosing a story.
- (C) The TV reporter is covering an assignment.
- (D) The e-columnist is adding a link online.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Why do you subscribe to that newspaper?

- (A) I decided to buy the newspaper.
- (B) Yes, I write for that newspaper.
- (C) Because it's the best newspaper around.

**Number 3.**

Who did you assign that story to?

- (A) I gave the assignment to Mr. Lee.
- (B) I've already signed the papers.
- (C) I didn't see the signs.

**Part 3: Conversation****Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

*[M]* Would you choose to work for television instead of a newspaper?

*[W]* Never! Newspapers can cover a story much more thoroughly than television news shows can.

*[M]* That's certainly a decisive answer. But I suppose your thirteen years as an investigative reporter for a newspaper gives you the authority to answer the question.

*[W]* Yes. It's clear that newspapers can offer in-depth news in ways that television just can't. It's important for you, as a journalism student, to understand that.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Coming up next on the six o'clock news we'll bring you in-depth coverage of the investigation into the fraud allegedly committed by the president of the National Industrial Company over the past twelve months. We'll have commentary on whether or not the president's alleged actions constitute a crime that should be prosecuted in court, then we'll look at the impact this controversy could have on our national economy. Remember, you heard it first on the Channel Five Six O'clock News, your link to what's happening in the world. The news tonight will be reported by James Smith, substituting for Mary Milo who is away on a special assignment.

**LESSON 46****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) He's diagnosing a patient.
- (B) He's making an appointment to play golf.
- (C) He's recommending a restaurant.
- (D) He's playing a musical instrument.

**Part 2: Question-Response**

**Number 2.**

What is the most effective way to prevent heart disease?

- (A) Yes, I feel at ease.
- (B) He was born with a heart defect.
- (C) Diet and exercise are the best way.

**Number 3.**

What is that instrument for?

- (A) No, I only use three instruments.
- (B) It's for listening to your heart.
- (C) Yes, I used it before.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[W] I'm recommending that you see a specialist at the university hospital for another test.

[M] That sounds serious. Am I OK?

[W] Don't worry. I often refer patients to specialists who have more experience than I do with the latest diagnostic methods. But you should make your appointment soon, before the end of this month, if possible.

[M] I'll call today. You'll give me a copy of my medical record to take with me, won't you, Doctor?

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Dr. Sato's office has an opening for an experienced office manager. Responsibilities include keeping track of the doctor's appointments, managing patients' medical and insurance records, and overseeing the work of two office assistants who answer the phones and make appointments. The successful candidate will be an effective organizer and have a serious attitude. Previous experience in a doctor's office is required. Benefits include competitive salary and three weeks vacation annually. Please send a résumé and two letters of recommendation to Dr. Sato before the first of next month.

**LESSON 47****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The neighbors are catching up on the news.
- (B) The dental technician is restoring the whiteness to his teeth.
- (C) The plumber checks the drains regularly.
- (D) The dietician is encouraging good eating habits.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Can you restore my broken tooth?

- (A) Yes, I'll remove it.
- (B) Yes, the store is open tonight.
- (C) Yes, I can fix it.

**Number 3.**

Can you adjust the position of the chair?

- (A) I can change it if you're uncomfortable.
- (B) The chair belongs to me.
- (C) I think the air feels fine.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

*[W]* A quick overview of your dental records shows that there is cause for concern. You need to make more regular dental appointments if you want to have a healthy mouth.

*[M]* I don't care about cavities. I just want you to restore the shine to my teeth.

*[W]* Then I encourage you to kick the habits of smoking and drinking coffee. They both dull the teeth. We can also schedule an appointment for a special cleaning to whiten your teeth.

*[M]* That's a good idea. I'd like to do it as soon as possible. Can we do it next week?

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

Would you like to illuminate the room with your smile? It can be done. Most people aren't aware of how easy and inexpensive it is to restore the whiteness to your teeth. Our product can be used at home without the need to visit the dentist. Just apply the product to your teeth every night after your regular tooth brushing. It's that simple. Maintain your usual cleaning habits, and after just a few days, your teeth will start to look whiter. Unlike similar products, ours is guaranteed not to irritate sensitive gums. Why wait? Visit our web site at [www.whitereeth.com](http://www.whitereeth.com) and order your supply today. You'll see why our company has the highest sales of all dental product companies in the nation.

**LESSON 48****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) Specialized personnel give a CAT scan.
- (B) The woman is signing a health insurance policy.
- (C) The pay clerk is preparing the salary checks.
- (D) Administrators emphasize the importance of rest.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Will my insurance policy cover my elective surgery?

- (A) Yes, it covers emergencies.
- (B) You can select any surgeon on the list.
- (C) No, you have to pay for that yourself.

**Number 3.**

Who was in charge of choosing an insurance policy for our company?

- (A) It's charged against your monthly salary.
- (B) The Director of Personnel chose it.
- (C) We can't make any changes.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

*[M]* Does the health plan allow me to see a specialist immediately, or do I have to see my primary care provider first?

*[W]* If you go without your primary provider's referral, you will incur a higher percentage of the total cost.

*[M]* Then I would pay an increased portion of the bill. But if I go through my primary care provider first, it will take a lot longer to get to the specialist because the soonest I can get an appointment with the primary care provider is three weeks from now.

*[W]* I still think it's your best alternative. If you follow the usual procedure and see your primary care provider first, you'll save yourself a lot of headaches as well as money.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

In response to the concerns many of our personnel have expressed about the cost of our current health plan, we have decided to make an alternative plan available to anyone who is interested. This plan offers fewer benefits, but those who opt for it will incur fewer costs. I would like to emphasize that even though we have chosen this alternative to help people save money, it is available to everyone regardless of what your salary is or how long you have worked at the company. We have spent several months searching for an alternative health insurance policy, and I am happy to say we have finally found one that will suit our needs in all aspects. If you are interested in switching to the new plan, please let Human Resources know within the next two weeks. The new policy will go into effect at the beginning of next year.

**LESSON 49****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The escort's leading the group.
- (B) The guard's authorizing the visitors.
- (C) The musician's following the procedures.
- (D) The physician's identifying the medicine.

**Part 2: Question-Response**

**Number 2.**

When will I be permitted to go home?

- (A) Because you're in good health now.
- (B) You'll be admitted to the hospital next week.
- (C) You can leave tomorrow morning.

**Number 3.**

When will I find out my test results?

- (A) Some time next week.
- (B) They look very good.
- (C) I found them in the drawer.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

[W] I'm not at all happy with the care my husband received here. Is there someone designated to handle complaints?

[M] Our mission is to deliver complete satisfaction. What is your problem?

[W] The hospital identified my husband incorrectly in the computer system, and now all his records are mixed up. They almost gave him the wrong medication twice, and now they want to charge us for surgery when he only came in for some tests.

[M] If you will permit me to take a look at your statement. . . Yes, I think I see what the problem is. Exactly how is your husband's name spelled?

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

I've gotten the lab results from the tests we did last week and, as I expected, you'll have to be admitted to the hospital for surgery. I've already sent the form to the insurance company. It's not unusual for it to take seven or eight days to receive their authorization, so I'd like to schedule the procedure for ten days from now. You should expect a hospital stay of two or three days. I'll prepare the pertinent paperwork for you to give to the admitting nurse.

**LESSON 50****Part 1: Photo**

**Number 1.** Look at the picture marked number 1.

- (A) The consultant is greeting the doctor.
- (B) The volunteers are cleaning the shelves.
- (C) The pharmacist is checking the samples.
- (D) The patient is limiting his activity.

**Part 2: Question–Response****Number 2.**

Is there a limited number of refills I can have on this prescription?

- (A) Yes, I can fill it before three o'clock.
- (B) Yes, you can have this prescription.
- (C) Yes, you only get two.

**Number 3.**

What are the potential side effects of this medication?

- (A) It's one of the most effective medications I've seen.
- (B) It can cause sleepiness in some people.
- (C) No, it isn't essential.

**Part 3: Conversation**

**Numbers 4 through 6** relate to the following conversation.

*[W]* These pills should control your backache. You should detect improvement within two days.

*[M]* But my wife used a different medication for her back pain, and it really worked for her.

*[W]* Just because a certain pill worked for a relative or friend doesn't mean it'll work for you. Everybody is different, and there are different factors that determine how a medication will work. I can't just hand out the same pills to everyone.

*[M]* No, I guess that wouldn't make sense. OK, I'll try these samples, and if they work, I'll go ahead and fill the prescription you wrote.

**Part 4: Talk**

**Questions 7 through 9** relate to the following recording.

The medication I'd like to prescribe for you is one of the most effective drugs for controlling sleeping problems and should also help alleviate your headaches. It's very convenient to use. You just take it once a day, about thirty minutes before you go to bed. I'll give you a few free samples to try out. Call me in four or five days to let me know how it's working. But I'm sure you'll be happy with it and want to fill the prescription. The only potential side effect it has is stomachaches, and it shouldn't have any interactions with your other medications. There's also no limit to the length of time you can use it. You can just keep on taking it as long as you feel a need.

# BARRON'S

The Leader in Test Preparation

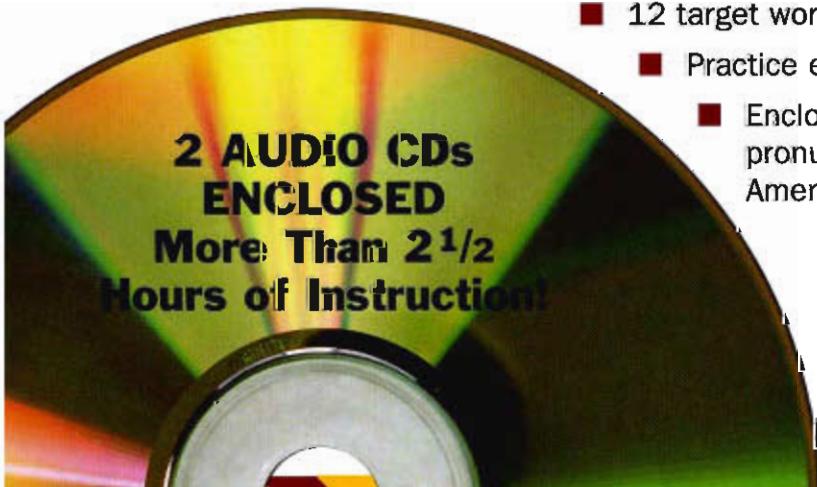


# 600 ESSENTIAL WORDS FOR THE

# TOEIC®

**3RD EDITION**

- 50 vocabulary-building lessons with words used in business, industry, communications, travel, and leisure activities
- 12 target words with definitions in each lesson
- Practice exercises and quizzes follow all lessons
- Enclosed audio CDs provide essential help in pronunciation and listening comprehension with American, British, and Australian accents



ISBN-13: 978-0-7641-9401-6  
ISBN-10: 0-7641-9401-1



9 780764 194010

www.barronseduc.com

